

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA
CENTRAL
ARCHÆOLOGICAL
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO. 12056.

CALL NO. 954.023/ Che.

U.G.A. 9

Acc. 12056

Vol. II



~~24356~~ Vol. 2



THE HISTORY

OF

TIMUR-BEC,

Known by the Name of

Tamerlain the Great,

Emperor of the

MOGULS and TARTARS:
BEING

AC. 1295

An historical JOURNAL of his Conquests
in Asia and Europe.

Written in Persian by GHEZZEHDIN A.
Nati^r of Tzad, his Contemporar.

Transl^{te} into French by the late M^{me} de la Croix,
a French Professor in the
Royal College, and Secretary and Interpreter
to the King in the Oriental Languages.

With historical Notes and Maps.

Now faithfully render'd into English.

VOL. II.

LONDON. Printed for J. DODS in 1800.
E. BELL in Cornhill. W. TERTIUS in
Wth and J. DODS at the West End of St. Paul's Ch^r
yard. J. O'NEILL in Lambeth, and T. S^{ON}
S^{ON} in Chancery-Str. 1800.

954.925







THE 12056

HISTORY

OF

TI MUR - BEG.

BOOK IV.

Timur enters India, and passes over the rivers Indus and Ganges. The taking of the cities of Moultan, Labor, and Deli ~~capital~~ of that kingdom. A consider-
able battel between Timur and the Sultan Mahmoud, grandson of Firouz Chah emperor of India. The Tartars artifice in conquering the elephants in the wars with the Indians. The destruction of the temples of the Guebres. Several battels with these adorers of fire, and other idolaters of this great empire.

C H A P. I.

The cause of Timur's war in India.

TI MUR had given to his grandson prince Pir Mehemed, son of Ghanghir, the provinces of Condez, Bacalan, Cabul, Gaznin, and Candahar, with their dependencyes, as far as the frontiers of India, as we said before; and this Mirza being establish'd in these principalitys, endeavor'd to render 'em flourishing by his justice and goodness.

He receiv'd orders from court to assemble the troops of all the provinces, and to depart at their head for other conquests, and to make himself master of many towns and countrys in India. He accordingly set out with a great army commanded by good generals, the most valiant Emirs of his country.

They began with the plunder of the Ouganis, inhabitants of the mountain of Soffman Couh¹, which country they entirely ravag'd. They pass'd the Indus, invest'd Outchah², and also laid siege to Moultan³, which had then for its governor prince Sarenk, eldest brother of Melkon Cap, who govern'd the empire of India for the young Sultan Mahmoud.

Timur resolv'd to make war in the empire of India, because since the death of Firour Chah

¹ On the west of the Indus, between Cabul and Candahar.

² A town E. of the Indus, N. of Moultan.

³ A town of India on the Rass, long. 107°. lat. 29°.

emperor of it. Mellou Can and Sarenk two brothers, who had been his generals, had usurp'd the sovereign power; and having plac'd on the throne Sultan Mahmood, grandson of Firooz Chah, they reign'd over all India. Mellou Can residing at Delli¹, near Sultan Malmeud, and his brother Sarenk at Moultan.

Moultan being besieg'd by our army, was briskly attack'd and batter'd without interruption; there were two assaults given every day, and the regiment of Timur Coja son of Achouga, fought with more heat than all the others, because this Emir was not only an adviser, but the first actor in this enterprise.

Timur receiv'd the news with joy; and as he had already resolv'd to carry his arms to Catai or China, to root out the infidels, he got together all the troops of the empire. He had been before that inform'd, that the mahometan religion was then observ'd in many places of India, as at Delli and other citys, where the testimony of that faith was written upon their coins; nevertheless the greatest part of the provinces distant from this town were inhabited by idolaters. Timur, who desir'd to partake of the merit and glory of the Gazzie², and had rais'd this numerous army with intention to make war on the enemies of his religion, soon resolv'd on the conquest of India. He assembled his council, according to the custom Ma-

¹ Capital of India, long. 76°. lat. 28°. It consists of three Towns, San, Gehrepura, and old Delli, all which parts but one, or Part consist of the city, antiquity, and situation of St. German.

² Gazzie among the orientals signifies the war the Mahometans undertake against those who profess a different religion. They imagine that whoever die in these wars, become martyrs, and of consequence inherit paradise.

Book IV. Some had introduc'd, and propos'd his under-taking to the great Emirs of the state in these terms.

" Fortune, my dear friends, furnishes us
" with such happy conjonctures, that she seems
" to offer herself to us, and invite us to lay hold
" of the favorable opportunitys which present
" themselves; for as we have already seen the
" empires of Iran and Touran, and almost all
" Asia under our command, she shews us In-
" dia, thro' the disorders of the princes who
" govern it, opening its gates to receive us.
" My name has spread terror throughout the
" universe; and the least motion I make is ca-
" pable of shaking the whole earth. It is
" therefore time to attack the kingdom of In-
" dia, where having overcome what opposes
" our design, we shall oblige this kingdom to
" acknowledge no other sovereign than me.
" What think ye, my dear friends, who are the
" companions of my victorys, of this great en-
" terprise? Speak all in general, and every
" one in particular, your opinion of this pro-
" posal, which appears reasonable, since far-
" rong has not yet withdrawn its protection
" frpm me."

Timur having thus made known his resolution to the captains and generals of his army, they fell upon the ground, and with sincere submisson and perfect obedience, said, The order of the emperor was a law to all men, and more indispensably so to them who were his slaves; that wherever he shou'd set his feet, there they shou'd be ready to lay their heads; that it was clear glory punctually to obey his orders, even when he requir'd 'em to undertake the severest difficulties. Timur, pleas'd with this answer, heap'd favors on 'em, and thought of

nothing

nothing more than the meant of bringing this ~~Chap.~~ ^{2.} enterprize to perfection.

CHAP. II.

Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Guebres in India.

THE Alcoran lays, the highest dignity man can attain to, is that of making war in person against the enemys of his religion. Mahomet advifeth the same thing, according to the tradition of the musulman doctors; wherefore the great Timur always liv'd to exterminate the infidele, as much to acquire that glory, as to signalize himself by the greatness of his conquests.

For which reason in the year of the Leopard, ^{March} ^{1378.} that is, in the month of Regeb of the year 800 of the Hegira, having lost Mirza Omar son of Mirza Miran Chah to govern the city of Samarcand, he took the road to India, having many kings of Asia for his attendence, who were come to his court as to an asylar, to render their services to this conqueror.

He had in his army loidlers and even milites of all nations; but all the chieft, and greatest part of the compaingns who were in noys of con-
sequence, were Tartars: and he had also a great many lords of Keth.

Timur being arriv'd at Termed, there order'd to be made a bridge of boats over the Oxus, which he cross'd with his army. He rav'd many choice soldiers and of good appearance in the fine city of Culm, from whence he took the road to Aznic and Semencan; and after having

Book IV. pass'd the mountains of Bacalan, he went to encamp at Enderabe.

C H A P. III.

Timur marches against the inhabitants of Ketuer. He defeats the Sia pouches, who were cloth'd in black.

WHILST Timur was encamp'd at Enderabe, the inhabitants came to cast themselves at his feet, to complain of the insults and trouble they receiv'd from the idolaters of Ketuer¹, and from the Sia pouches²: they represented to him that there were a great number of Mah-sulmans, from whom the infidels exacted every year excessive sums of money, under the name of tribute and Carage: which if they fail'd to pay punctually, they kill'd their men, and made their women and children slaves.

The emperor, touch'd with their complaints, and excited by zeal for the religion of which he was protector and defender, march'd immediately against these tyrants: he chose three soldiers out of every ten, and left the ~~Mirza~~ Chator to command the rest of the army and the baggage at Goumandicour³, where they ordinarily pass'd the summer. Timur decamp'd twice a day, and march'd with so much diligence, that he made two days journey in one-

¹ A mountain of Belakchan inhabited by idolaters, long. 115. lat. 36.

² An idolatrous nation cloth'd in black, inhabiting the mountain S. of the province of Belakchan.

³ A cool place in the mountain near Enderabe.

He soon arriv'd at Perjan¹, whence he sent Chap. 2.
Mirza Roustem, accompanied by Burhan A-²lwan
glan, and other Emirs, with ten thousand men
towards the left, to seek the Siapourches; and
following his road, he arriv'd at Caouc³, where
he found a demolish'd citadel, which he caus'd
to be rebuilt. Many Emirs and soldiers left
some of their horses at Caouc, and ascended on
foot the mountain of Kessar, where the sun was in Gemini, the snow lay in so great
abundance, that the feet of most part of the
horses, which the lords wou'd have carry'd
up, fail'd 'em: yet some of 'em were spar'd
so much during the night and the frost,
that they were constrain'd to get up: but day
being come, and the snow turn'd into ice, they
kept these horses under tents till evening, when
they continue'd to ascend the mountain, so that
at length they arriv'd at the top, and then sent
for the rest of the horses. And as the infidels
dwelt in narrow passages and precipices, and
there was no road to get to them, besides what
was cover'd with snow; some of the Emirs and
soldiers descended by cords, while others lying
on the snow, slid down to the bottom. They
made a sort of raft for Timur, to which they
faffen'd rings, that they might tie cords to it
of two hundred and fifty cubits in length: he
sat upon it, while many persons let him down
from the top to the bottom of the mountain,
as far as the cords wou'd reach. Others dug
with pickaxes in the snow a place where he
might stand firm. They who were on the top

¹ A town in the province of Bokhara, two days journey
from Landerbe near the Siapourches.

² A town at the foot of the mountain of Kessar, long. 61° 3'.
See 25.

Book IV. having gently descended, they let down Timur again in the machine. The place also was mark'd out where he shou'd stay next : and so on till the fifth time, when he arriv'd at the foot of the mountain. Then this monarch took a staff in his hand to rest on, and walk'd on foot a great way. These fatigues did not deter him, because of his confidence in the merit of the Gazzie, which always increas'd his ardent zeal for the most difficult enterprizes. Those who work for God may rest assur'd of success. They also let down some of the emperor's horses, girding 'em about the belly and neck, with great precaution ; but most of 'em thro' the fault of the guides fell headlong down, so that there remain'd but two fit for service. Then Timur took horse, and all the army follow'd on foot.

The infidels of this country are strong men, and as large as the giants of the people of Aad¹ ; they go all naked ; their kings are nam'd Oda and Odachouh : they have a particular language², which is neither Persian, nor Turkish, nor Indian ; and know no other than this : and it was not for the inhabitants of the neighbouring places, who are found there by chance, and having learnt their language, serve for interpreters, no one would be able to understand 'em.

These infidels were in a citadel, at the foot of whose walls passes a great river ; and on the other side of this river there was a high mountain. As they had learnt the approach of Timur twelve four hours before his arrival, they abandon'd this post, cross'd the river, and car-

¹ Asubians in the time of Nemed.

² The language of the people of Kensee was heretofore unknown.

try'd their effects to the top of this mountain, Chap. 3.
imagining it inaccessible, especially with the in-
trenchments they had made there.

When the army after long fatigues arriv'd at the citadel, they found nothing there but some sheep the enemy had left, which they made themselves masters of: then having set fire to the houses, they immediately cross'd the river. The emperor order'd 'em to ascend the mountain by many narrow passages: which our soldiers did, and at the same time return'd thanks to God.

Cheik Arilan, at the head of the vanguard of the left wing¹, attack'd the forepart of the enemy, and made himself master of a rising ground. They were also attack'd by Ali Sultan Paryachi, who came down into the place where they were encamp'd. A colonelnam'd Chamelle signaliz'd himself by many great actions: and fourteen of our bravest soldiers fell from the top of the mountain to the bottom, and were kill'd. Mabacher also behav'd himself gallantly. Mengheit Coja advanc'd at the head of his company, and gain'd the top of the mountain. Sevindje Behader did all that could be expected from the greatest valer. Cheik Ali Saliberi advanc'd as far as the ridge of the mountain with all his soldiers: he attack'd the enemy, and got possession of their post. Monisa Recnal and the Emir Hussein Cawich behav'd themselves with the utmost resolution: and at length all the Emirs of the Berares and Coughours attack'd the infidels on all sides in the most dangerous places. The enemy defend'd themselves vigorously, notwithstanding the great laughter of their men. The fight lasted two

¹ The Timur have a vanguard to each wing, which they call Cambal,

Book IV. nights with unheard of obstinacy; but at length these unfortunate men making themselves no law to themselves, longer able to make resistance, beg'd quarter with tears in their eyes. Timur sent to 'em the Sultan Kechi, with order to tell them that if they wou'd come to him with submission and obedience, abandon their errors, and take up a resolution to acknowledge but one God, and embrace the mohometan religion with sincerity, he wou'd not only give 'em their lives and effects, but also leave 'em to enjoy their principality as before. They had no sooner learnt this from an interpreter, than the fourth day they came to cast themselves at the feet of the emperor, conducted by the Sultan Kechi: they abjur'd their idolatry, and embrac'd the mohometan religion, promising to submit entirely to the emperor, and obey all his commands. Timur, according to his wonted generosity, gave them clothes, and sent them away, after having encouraged 'em by the most affectionate speeches.

Treason of the men of Kechi. Night being come, these wretches, whose hearts were more black than their garments, fell upon the regiment of Chamelic, and put all the soldiers of it to the sword, except a few, who, tho' wounded and lame, escap'd their hands.

Their punishment. As soon as this treason was discover'd, our men flew near one hundred and fifty to 'em. All the army got up upon the mountain, and following the receipt of Mahomet, who orders the women to be spar'd, they put to the sword all the old and young men of these infidels, and carry'd away their women and children. At length they built towers on the top of the mountain and the end of the bridge, with the heads of these traitors, who had never bow'd their head to adore the true God. Timur order'd to be engrav'd upon marble the history

of this action, which happen'd in the moath of Chap. 4
Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 800; and he ¹⁴⁰⁰⁻¹⁴⁹⁸ addid the particular Epochs which this people us'd, that their posterity might have some knowldg of the famous valort of the ever-victorious Timur. This pillar so inscrib'd gave the greater pleasure to Timur, in that these people had never been conquer'd by any prince in the world, not even by Alexander the great.

CHAP. IV.

*Timur sends Mehemed Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Roussem and Barhan Aglen.
His return to Ketuar.*

AS there came no news of Mirza Roussem and Barhan Aglen, who were gone against the Siapniches, the emperor order'd the inhabitants of Ketuar to furnish him with guides; and he sent Mehemed Azad and Doletchah, who had been rais'd to preferments in his court. Four or five Emirs accompany'd 'em, with four hundred Turks¹ and three hundred Tadgies², commanded by Mehemed Azad, who had orders to get information of Mirza Roussem and Barhan Aglen. Mehemed after his departure, according to Timur's order, went up, by strait and difficult passages with extreme fatigue, high mountains cover'd with snow, which he afterwards slid down, bring

¹ The Turks are those who descend from the Mongols and Tatars.

² The Tadgies are the inhabitants of the towns of Tadzhik, and all the country of Ica, who are neither Turks, Mongols, nor Turks.

IV. strongly fasten'd his buckler to his shoulders.
 He then march'd to the fortresses of the Sisponches, where he cou'd not meet a single person, or hear one word ; but he found the tracks of the feet of several men, who were gone to the other side of the mountain. There were the foot-steps of the Sisponches, who having advice of the march of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Aglen, were gone out of their fortresses, and retir'd to the mountains, where they lay in ambuscade in a very narrow passage. Some pass'd by 'em, and others without precaution got off their horses, which they let go loose : then the Sisponches, laying hold of the opportunity, came out of their ambuscade, and fell suddenly upon them. Burhan Aglen, thro' his great cowardice, or rather by an unheard-of treason, flung off his coat of mail, and fled without fighting, which caus'd the defeat of his troops. When a general turns his back, we may say he is the murderer of his soldiers. The infidels seeing the Musulmans fly, became more daring ; and pursuing our men close, slew many of 'em with their axes and war-clubs, and among the rest Chelk Hussein Courtchii, Doletchali Gebegi, and Adina captain of the horse, who, after a vigorous defence, were destroy'd among the rest.

Altair were in this miserable state, when Mehemet Azad observing the prints of the feet of the Sisponches, arriv'd in the passage where this tragedy happen'd : he met 'em at their return, attack'd 'em with the greatest bravery, after a sharp fight utterly defeated 'em, and re-took from 'em the bucklers, arms and horses of our Musulmans. He then went to rejoin Burhan Aglen with the horse which had fled : and every

every one knowing his own bucklers, arms and Chap. 4.
horses, they were resolv'd.

Mehemed Azad then told Burhan Aglen that he must stay in that place all night; but this coward would not do it: he got up to the top of the mountain, whether he was follow'd by his troops, to the great regret of Mehemed Azad; for when a commander proves a traitor or a coward, his army never fails of being conquer'd. This action of Burhan was very infamous; and since the reign of Genghiz Can there has not been one prince of the race of Cayat⁴, who has committed the like. Burhan had formerly done the same in the war of the Uzbeccs, and receiv'd pardon by the singular goodness of Timur, who continu'd to honor him as before, and had even sent him on this expedition, in hopes he would repair his fault, and recover his credit, which in this last affair he entirely destroy'd.

After the conquest of Ketuer, and defeat of the idolaters, Timur sent Gelalellam and Ali Sistani with troops to seek an easy passage from the mountains, and to clear the ways: and in order'd them to ruin whatsoever they met belonging to the infidels.

These two Emirs having found a passage to their mines, open'd a way in the snow; and then Timur cross'd the mountains, and went down to Capuc⁵, where he left a strong garrison. At this place he join'd the Emirs and soldiers, who for eighteen hours had constantly

⁴ A Mogul hero, from whence Genghiz Can sprung; which herd were the descendants of an ancient Mogul prince named Caye, who was descended from Turc, son of Japhet, son of Noah.

⁵ A town in Ketuer rebuilt by Timur.

Book IV. fought on foot: then they took horse, and ac-
company'd the emperor.

When Buthan Aglen and Mehemed Azad had join'd the imperial standard with their troops, Timur wou'd not admit the first into his presence, because without making any defence he had fled from the infidels: he treated him with scorn as he met him by chance; and to shew his infamy, cited a passage of the Alcoran, which assures us, That twenty zealous Mussulmans are able to conquer two hundred infidels, provided they trust in God: and yet Buthan (said the emperor) at the head of ten thousand men fled from a handful of infidels, and put the Mussulmans in danger of being torn in pieces. Then Timur declar'd him criminal, and as a mark of disgrace banish'd him the court.

Mehemed Azad having fought on foot at the head of four hundred men only, and stood his ground against the same men, tho' puff'd up with their victory; and having also put a great number of 'em to the sword, recovering from 'em all the horses they had got from us; Timur heap'd on him honors and riches, distinguishing him by great praises, and giving him the command of a regiment to reward his valor. The emperor distributed also largesses among those who had given marks of their courage in so dangerous an expedition.

C H A P. V.

Timur sends Mirza Charac to Herat.

AT this place * Timur permitted his dear * Grand-son Mirza Charac, heir apparent to the crown, to return to Herat, capital of Corallana, of which he was governor. When he took leave of this prince, he gave him his advice, and us'd many expressions which shew'd a fatherly tenderness and affection. And after having embrac'd him, and recommended him to the divine protection, he dismiss'd him. Timur decamp'd at the same time, and march'd towards Cabul: he took the road to Tasse[†], ascended the mountain of Hendon-Keth, pass'd by Pendgir[‡], commonly call'd Pendgir, and went to encamp in a meadow of the country of Barin, about five leagues from Cabul. And as the design of this conqueror was chiefly to dispense justice to the people, and to render the country's and towns flourishing, he gave orders for a canal to be dug, which might join the river which passes thro' those quarters. He divided the land between the captains and soldiers, and in a short time there was a great canal made five leagues long, which is yet call'd the canal of Mahignur: at length there were many large villages built upon it, and the valley, which before had not

* A late town of Bokhara.

† A river and mountain, where Ruscelli the geographer says there are two three miles: and that the river is full of diamonds dug to get out the ore. It is at the foot of the mountain of Corauna to the west, between Cabul and Lalestan.

Book IV. been cultivated, became a fine and delightful garden.

C H A P. VI.

The arrival of ambassadors from several places. Tazis Aglen returns from the country of the Calmaki, and Chrik Nourdin from that of Fars.

TMUR being encamp'd in the plain of Dourin¹, there arriv'd an ambassador from Timur Cathic Aglen a prince of Capchac, and another from Emir Aidecou, a prince of Capchac, as also a third of Geic from Keler Coja Aglen, who were presented before the throne by the Emirs and Nevians. After they had kiss'd the ground and perform'd other usual ceremonys, they began their harangue, wishing all prosperity to Timur, and highly extolling him: then they declar'd the subject of their embassy, which was, to assure the emperor that their masters were faithful servants of his majesty; that tho' for some time past there had been no good intelligence or agreement between 'em, which had made 'em depart from the obedience they ow'd him, and wander as vagabonds in the deserts; yet consideration and prudence having now brought 'em to see the deformity of their actions, they sincerely repented of 'em, and that if the emperor would be merciful and pardon their fault, they would for the future

¹ A village near Geza.

be most obedient, and never disobey the orders Chap. 6
of his officers.

Taizi Aglen, who for some difference which happen'd between him and the Can at Oling Yurt¹, fled from the kingdom of Calmac², came to this place to lay himself at the feet of the throne, and was receiv'd as handsomely as a prince of his rank cou'd expect. Timur embrac'd him, and presented him with a veil wove with gold, a belt set with precious stones, horses of great price, several mules and camels, tents and pavillions, and whatever cou'd be expected from a great emperor. At the same place also arriv'd Emir Choih Nozreddin, son of Sar Bouga, who had been lett by Timur in Persia, after the six years campaign there, in order to receive the revenues of that kingdom and the neighbouring countrys. He brought with him an immense treasure, with abundance of jewels of inestimable price: likewise animals proper for the chase, and birds of prey; leopards, gold mony, belts enrich'd with precious stones, vests wove with gold, stoles of all colors, arms and all sort of utensils for war, arabian horses with trappings of gold, great camels, several carriage and riding mules, fine silks, the straps, embroider'd with gold and silver; umbrellas, canopies, pavillions, tents and curtains of scarlet and all colors; in short, there was so great a quantity of curious pieces of work, that the secretaries and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd three days and three nights

¹ This is, the great boy, son of the king of Calmac, or rather of the Mogul Can or emperor, near Caramotis, caplal of Calmac.

² A kingdom, formerly call'd Caspia, is Mogulistan, north of the kingdom of Cowge or Leitong.

Book IV. to regill 'em, and write copy's of 'em, which were presented to the lords of the court for their perusal.

The day for presenting petitions being appointed, the Emirs or generals, and the Nevians or foreign princes, presented Emir Cheik Noureddin before the imperial throne. This prince knelt down, and the whole day was spent in calling over before the emperor all his presents, than which none ever were seen so magnificent, not even in the reigns of the great Feridoun¹, or of Corru Peruize².

Prince Taizi Aglen, the ambassadors of Capchac, and several princes of the race of Genghis Can, who were present, were surpriz'd at it; not only at the sight of the riches, but but also considering that the power of Timur must be very great, since one of his subjects was rich enough to make so magnificent a present.

Timur distributed a great many of these rari-
ties, and gave a very friendly reception to Emir Cheik Noureddin, who told the emperor that all these presents were too small for those who had resolv'd to sacrifice their lives to his service.

Timur being willing to treat the ambassadors of the Uzbecks³ and Getes handsomly, gave 'em caps of gold, beaks, vestis and horses; he granted 'em whatsoever they ask'd, and loaded 'em with presents, as well for themselves as their masters, with letters in answer to those they had brought. At length Emir Cheik Noureddin knelt down, and ask'd pardon for Burkhan Aglen, and the rest who accompany'd him at

¹ King of Persia of the fifth race.

² King of Persia of the third race.

³ The princes of Capchac are here call'd Uzbecks.

the audience : Timur granted this with an excess of clemency and generosity.

He then set sail for India Sultan Mahmoud Can¹, with the troops of the left wing, and all the princes and Emirs who had before receiv'd orders.

At this time Malek Mehemed, brother to Lechler Chah an Ougani, cast himself at the feet of the emperor, and in an humble manner told him, that Moussa, prince of the nation of the Kerkes, had kill'd his brother, who was an officer of his majesty ; that he had ruin'd the town of Ijab², and pillag'd his Herates ; that he had made himself master of their cities by force, and that this villain constantly robb'd in the great roads, that no one cou'd pass those quarters : " For my part, says Malek, I, who am a poor servant of your majesty, have fled to save my life from the hands of this barbarous man : I have pass'd by Gzma, and heard here on the good news I receiv'd of the march of your imperial standard."

This advice rais'd Timur's passion, and he resolv'd to put a stop to these disorders, by some means or other. He order'd Malek to be conceal'd, and to keep this advice secret, telling him he wou'd call Moussa to court, and if he came, he wou'd oblige him to do justice, and make entire satisfaction, but if he did not come, he wou'd give him an army, with which he might revenge himself on this murderer, for the death of his brother. Timur immediately sent

¹ The emperor of Zageri, who serves under Timur as general of the army, and has only the name of Dan, Timur's foreign name.

² Four days journey from Doush, is the road to India.

Book IV. a messenger to Mousia, to whom he gave orders
 to tell him as follows.

" The emperor haring advice that you have
 demolished the city of Irjib, situate in the
 great road to India, does not think conve-
 nient that it shou'd remain in ruins, where-
 fore he wills and commands you to come
 forthwith to court, where he designs to in-
 vest you with the government of that country,
 not doubting but you will rebuild the place,
 and let it in its former splendor."

The messenger having handsomely acquited
 himself of this commission, Mousia came imme-
 diately with a resolution to cast himself at the
 feet of the throne; but Timur, who had re-
 solv'd to put him to death, with all his accom-
 plices, receiv'd him in a civil manner at first
 sight, and gave him a veil woven with gold, a
 belt, a sword with a gold handle, a horse well
 equip'd, with other curious things, and at last
 said to him, " We will assign you troops, with
 which it is expedient you shou'd go and re-
 build that place: wherefore depart with thy
 domesticks and friends, and use all your ex-
 erts, that the place may be rebuilt before
 we arrive: and if there is need of any thing
 towards the perfecting of it, we will order
 it to you; and then leaving you in the govern-
 ment of it, we will depart for India." Timur
 then sent him away, and order'd Mousia
 Recmal, with three thousand brave men, to ac-
 company him.

When Mousia was arriv'd at Irjib, he made
 dispatch in executing the orders he had receiv'd,
 and employ'd all his men and domesticks, about
 three hundred persons, in the rebuilding of this
 place.

C H A P. VII.

The repairing the fortress of Irjab, and the destroying of the Oganis robbers.

TI MUR sent from the country of Dousia to Samarcand the angust princest Seraf Mule Canaw, and the Mirza Oline Bei, who were at court, and then he decamp'd. In four days he arriv'd at the town of Irjab, which he found nearly repair'd: there he fix'd his imperial tent; and the army encamp'd in order of battle, every one in his proper post. Timur order'd that the rebuilding of the town shou'd be continued; and the Emir Oshmetlik and Gelailelik had a commission for rebuilding of mosques and other public buildings, insomuch that all was finish'd in fourteen days. Timur had before commanded the Tavachis not to suffer any of the subjects of Moussa, employ'd in repairing the town, to re-enter it after once going out: and this order was not given without cause; for on the seventeenth of Zilhadje ^{Sep. 16} in the morning, Timur having taken horse to view the place, with its ditches and wall, accompany'd with many princes and generals, who march'd on foot on each side him, he was perceiv'd by seven of Moussa's labourers, who were in an upper story of an house situate behind a gate of the town; and being within bow-shot of him, they let fly from a window with design to kill him. But they did not take good aim, and the rustling the arrow made only flatt'd his horse. However Timur went into the town by another gate, and caus'd Moussa and his ac-

Book IV. complices to be seiz'd. the seven assassins who were in the house from whence the arrow was shot, took up their arms to defend themselves, and wounded some of our men; but at last Koleki Sisani broke open the house with some soldiers of his company, and put 'em to death.

At nine a-clock the same morning, Timur deliver'd to Malek Mehemet his enemy Moussa, with two hundred of his men, whom he had seiz'd. Malek, assisted by three of his servants, cut off all their heads, to revenge himself for the death of his brother whom they had slain, and made a tower of them. Then they pillag'd all his country and subjects, and put to death several leaders of those villains who were mix'd among our officers. The women and children, as also the goods and moveables of these tyrants, were given to the poor oppres'd people of Irak, who, for being of Malek Mehemet's side, had suffer'd for several years great violence and injustice. And on this occasion we see that passage of the Alcoran fulfill'd, which threatens tyrants with conmion and ruin.

Timur gave the principality of Irak to Malek Mehemet, and by this means deliver'd travellers from being infested by these insolent robbers. Thus as he render'd kingdoms flourishing by his goodness and equity, so he suppress'd disorders by his power and justice.

CHAP. VIII.

Timur marches to Chenouzan and Nagaz; and destroys the robbers of the nation of the Persians.

TIMUR, after having settled the affairs of the country of Irjib, which require'd a great authority as his to put it in order, the eighteenth of ^{Sept. 17.} Zilhadje, in the year 1363, march'd towards ^{1363.} Chenouzan. After having pass'd many forests and some mountains, he encamp'd near that place; where he staid the next day, and sent his son prince Celil-Sultan to Banar¹, by the road of Capachagai², at the head of the baggage, accompani'd by several Emirs.

Timur having march'd all night with great diligence, went with some thousands of horse towards the fortress of Nagaz, where he arriv'd early on the twenty-first of Zilhadje. ^{Aug. 21.}

It is to be remark'd, that the court having been before at Cabul, Emir Solyman Chah, and other commanders of the troops of Corasiana, were come to Nagaz³, according to Timur's order, to rebuild that place; and that they had work'd very hard there, so that it was compleatly fortify'd. Timur at his arrival there, was inform'd that the nation of the Persians, a sort of Oughans, to whom he had sent orders to appear before his throne with their troops, to serve in the army, had revolted, and rais'd

¹ Town of Cabulistan near the Indus.

² A town of Cabulistan, betwixt the Indus and the river of Cabul.

Book IV. to send their men: for one day when Mirza Pir Mehemed, who had been to view some neighbouring places in India, was return'd with his troops and plunder, bringing with him to Cabul several captives: these inconsiderate men were so bold as to stop up their passage, to plunder 'em of part of the spoils, pass the river of Hir, and entrench themselves in the high mountains and fortresses, from whence they constantly went to rob on the high-ways. Timur had no sooner advice of this, than giving loose to his passion, he the same day march'd in search of these insolent people, whose end must of course be unfortunate. He came up to 'em in three days, and order'd all his soldiers to dismount, that they might march thro' the woods and mountains with more ease: and so seize and exterminate these rebels. They attack'd 'em with the greatest vigor, and after a weak defence cut 'em in pieces, made their children prisoners, and pillag'd their goods, having set fire to their habitations; and as there were some who fled, Timur would stay some time in this mountain, to deliver passengers from the fear of these robbers. At this place the deputies and Relyants¹ of the nation of Oubel came to call themselves at his feet, to beg pardon, and implore his protection. This monarch, who taught nothing more than the welfare of his people, not only forgave their crimes, but receiv'd 'em into his protection, heap'd favors on 'em, and granted 'em many privileges, because of their sincerity.

¹ A nation among the Ouzbis.

The Emir Solyman Chah having restor'd the Chap. 2.
town of Nagaz to its former splendor, learnt ~~that~~ that the Kelitians¹, a strong and numerous people, had refus'd to obey the orders of the emperor, and to come to the camp with their troops. This news oblig'd him to fall on 'em, which he did with such bravery, that in two days and nights he defeated these giants, who before that time were esteem'd the most valiant men in the world: he pillag'd their country, cut to pieces a great number of 'em, put the rest in chains, made their children slaves, and burnt their houses. After this he left the country of the Kelitians, and return'd in triumph to the imperial throne, where he was receiv'd with all the respect his actions deserv'd.

The first of Muharrem in the year 801, Ti- Sept. 30.
mūr leaving the country of the Persians, went 1393.
down to view the neighbourhood of the town of Nagaz: he sent the Emir Solyman Chah to Moultau, with good troops, to Mirza Pir Me-
hemed, and leaving Chah Ali Ferahi with five
hundred foot in garrison at Nagaz, he departed
for Banou, in which he left Pir Ali Spidur, and
the Emir Husein Courtehi, with a sufficient
garrison.

Timur departed from Banou, and the eighth Octo- Chap. 3.
ber of Muharrem arriv'd at the river Indus, at the
very place where Sultan Gelaleddin king of See the
Carrime, when he fled from the wrath of Genghis
ghitz Can, swam cross the river. Genehiz Can ^{litter of} Can, Book
encamp'd here, but did not pass the Indus. IV. Ch. 5.

Timur had a bridge of boats and reeds made
over this river, in which all the army were

² A nation among the Ouzbecks.

Book IV. constantly employ'd; and it was finish'd in two
 w
 w days.

At this place he dismiss'd the Ambassadors who came to pay their respects to him, among whom were the said Mehemed Medini, ambassador from Mecca and Medina¹, and from all the princes and Cherifs of Arabia, who pray'd this conqueror to honor 'em one day with a visit, and take 'em under his protection. Timur also dismiss'd the ambassador of Eskender Chah, prince of Cashmair², whom he had sent to beseech his majesty to receive him upon his obedience: he order'd him to tell his master that he receiv'd his offer with pleasure, and that he desir'd he wou'd not fail to come to him at the town of Dipalpour³, and there join the imperial camp.

C H A P. IX.

Timur passes the river Indus.

Book IV.
1378.

THE twelfth of Moharram in the year 801,
 which answers to that of the Leopard, Timur cross'd the Indus at the head of his army, and encamp'd at the entrance of the great defile of Garon, which is call'd Tchot Gellali, because the Sultan Geisaldin Carezem Chah, flying from the wrath of Genghiz Cai, cross'd the Indus at this place, and enter'd this defile to avoid being put to death by the sword of

¹ The Cherifs of Mecca and Medina offer'd to abdicate to Timur Cai, the Bajis was invested with the high dignity.

² A province, whose capital was Bagh.

³ A town of India, 3. of Lash

that conqueror. At Timur's arrival at this place, the Rayas, and the principal inhabitants of the mountain of Couhdghoul¹, came to make their submissions to him: they offer'd him presents, promis'd to remit to him considerable sums, and serve him on all occasions.

Some months before, Rouslem Tagi Bongar Berlus had been sent with an army towards Moultan; and having stopt some days at Couhdghoul, these same Rayas did him several important services, furnish'd him with provisions, and even money to pay his soldiers. Timur was highly pleas'd with 'em upon these accounts, and resolv'd they shou'd enjoy the fruits of his clemency: he prohibited every one from inflicting 'em, and order'd they shou'd be treated with humanity and affection. After which they return'd home joyful and contented, without either being molested or depriv'd of their usual place of residence. These are the effects and fruits of civility. The poet says, We ought always to be under the protection of our own actions.

C H A P. X.

Chehbeddin Mubarec Chah Tomini commits hostility against the emperor after his submission.

CHEHBEDDIN Mubarec, who was a prince of an isle of the river of Jamail², had a great number of officers under him, and was very

¹ A mountain E. E. of Cashm.

² A river in the Indus: it is the continuation of the river Densia, which comes from Cashm.

Book IV. rich in money and marchables. When the Mirza Pit Mehemed Gelingir march'd to the frontiers of Moultan, Chehabeddin came to him to kill his feet, and met with a handsome reception from him. He submitted to the emperor, and after he had staid some time to make his court to the Mirza, he took his leave, and return'd home; where he suffer'd himself to be overtaken with pride, and trusting in the strength of his Isle, which he believ'd inaccessible, he fortify'd it with a good ditch and high wall. Timur at his arrival at the river of Jamud, had advice of his revolt; and the fourteenth of March 13. return'd order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to attack this Isle at the head of his Toman, and as soon as he made himself master of it, to put to the sword every one he shou'd find therein. When the Emir came there, he and his soldiers call themselves into the water to cross over. The besieg'd prepar'd to obstruct their passage; and there was as furious a littel fought as was ever heard of, which lasted till night. Chehabeddin at the head of ten thousand men came by the windings of the river to attack our army in the rear during night, and fought with great courage and bravery. The Emir Cheik Noureddin, a man of good conduct, receiv'd the enemy with the greatest intrepidity; and after several attacks entirely defeated 'em, constraining some to leap into the water, where they were drown'd, and killing the rest. Mansour and Doutrege Tencourz, officers of the emperor, perform'd many noble actions, and receiv'd several wounds.

Timur came with diligence to this place, and encamp'd near the Isle. Chehabeddin, who till that time had never us'd a precaution in an affair, was so prudent as to get ready two hundred

dead flat-bottom'd boats, that he might escape Chaspur, if he shou'd be conquer'd. Whereupon at his return from the night-attack, in which he was vanquish'd, he fled with his domestics in these boats. With a great deal of difficulty they escap'd, rowing along the river Jamad¹, and at length they came to Outcha², a town of India.

The Emir Cheik Noureddin had orders to pursue him along the banks of the river: he flew a great number of these Indians with arrows. When he return'd, the emperor rewarded those who had shew'd themselves gallantly on this occasion, and were wounded, giving 'em velets, and other things. Chehabeddin's boats arriving near the frontiers of Moultan, the troops of Mirza Fir Mehemed and Mirza Charoc, commanded by Solyman Chah, who had been sent out as scouts, hinder'd their passage, and seizing the boats on the river, cut 'em to pieces. Chehabeddin cast his wife and children into the river, and half-dead gain'd the bank. As many of this prince's subjects were driv'n into the woods, Timur order'd Chamelik to enter 'em, and if possible to exterminate all who were fled there for refuge. Chamelik accordingly enter'd the forests and bogs, and having slain a great number of these miserable people, and pillag'd their effects, return'd to the camp, laden with booty, and a great number of captives.

After the success against Chehabeddin, the army march'd five or six days on the banks of the Jamad³, and on the twenty-fourth of Muroz⁴ harten it encamp'd on the borders of the Gennare⁵, at a fortress over-against which the Jamad and the Gennare join in one stream, where

¹ On the Jamad above Moultan, Aug. 173, No. 30.

² It falls into the Ravi above Moultan.

Book IV. the waves dashing against one another, make it appear like the troubled ocean. Timur order'd a bridge to be built over it, which was finish'd on the twenty-seventh of Muharrem, all the troops having been employ'd in it. We don't find in history that ever any one built a bridge over it before: and even Turmechirin Can¹, who formerly cross'd it, was oblig'd to swim over.

C H A P. XI.

Timur's arrival at Toulonba.

Timur pass'd this great river² with all his army, and encamp'd on the other side: the next day having entirely left the bridge to give free passage to the baggage and the rest of the army, he went to encamp over-against the town of Toulonba, on the bank of the river, thirty-five miles³ from Moulken. The princes and Reyas, accompany'd by the Clerks and Doctors, immediately came out of the place to call themselves at Timur's feet; they kiss'd the ground on which he stood, and were handsomely treated by him.

Octob. 28. The same day Timur pass'd the river of Toulonba, and the twenty-ninth of Muharrem had on the other bank, till all the army was cross'd over. The first of Sebet he encamp'd in the neighboring plains of Toulonba.

¹ Defeated from Genghis Can: he conquer'd India, Aman Dom. 1240.

² Jaxart and Gourave join'd.

The ministers tax'd this town at two millions ^{Chap. 11.} of crowns for the safety of their effects and lives. The Cherriss, because of the nobleness of their race, and the doctors for their learning and virtue, were exempted from this tax. They had even presents made 'em of vests and other things, because Timur was naturally respectful to men of their character.

Some part of this tax was soon paid; but the inhabitants making a difficulty of paying the rest, the troops, who were in great want of provisions, had orders to carry away all the grain they cou'd find. During the night the soldiers, under pretence of making a search, march'd towards the town, which they sack'd and pillag'd, burning all the houses, and even making the inhabitants slaves; the Cherriss and doctors being the only persons exempt from this misfortune.

Timur had advice that a number of Rayas and little princes in the neighbourhood of Toudonba, who had before submitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, had now revolted; whereupon he sent the Emir Chamalik, and the Cheik Mehemed Aicoumire, with their regiments, to ravage the country of these Rayas, with orders to punish 'em severely, for an example to others. The Emirs immediately departed, and enter'd the forests whither the enemy was retir'd. They kill'd two thousand Indians, who became a prey to the wild beasts and birds; and carrying away their children prisoners, they return'd to the court, laden with the spoils of the rebels.

The eighth of Sefer, Timur departed from ^{Nor. 11.} Toudonba, and next day encamp'd on the borders of a deep lake, situate on the bank of the Biah¹, within sight of the town of Chinavaz.

¹ A river near Labor, which falls into the Rose.

C H A P. XII.

Timur marches in search of Nasret Coukeri.

TI M U R, having advice that Nasret, brother of the Cheik Coukeri, had surrounded this deep and large lake with a wall, behind which he had retir'd with two thousand men, immediately took horse, and leaving the baggage, went to encamp with his army on the borders of this lake. He rang'd his soldiers in order of battle, and gave the command of the right wing to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, the two greatest men of their time. The left wing was given to the Emirs Chamchik and Cheik Melchimed Aitcoutiur. The main body was commanded by Ali Sultan Tarachi, with the infantry of Corassans. And being all in orders, they prepar'd to give a vigorous assault. Nasret at the head of a thousand Indians, posted himself on the borders of the lake in view of our men. Ali Sultan immediately attack'd him with his infantry; and tho' the marshes and sloughs were very disadvantageous to our men, yet they gave marks of their invincible courage. Ali Sultan was wounded in the fight, as well as several others of our captains; but the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Allahdad, entering into the bogs, cut all the enemy to pieces, and fixing their heads on their lances, laid 'em at Timur's feet. It's uncertain what became of Nasret, whether he fled into the desert, or was slain. The soldiers set fire to the houses of these rebels, pillag'd their goods, and brought away a great number of cattle.

The tenth of Sefer the army pass'd this great lake, and the low-lands, which were full of bogs and marshes, notwithstanding the extreme difficulty of the ways; and went to encamp at Chauazz, a great and populous town. Here they found several granaries full of corn, of which the soldiers took as much as they had occasion for.

Shortly after the Emirs had orders to depart. They cross'd the river of Bish, in pursuit of some soldiers of Nusret who had fled. They overtook 'em, and having cut 'em in pieces, brought away a great booty. Timur staid two days at Chauazz, and set fire to the granaries which were left, in order to reduce the infidels to extremity; and on the 13th of Sefer he slept in camp'd, and went down to the banks of the river Bish over against the town of Dgandgan, to which place the baggage and main body of the army was come. Here he made all his troops pass the river. The same day Herimulc, a faithful domestic of prince Chiroc, came from Herat: he acquainted the emperor with this prince's good state of health, which very much pleas'd him, and excited him to read the Alcoran, and distribute alms in token of joy.

CHAP. XIII.

Arrival of prince Pir Mehemed Gihenghir from Moultan.

WE said in the chapter * which gives the reason of Timur's march into Inde, that the Mirza Pir Mehemed besieg'd the town of Moultan, where, after a siege of six months,

Book IV. the inhabitants were in such great want of victuals, that they were constrain'd to eat uncleanly things, and even dead bodys: and Sarek the governer being at length oblig'd to fly, the town was taken by our prince, who immediately sent advice of it to the emperor. In the mean while there happen'd an ^{*} inundation, which caus'd a mortality among our horses, and oblig'd us to carry the sick horses into the town, and there shut 'em up.

Upon this accident the Razas of these countrys revolted, tho' they had before submitted. They declar'd war against us by acts of hostility, massacring the governors who had been set over 'em. And as our men had no horses, these insolent people advanc'd during night to the gates of the town, which extremely disturb'd our Mirza: but at length the enemy, on ad- vice of Timur's approach, flung away their weapons, and fled.

The Mirza being deliver'd from this trouble, came out of Moultan the fourteenth of Sofer, and march'd to the imperial camp, on the banks of the Biah; where he had the honor to kiss the emperor's feet, who tenderly embrac'd him, and gave him a handsome reception.

Juneid Bourouldai, his brother Bayzid, and Mehemed Dervich Tzicani, who in the wait of Carezem had fled from the Emir Gehancha, and with great difficulty were got into India,

* Pechehal is the name the Indians give to the great rains and inundations which happen in India at a certain time of the year; for then they say to themselves, Don't go now, it is the season of Pechehal. This inundation is caus'd by the great rains and snows, which falling off the mountains, cover the flat country, fill the rivers, and overflow like the Nile in Egypt; and this constantly happens in the months of July, August, September and October.

having heard that the Mirza Pir Mehemed had made himself master of Moultan, came from the very furthest parts of India to implore his protection. The Mirza carry'd 'em to the emperor, and procur'd 'em the honor to salute him, begging pardon for 'em. Timur granted their lives, but not their libertys, before they had been bastinado'd according to the laws of Genghiz Can. The fifteenth of Sefer, Timur cross'd Nov. 11. the Bish, and went to encamp at Dgendgian, forty miles distant from Moultan. In three days the soldiers pass'd this river, some in barks, and others by swimming, notwithstanding its rapidity, without any damage.

Timur staid four days at Dgendgian; and the eighteenth of Sefer, the prince Pir Mehemed made a sumptuous banquet, and offer'd his rich presents, which consisted of crowns of gold, belts of gold, Arabian horses with gold saddles, jewels of great price, stuns, curious vessels, basons and pots of gold and silver; of which there was so great a number, that the secretarys and comptrollers of the Divan employ'd two days in registering 'em. Timur distributed these presents among the Emirs, Viziers and officers of his court, according to their deserts: and as the Mirza's soldiers had lost their horses in this campain, and some were oblig'd to ride on oxen, and others to go on foot, he gave thirty thousand horses among 'em. Then Timur departed for Schoual¹: on the twenty first Nov. 18. of Sefer he encamp'd at Afouan², where he staid one day, and at length went to Gehaou³.

¹ Town S. of the river Bish.

² A town between Lash and Dijipour, S. of the Bish.

Book IV.

The inhabitants of Dipalpour¹ had formerly submitted to the Mirza Pir Mehemed, who placed over 'em a governor nam'd Mehsafer Cull, with a thousand men: but there being a mortality among the horses of the Mirza, which consequently diminish'd his troops, these men joined with the Goulam² guards of Sultan Firouz Ghah, and flew Mehsafer with the thousand men he commanded. On the report of Timur's approach, these rebels, thinking to escape the emperor's fury, retir'd with their effects into the fortresses of Batinir. Timur, at his arrival at Ghezat, left the Lair Chaluncik and Dosec Timur Cavachi, with the baggage, and main-body of the army, which he order'd 'em to conduct by the way of Dipalpour, and to join him at Samara, a town near Deli. Then he departed with ten thousand horse, and got to Adjondan on the twenty fourth of Sciser³; the inhabitants of which town having been drawn from their obedience to the nephew of the Cheikh Noureddin, by the Cheikh Munaver and Sad, had principally abandon'd their country: for these Cheikhs after having seduc'd 'em, took 'em into their pay, and carry'd 'em to a town call'd Harar, except some few who fled to Deli with the Cheikh Munaver.

The Cheikhs and doctors, being inform'd of the respect Timur always shew'd to men of their character, were so far from being disturb'd at

¹ A town between Lahore and Deli.

² Similar are the corps-de-garde of the Indian kings, who of chaste lives turn Mahometans. They are educated by the king's order in the noble exercices of arms and sciences. There are also such in Persia, who in their youth are call'd Goulam, and when grown up are incorporate among the guards, Cossacks,

these actions, that as soon as they had advice Chap. 14. of his arrival in their quarters, they came im- mediately to the foot of the throne, and met with a kind reception there. Timur gave the government of their town to Moulana Nasreddin Amor, and to Shahab Mehemed son of Coja Mahmoud, with orders to hinder the troops in their passage from molesting the inhabitants of that place. Thus Timur treated those civilly who rely'd on his protection, and extirpated those who refus'd to submit, pillag- ing their goods, and carrying away prisoners their women and children.

C H A P. XIV.

The taking the town of Bend, and the fortress of Batmir; the inhabitants of which places are put to the sword.

THE citadel of Batmir was the strongest and most noted place in India; situate in a desert, and out of the common road. The inhabitants have no water, except from a great lake near the gate of the town, which is never fill'd but in inundations: and as no foreign army ever came into these parts before, the inhabitants of Dipalpour, Adjoudan and other towns, fled for refuge into Batmir, to escape the fury of our soldiers. So many had retir'd hither, that the place not being large enough to contain all their cattle and effects, they had left without a great number of cattle, and several chariots fill'd with moveable goods.

Book IV. The twenty fifth of Sefer, in the morning,
 Timur enter'd Adjoudan ; he visited the se-
 pulchre of the Cheik Ferid Cheker Coadge,
 whose protection he implor'd near God's throne.
 Then he departed for the conquest of Batoir,
 cross'd the river Dena, and encamp'd on the hill
 of Calescuteli, ten miles distant from Adjoudan,
 and fifty from Batnir ; three miles, which they
 call Gourouh, making one Barsangz, or a Per-
 sian league. Timur read the noon-prayers at Ca-
 lescuteli ; and then he march'd all night by moon-
 light, and cross'd the great desert in one day.

Nov. 23. The twenty sixth of Sefer, at ten in the
 morning, he came before Batnir, and im-
 mediately caus'd the drums to be beat, and the
 great cry Sourouh to be made : and the soldiers
 pillag'd whatever they cou'd find without the
 place. Raoudouldgin the governor prepar'd to
 make resistance. He had a great many soldiers
 and domestics, and reign'd as a sovereign in
 that country. He forc'd the merchants and ca-
 ravans to pay custom to him, no one being safe
 from his insults. The strength of the place,
 the many officers, and the abundance of effects
 he had, made him so insolent and proud,
 that he refus'd to obey Timur ; for which rea-
 son the army march'd directly against the place.
 The right wing was commanded by the Emir
 Solymau Chah, the Cheik Nonreddin, and Al-
 lalidat ; and the left had for its leaders, the
 Mirza Calli Sultan, and the Cheik Mehemed
 Aicoutmuz.

At the first attack our generals made them-
 selves masters of the out-parts and suburbs,
 where they slew a great number of Indians,
 and got a vast quantity of booty ; they also
 took the counterscarp : and at the same time the
 Emirs, colonels and captains invested the town ;
 and

and arming themselves with their bucklers, *Chap. 12.* gave a second assault. Raoudouldgin posted himself at the gate of the town with the bravest of his Indians, but the Emirs Solyman Chah, * Said Coja and Gehan Mule, who belong'd to prince Charoe's court, march'd to attack that gate. Said Coja and Gehan Mule fell briskly upon the enemy near the person of the Indian prince, and perform'd several heroic actions. Then all the soldiers began to advance at the sound of kettledrums, drums and trumpets, and the terrible Kerrenai. They gave many assaults; and as they were on the point of gaining the place, Raoudouldgin, despairing of being able to make any longer resistance, demanded quarter, and had recourse to the emperor's clemency. He sent a Sheriff to Timur, to desire a suspension of arms for one day; on condition that he came the next to cast himself at his feet. Timur granted his petition for the messenger's sake, who was of the race of Mahomet; he order'd his soldiers to retire from the gate of the town, and even from the suburbs, and to incamp in the open plain. Next day Raoudouldgin not keeping his word, orders were given that every Emir shou'd sap that part of the walls which was over-against his respective post, that they might the more easily take the town by assault. Every one obey'd, and all the fire, stones and arrows the besieg'd cast upon our men, cou'd not divert 'em. Raoudouldgin and all his court being astonish'd at their intrepidity, got upon the tops of their towers, and made signals that they implor'd the conqueror's clemency, acknowledg'd their fault, and wou'd for the future obey the emperor, only begging he wou'd save their lives. Timur, following the precepts of the Alcoran, which

Book IV. which tells us that pardon is the ritho of victory, hearken'd to their prayer; whereupon in the evening Raoudouhigin sent his son Naib, with presents of animals and arabian horses, to the foot of the throne. Timur, after a handson reception, gave him a vest of gold-brocade, a belt and sword; and then sent him back to his father. This prince took courage, and mor'd at Timur's civilitys, came out of the place the twenty-eighth of Sefer at nine in the morning, accompany'd by the Cheik Saleddin Adjoudan; he kis'd the threshold of the door, and at length approach'd the imperial carpet; he made several presents of animals and three sets of arabian horses, muc in a set, with saddles of gold to each. Timur recompens'd him with vests of gold, belts of gold, and a crown. And because the people who were in this place, were very numerous, especially those of Dipalpore and Adjoudan; the Emirs Solyman Ciah and Allahdad had orders to guard the gte of the fortres. And on the twenty-ninth of Sefer, Timur order'd the people assembled there to come before him. They were put into the custody of some faithful persons; and near three hundred Arabian horses were taken from 'em, which Timur gave to the Emirs and bravest warriors of the army. Five hundred of the inhabitants of Dipalpore were put to the sword, and their wives and children made slaves, for having treacherously slain Meissafir Cabuli, and a thousand horsemen belonging to the Mirza Pir Mebhemed. And as for the people of Adjoudan, who had abandon'd Timur, part of 'em were slain, and the rest made prisoners, after having their effects pillag'd.

Kemaleddin, brother of Raoudalidgin, having ~~oppo-~~
seen the punishment of those who had deferv'd it, was seiz'd with a panic fear: and next day, tho' Raoudalidgin was in the imperial camp, he caus'd the gate of the town to be shut. This so irritated Timur, that he caus'd Raoudalidgin to be put in chains, and order'd the siege to begin again, and the place to be fill'd with the blood of tho' inhabitants. The soldiers having set themselves to sap the walls, the besieg'd soon found they shou'd not be able to defend themselves against so warlike a people, and an ever-victorious prince: they were perswaded that if the place shou'd be taken by assault, they must not expect their lives, for repentance wou'd then signify nothing: whereupon they resolv'd to beg pardon of the emperor. Accordingly Raoudalidgin's brother and son went out, to beseech Timur to grant a general pardon, and deliver'd the keys of the town and castle into the hands of our officers.

The first of Rabinevel, the Emirs Cheik Nov. 12 Neureddin and Alshadid enter'd the place to receive the tribute for saving the people's lives; but the Rayas and other chiefs wou'd not accept the tax: and as there were among the rest Guebres and idolaters, disputes arose, which could not be terminated without commotions and broils. Timur was intent'd at this proceeding: and order'd that this rabble shou'd be put to the sword, and the houses of the infidels raz'd to the ground. The soldiers scal'd the walls, and enter'd the place sword in hand. The Guebres set fire to their own houses, casting their wives, children and goods into the fires; and those who call'd themselves Musulmens cut their wives and childrens throats. And thus the men of these two sorts uniting together,

Book IV put themselves in a posture of defence, being
 resolv'd to die sword in hand. They fought
 in a cruel obstinate manner: and as these men
 were exceeding strong and courageous, tho' ig-
 norant, they may be compar'd to an army of
 satyrs, who fight only in despair.

Our men having enter'd the place, and cry'd
 out Allahou Ecber¹, fell upon these enraged
 people, who slew several Mahulmans, and
 wounded others. The Emir Cheik Noureddin,
 who to partake of the honor of this expedition,
 had resolv'd to dire the greatest dangers, ad-
 vanc'd into the midst of the enemy, and struck
 with his sword one of the bravest of 'em, whom
 he disabled from fighting. But the Emir was
 immediately surrounded by a troop of Guebres,
 and was near being seiz'd by 'em, had not Ouzoun
 Mezid of Bagdad, and Firouz of Sistan made
 their way thro' these infidels, and deliver'd him
 from danger. Victory at length declaring for
 our men, they slew ten thousand Indians, set fire
 to the houses which remain'd, and even ruin'd
 the walls of the town, so that it look'd like an
 uninhabitable place. The emperor distributed
 among the soldiers all the gold, silver, horses
 and habits that were in the place. He rewarded
 the wounded; and gave great gifts to Ouzoun
 Mezid and Firouz, who had acted with so
 much resolution in delivering the Emir Cheik
 Noureddin, and rais'd 'em to dignity according
 to their merit.

¹ God is great. The Mahulmans begin all their prayers
 with these words, which they often repeat, with their face to-
 wards the ground.

CHAP. XV.

Timur departs from Batnir, for Serest, Fatabad and Ahrouni.

AFTER the ruin of Batnir, the multitude of dead carcases which infected the air, oblig'd Timur to depart thence the third of Nov. 1402 Rabulevel. When he had march'd about fourteen or fifteen miles, he came to Kenarei Haour^{the basin}, where he encamp'd. Next day he went to the castle of Firouze; and march'd as far as the town of Serest, the inhabitants of which being infidels, eat swines-flesh. They fled on advice of Timur's arrival, who sent out a detachment of horse in pursuit of 'em. This cavalry overtook a great number, whom they put to the sword, and brought their horses and goods back to the camp; Aulc Ferzeh being the only person on our side who was slain. Timur laid one day at Serest, and the next march'd eighteen miles, as far as Fatabad, where he encamp'd. The inhabitants of this town were also fled. Some of our men pursu'd 'em, destroy'd several, and return'd laden with booty, as silver, furniture and cattel.

The seventh of Rabulevel, Timur pass'd by the town of Redgebuour, and went to encamp near that of Ahrouni, which was inhabited by a brutish people, unfit for making compliments to the emperor, or demanding his protection: wherefore part of 'em were destroy'd like beasts, and the rest made slaves by the soldiers, who carry'd away their corn, and set fire to their houses.

Book IV. The eighth of Rabinevel, the army departed from Alrouni, to encamp in the plains of the village of Touhene, a country inhabited by Gezes, who had by force of arms made themselves masters of it a long time, and committed disorders there. They rob'd on the high-ways, insulted and pillag'd the caravans, and not leaving the least marks of religion, murder'd all who oppos'd their violence. On the report of the arrival of our troops, these wretches hid themselves in the midst of a wood, where almost all the trees were full of prickles.

The emperor sent against 'em a regiment commanded by Toubet Hindoui Garzata, and Moulana Nasreddin Amor. These two lords made so strict a search after these robbers, that they put to the sword near two thousand, render'd themselves masters of their cattle, and return'd to the imperial camp, dragging after 'em several of these wretches loaded with chains.

CHAP. XVI.

Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Gezes.

TIMUR's intention in these wars being chiefly to exterminate robbers, tyrants and infidels, to put a stop to their disorders, and give peace and tranquillity to the people; he departed from Touhene the ninth of Rabinevel; and having sent the baggage under the conduct of Solymat Chah towards Samane, he march'd beyond the castle of Mounec, where he encamp'd. Then he enter'd the deserts and woods, whither the Gezes were retir'd;

he extermimated two thousand of 'em, making their wifes and children slaves, and pillaging their goods and cattle. Thus he deliver'd the country from the fear of their insults.

Several Choriffs, who made their ordinary residence in a town in these quarters, came to cast themselves at Timur's feet, and kiss'd his hands. Timur receiv'd 'em with demonstrations of esteem and affection, gave 'em rents and considerable presents; and fix'd a governor over 'em, to defend 'em from the insults of our soldiers.

The tenth of Rabiullevel, the Emir Solyman Dec. 7. Chah departed with all the train of artillery which was before Mounee; and march'd towards the town of Saniane, where he staid one night. The eleventh of Rabiullevel he arriv'd Dec. 8. at the river of Kekkor, at which place Timur join'd him, after he had been against the Gezes. Here he staid four days, to wait the remainder of the baggage. He departed hence the fifteenth of Rabiullevel, and went to encamp near the bridge of Fouleouble, where he was join'd by the Emirs and soldiers of the left wing, commanded by the Soltan Mahmoud Czv, and severil otherz, whom Timur had sent from the meadow of Cabul by a particular road into India, where they had taken town, ravag'd the country, and brought into subjection severil people.

The sixteenth of Rabiullevel, the imp'ror, Dec. 15. the head of his army, cross'd the bridge of Fouleouble, and encamp'd on the other side. The baggage and remainder of the army from Dipalpout, under the conduct of the great general Charchlik, also arriv'd the same day at the imperial camp.

Book IV. The twentieth of Rabislevl, the army departed from Foulcouble. Dec. 22. They went but five miles that day, and encamp'd near the bridge Foulbeirza. The twenty first they arriv'd at the town of Kuteil, seventeen miles from Samane.

C H A P. XVII.

A review of the whole army marching in order of battle.

WHEN the several bodys of the army, which had taken different roads, had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given that every Emir shou'd repair to his respective post. The right wing was commanded by the Muzzs-Pic Mehemed and Ropsllem; the left by the great Sultan Mahoud, Can of Zagatal, with the princes of the blood, and several Emirs: and the main body was compos'd of divers Tatars and regiments, which march'd six leagues and two miles by the road of Delli.

Dec. 23. The twenty-second of Rabislevl, they arriv'd at the town of Assendi, seventeen miles from Kuteil. The inhabitants of Samane, Kuteil, and Assendi, who were mostly idolaters, burnt their own houses, and fled to Delli; so that our men cou'd meet with no one in their country.

Dec. 24. The twenty-third, after a march of six miles, they encamp'd at Toglocpour, the inhabitants of which town were of a particular religion. They believ'd that the whole universe was govern'd by two beings, the first of which they call Yerulan, that is, God; and the other Ah-rimen, that is, the devil. The former they

explicis

explain by light, and the other by darkness: Chap. 12. presending that all good proceeds from God, and all evil from the devil.

These idolaters, call'd Souloun, having all fled, our soldiers set fire to the town. The twenty-fourth of Rabihulevel the army arriv'd at Panipat, a town twelve miles from Toglooper. All the inhabitants had fled like the rest. There was found in this place a granary of wheat, in which were more than ten thousand Mangs¹ of full weight, worth about a hundred and fifty thousand Mangs of common weight, which was distributed among the soldiers. The twenty-fifth Dec. 21. they march'd about six miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Panipat. The twenty-sixth all the Emirs girded on their curasses, that they might be ready upon occasion, and then continu'd their march.

The twenty-seventh of Rabihulevel, the Emirs Dec. 24. of the right wing had orders to march as far as Gehammasi, a palace built by the Sultan Firouz Chah on the top of a mountain, two leagues from Delhi: at the foot of which ran the great river Jacon. According to this order, they march'd from Canghatru to Sir as Gehammasi, putting to the sword all the officers they met, and making slaves of the inhabitants of that country, whom they pillag'd. On Monday the twenty-ninth, Timur departed from the town of Pelle, cross'd the Jacon, and march'd to the right of the town of Louni, where was abundance of pasture: here he encamp'd the same day. This place is situat between the two rivers of Jacon and Helen. The latter is a great branch which the Sultan Firouz Chah

¹ A Mang is a pound, or thereabouts.

Book IV. had cut off from the river of Calini, which joins the Jason near the town of Firouzabad. The Emirs Gehan Chah, Chamekh, and Allah-dad, were already come to the foot of this castle, the governors of which, nam'd Maimoun and Maichoum, far from coming to meet 'em with submission, resolv'd to defend themselves. At Timur's arrival there, an experient old man came out to cast himself with respect at the emperor's feet, and demand his protection: but the inhabitants, who were Guebres and the servants of Mellon, persisted in their rash resolution of resistance.

Then Timur order'd his men to besiege the town, and sap the walls. Accordingly they began to do it at noon, and by evening made themselves masters of the place, where the Guebres had burnt their houses, with their women and children. Timur repos'd himself this night without the place, and the thirtieth of Rabiul-level order'd that the inhabitants who were Mahometans, shou'd be separated from the Guebres and servants of Mellon Can: which being done, the latter were put to the sword. All the houses were pillag'd excepting those of the Clerks, for whom Timur always preserv'd a special affection, because of their extraction: and then the rest of the town was set on fire.

Dec. 27. The first of Rabiulaher, Timur departed from the town of Louci, and went to the bank of the Ruum, before the palace of Gehnumai: so that observing himself the passages in these places, he might the better know how to give out his orders. He return'd to the camp in the evening, and assembled his imperial council, consisting of the princes his children, the great Emirs, and generals of his army. He propos'd to 'em the method of forming the siege of Deli, capital

capital of India, which was not far off: and Order'd, it was resolv'd, that a great quantity of corn and ammunition shou'd be got together forthwith, and kept in Gehannumai; and that this great city shou'd be block'd up.

Accordingly the Emirs Solyman Chah, Ghan Chah, and others, were order'd to fill'd the granarys in the neighbourhood of Deli: whereupon they set out in the beginning of the month of Rabiulakher. Next day Timur was for taking the diversion of walking in the palace of Gehannumai: he took horse with seven hundred cavaliers with their cuirasses on, pass'd the river Jahan, and enter'd into this magnificent palace, to which the Sultan Firouz Chah had given the name of Gehannumai, that is, the mirror of the universe, because of its fine prospect: the one would think this name was rather given it, to prognosticate that it shou'd fall into the hands of the monarch of the universe.

After Timur had consider'd the beauty's of this place, he took care to observe from this rising-ground the properest place for the field of battel, that he might draw the enemys thither in case they appear'd. In the mean time Ali Sultan Tarachi and Juncid Bourouldai, who had been sent out as scouts, return'd; Ali-Sultan bringing with him Mehemed Solef whom he had leiz'd, and Juncid bringing another. Mehemed Solef was question'd concerning what had been translat'd in the city, and then put to death. When Timur had pass'd the river, to observe the field of battel, four thousand horse, five thousand foot, and twenty-seven elephants, belonging to Meliou Can, were seen near Gehannumai. Our scouts, command'd by Seid Coja and Mobacher, to the number

Book IV. of three hundred, attack'd their vanguard, and pretending to fly, led 'em as far as the bank of the river, where a furious battle ensu'd.

On advice of this, Timur sent Sevindgic Be-hader and Allabdad to succour Seid Coja : they cross'd the river with their regiments, and having join'd him, let fly a shower of arrows on the enemy ; but as they were about to fall on 'em with their drawn swords, the Indians, unaccusom'd to such brave actions, gave ground at the first onset, and fled towards the city, which with difficulty they enter'd. Seid Coja pursu'd 'em, and slew a great number. In this flight an elephant fell and was wounded ; which was a prognostic of our further victory.

CHAP. XVIII.

Timur marches to the east side of the town of Loun. Massacre of a hundred thousand Indian slaves who were in his camp.

Dec. 22

* Orah
Zader. **T**HE third of Rabindaher, Timur departed from Ghanumai, and went to encamp on the east side of Loun, where the emperor's sons*, the great Emirs, the colonels of the regiments, who were gone out to make inroads, came to the imperial camp. Being all assembled, Timur, who wou'd not give place to the greatest generals of the army, nor the most undaunted warriors, as well in policy and wisdom of government, as in war, believ'd it not improper to harangue the leaders, imitating in that the example of the antient emperors and the most illustrious conquerors. This he did

did with all the eloquence that cou'd be expected Chap. 18.
on the like occasion. He spoke to 'em of the manner of breaking thro' ranks, of overrunning squadrons; and how they shou'd repulse the enemy: he instructed 'em how to make retreats when overpower'd, and how rally the soldiers and return to the attack; how to sustain an obstinate fight, and how to free one's self from any eminent danger. In short, he explain'd to 'em, with so much energy and perspicuity, all the maxims of war, that his captains admis'd the extraordinary wisdom and experience which appear'd in his speech, saying that the discourses of great princes are the most beautifull; insomuch that being excited by the lively reasons and learned maxims which he had inculcated, they were fill'd with zeal and ardor, and prepar'd to confront the greatest dangers in his service. They answer'd every thing he propos'd by generous vows for his prosperity, and the continuall of his victory; they kiss'd the ground on which he stood, to testify their respect and joy at being the officers of so great a conqueror.

The same day the Emir Gehan Chah and the other generals remonstrated to Timur, that since his crossing the Indus, they had made above a hundred thousand Indian slaves, who were mostly Guebres and idolaters; that they were now in the camp, and wou'd probably in any obstinate battle, take part with the men of Deli, and falling upon our soldiers, make us lose the battle. This remonstrance was back'd by those who had observ'd, that when the officers of Mellou Can came out of Deli with their elephants to attack us, the slaves seem'd highly pleas'd. Timur having made a serious reflection on all the circumstances of this affair,

Book IV. pass'd an order, that those who had any Indian slaves shou'd put 'em to death; and he who deser'd or relis'd doing so, shou'd be put to death himself, and his wives, children and effects be given to him who shou'd inform against him.

As soon as this order was made publick, they began to put it in execution, and in less than an hour were put to death a hundred thousand Indians, according to the smallest computation. Among others, Montana Nasreddin Amon, one of the most venerable doctors of the court, who cou'd never consent so much as to kill a single sheep, was constrain'd to order fifteen slaves whom he had in his house to be slain. Timur afterwards order'd that one soldier out of every ten, shou'd keep watch over the Indian women and children, as also over the camels they had taken in the pillage.

After these precautions, Timur resolv'd to march to the siege of Delhi: he set out on the third of Rabulaher at noon, to encamp on the bank of the Joom. The astrologers and soothsayers secretly disputed concerning the disposition of the heavens, and of the fortunate or unfortunate aspects of the planets at his departure: but Timur told 'em that neither joy nor affliction, adversity nor prosperity, depended on the stars, but on the will of the Creator of them, of men, and of the universe. "I confide," says the emperor, in the assistance of the Almighty, who has never abandon'd me. "What avail the triplicity or conjunctions of the planets? I'll never delay one moment the execution of my projects, when I have taken sufficient measures and precautions to bring 'em to perfection." Next morning our hero made the publick prayer, and order'd an Al-

coran to be brought him, from whence he might judge of the event of his expedition. Here he found a very favorable answer, which point'd out the destruction of a people by a wonderful effect of the almighty providence. He explain'd the passage in his own favor, and having shewn it to all the army, became assur'd of the victory. Our warriors being thus animated by the Alcoran, which promis'd 'em the divine protection, Timur despis'd the stars; and on the fifth of Rabialakher 803, cross'd the river Jan¹, of Joun, and encamp'd on its banks on the other side. The soldiers thro' precaution made a ditch to surround 'em, near a hill nam'd Pouchtei Behali; here they fix'd palisados of branches of trees; and for a rampart bound several great buffalos neck and heels; behind which they prepar'd their bucklers and ensigns.

C H A P. XIX.

Timur gives battel to Sultan Bakrmeud, emperour of India.

TUESDAY-morning the seventh of Ra-^{Jan 1} binlakher, Timur drew up his army in order of battel. He gave the command of the right wing to prince Pir Mehemed Gehzangir, accompany'd by several Emirs. The left wing was led by the Mirzas, Sultan Husein, and Ccil Sultan, also assist'd by many great generals. The rear was given to the Mirza Rousiem, in conjunction with several illustrious Emirs; and the main body was commanded by Timur himself; it being fit that this prince, who was

Book IV, the very life of the soldiers, should be fix'd in
 the heart of the army. Every thing being thus
 settled, they march'd in good order.

The enemy also advanc'd in order of battle.
 Their right wing, was brought up by Tagi
 Kan, Mir Ali Gajar, and other Indian princes.
 The left behind us leaders Malek Mameddin,
 and others: and the main body was commanded
 by the Sultan Malmoud Kan, grandson of
 Firoz Chah, emperor of India, he having for
 his lieutenant-general Mullen Kan. This army
 consisted of ten thousand horse well equipp'd,
 and forty thousand foot arm'd to advantage,
 besides several elephants of war, arm'd with
 curasses, having between their long teeth great
 poison'd daggers, and on their backs wooden
 towers in form of ballions, on which were
 mounted a great many crus-bow-men and ar-
 chers, who cou'd fight under coverr as in for-
 tresses: and on the side of the elephants march'd
 the flingers of fire and melted pitch, as also ro-
 ckets arm'd at the ends with iron, which give
 several blows one after another wherever they
 fall.

Our soldiers were not much distract'd about
 this Indian army: but as they had never seen
 any elephants before, they ignorantly imagin'd
 that the arrow and sabre had no effect on the
 bodies of these animals: that they were so very
 strong, that they overthrew trees only by shak-
 ing the earth as they pass'd along: that they cou'd
 throw down the strongest buildings: and that
 in battle they wou'd toss both horse and horse-
 man to a vast height in the air. This desir'd
 several of our side: so that when the poults were
 fix'd for the officers and lords of the court,
 Tamer, who always shew'd respect to men of
 learning, chily demanded of 'em what poults
 they

they wou'd chuse. Several of these doctors, ^{Chap. 12} who were always near Timur's person, being frightened at what they had read and heard of the elephants, answer'd immediately, " If it please your majesty, we chuse to be near the lady's."

Timur being sensible of his soldiers fear, took ^{Timur's} all necessary precautions to arm 'em with courage. ^{armies in} He order'd that a rampart of bucklers ^{overcom} should be made before the ranks, and a ditch ^{the Indian} dug before the rampart: then he caus'd buffalos ^{elephants} to be tied by the neck and feet with long pieces of leather, close to each other; after which on each side of 'em and on their heads were fix'd brambles. Besides this were made iron-hocks, three-fork'd, and fix'd to stakes; so that when the elephants shou'd come to the attack, these hocks shou'd be planted in their way, and the brambles on the buffalos set on fire to put the elephants into disorder. But victory declar'd for us before we had occasion to make use of these machines.

As soon as the two armys were in view, Timur got upon an eminence in the middle of the field of battel, near the foot of the hill of Pouchuri Behali, whence he observ'd the motion of both armys. When they were on the point of coming to blows, he fell on the earth, and after several times bowing, besought God to give him the victory, which he must expect from the divine goodness, and not from his own valor, and the number of his soldiers.

While Timur was at prayer, a strange accident happen'd, which was, that the Emirs of the rear, Cheik Naureddin, Chem-ill and Al-lahdail, imagin'd that if the emperors they'd sent recruits from the main body to the right wing, and even to the rear, this wou'd be a certain token

Book IV. token of victory. Accordingly after prayer Timur order'd Ali Sultan Tivach, and Tagi Bougzi, who commanded the regiment of Sanci of the Toman of Roustem, which belong'd to the main-body; as also Altou Baechi Peleri, and Moussa Reemal, to go with their regiments to succour the right wing; and at the same time he sent another squadron of Emirs to reinforce the rear. This so excited the courage of our warriors, that they rush'd impetuously upon the enemy, whom they attack'd with so much vigour, that the Indians were constrain'd to give ground, and the great and strong elephants suffer'd themselves to be drove like oxen.

This advantage augmented the valor of the other battalions, who also fell upon the enemy, praising God. So hot a battel was ne'er seen before; the fury of soldiers was ne'er carry'd to so great excess; and so frightful a noise was never heard: for the cymbals, the common kettle-drums, the drums and trumpets, with the great brass kettle-drums which were beat on the elephants backs, the bells which the Indians sounded, and the cries of the soldiers, were enough to make even the earth to shake: and there was not a man, how daurable soever, who was not somewhat dismay'd at the beginning of the fight. But our vanguard, compas'd of the regiments of many illustrious Emirs, perceiving the enemy's vanguard advancing, retir'd behind the right wing to lie in ambuscade, till they had pass'd by 'em; then they came out of their ambuscade, and fell on the enemy sword in hand like roaring lions, and in a moment slew between five and six hundred men. The prince Pir Mehemed, who was at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, assynd by the Emir Solymon Chal, attack'd the left of the enemy, which

which confis'd in the valor of Tagi Can: this Chp. 10. he did with so much conduct, that he drove 'em beyond the basin of Harran. Then Pie Me-
hemed set upon the elephants; and these furious animals, finding themselves closely press'd, enter'd among the ranks of the enemy's left wing, and caus'd a further disorder. Our left wing, command'd by the Mirza Sultan Hussein, perform'd several great actions, thro the valor of that prince, of Gehan Chah Behader, Sayas-
din Terean, and others; for they made the enemy's right wing, command'd by Moined-
din and Malek Han, give ground, and those who escap'd the edge of the sword, were re-
pul'd as far as the gate of the city. While the enemy's wings were thus gau'd, their main body, sustain'd by the elephants in good order, came to the attack: they had a warm recep-
tion from the Mirza Roustem who command'd the rear, and was polld over against 'em. A bloody battel entu'd, in which the Emir Cheik Noureddin gave marks of extraordinary valor. The Emir Chamelik also perform'd the most heroic actions, rushing furiously into the midst of the elephants, with Doler Timur Tzachi, and Meagheli Coja. With their lances they over-
threw those who were mounted on the ele-
phants, and with their sabres and arrows cut off the trunks of these terrible animals, whom they wounded in all parts of their bodys; so that in a short time the field of battel was cover'd with the elephants trunks, and the heads and bodys of the slain.

The most valiant Indians always endeavor'd to defend themselves; but this action seem'd rather like the struggling of the going to the slaughter, than a vigorous resistance. Thus these poor Indians were constrain'd to turn their

Book IV. their backs with their elephants; to which this passage of the Alcoran may be well apply'd : " Do you not see how the Lord thy God has dealt with the men of the elephant ? " ²

The Sultan Mahmoud, and his head-general Mellon Can, seld into the city, the gate of which they shut.

The Mirza Cail Sultan, who commanded our left wing, brought to Timur one of the elephants bound with cords: after having very much wound it with the sword, he overthrew its guards, and made it walk before him, as the hussar-man does the ox in the plow. Timur and all the court were surpris'd that a child, of but fifteen years old, shou'd dare to attack, and be able to conquer and bind a war-elephant, which had struck terror into the whole army.

When the sight of the enemy had alar'm'd us of victory, Timur sall'd his horse towards the gate of Deli, and carefully examin'd the walls and fortifications; and as it was the time of noon-prayer, he went down to the bank of the Havigra, which is a round basin, above an arrow's shot in diameter, built by the Sultan Fironz Chah; and as in any inundation it is fill'd with rain-water, it furnishes the inhabitants of Deli with water for an entire year. On its bank is the tomb of Sultan Fironz Chah.

Timur being encamp'd here, the princes and generals came before him to kiss the earth; they congratulated him on his victory, and gave applause to the princes of the blood, the Emirs, and other brave men, who had signalis'd themselves in the battle.

* The Arabians before the Hegira had an epocha call'd the Elephant.

Timur upon hearing these strange adventures, Chap. 22 burst out into tears of joy: he thank'd God for having given him such brave children, and such faithful and valiant subjects. Was it not surprising, that this great prince, who on some occasions cou'd exercise extraordinary severity, had at this time so render a heart, that he cou'd not restrain his tears, while he return'd thanks to God for his favors? Timur had in the person of Calil Sultan a son worthy of himself, who in magnificence, valor and generosity, surpass'd Menoutcher¹, Fecidon and Kei Cosru; he was as virtuous as Alexander, and as rich as Darius. He was at first nam'd the friend of God, Calil Allah; and the glory he afterwards acquir'd, was the reason of his being call'd Sultan.

C H A P. XX.

Flight of Sultan Mahmoud, and his general Mellau Can, prince of Moxtan. Reduction of Delhi capital of India.

THE Sultan Mahmoud and Mellau Can, being vanquish'd, re-enter'd the city, repenting they had ever undertaken to go out: but repentance now being useless, they cou'd have recourse only to flight. They departed at midnight while it was very dark: the Sultan went out by the gate of Haydzkapi, and Mellau by that of Baraka; both which are

¹ Son of Fecidon, King of Delhi.

Book IV. turned south at Gehaopenah: and they retir'd
 into the deserts.

Timur being inform'd of this flight, sent several Emirs in pursuit of 'em; they seiz'd on some of their officers who fled with 'em, and return'd with a great quantity of booty, taking prisoners the prince Seif Can, Sirnam'd Malek Cherfeddin, and the prince Cedadad, son of Mellou Can.

The same night the Emir Allahdad, and other colonels of our regiments, had orders to make themselves masters of the gates by which the princes went out; as also to guard the other gates of the city, that no one might escape.

The eighth of Rabibakher, Timur erected his standard on the walls of Deli, and went in person to the gate of the capital, where he sat on the Aidgiah, or throne whereon the Indian emperors sit in their royal robes on the great feasts-day. This gate is in the quarter of Gehaopenah, over against the bason of Havizcar. In this place a tent and tribunal were prepar'd for him, where he gave audience. Then the Cherifs, Cadis, and principal persons of the city of Deli, came to cast themselves at the foot of the throne, and had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Faillallah Hacchi, lieutenant of Mellou Can, at the head of the whole Divan of Deli, was the first who came to make his submission; and the Cherifs, the men of learning, and the old men, address'd themselves to the princes the emperor's sons, and to the great Emirs, to obtain quarter: so the Mirza Pir Mehemed, and the Emirs Soliman Chah and Gehan Chah, at a proper time presented their petition.

According to custom they carry'd the horse's tail and kettledrums, which were fix'd upon

the

the gate: and the consorts of amio were performed on this occasion on the tune Ribavi, as'd ~~in~~ only on victory. And to preserve the memory of so considerable a conquest, an ingenious poet made these verses, the letters of which form the epocha of this memorable day¹.

*On the eighth of the month of Rabia-el-Jan.²
ber, the ever-victorious emperor Timur made 1395.
himself master of Dili, the sun being in Ca-
picora.*

All the elephants and rhinoceros's were brought to Timur. These animals, being before instructed, fell down before the emperor in an humble posture, and at the same time made a great cry as if they demanded quarter. There were an hundred and twenty of these elephants of war, which at the return from India were sent to Samarcand, and to the provinces of the empire, where Timur's sons resided. Two were carry'd chain'd to Tauris, one to Chiraz, five to Herat, one to Chirvan to the Chokh Ibrahim, and one to Azzendigian to the lord Taharten. The tenth of Rabia-el-Jan.³ ber, the doctor Nasreddin Amor was order'd to enter the city, with the other lords and Clerks in the court, to preach in the grand mosque, and make the public prayers and Combe in the august name and titles of the invincible emper-

¹ The Orientals have an alphabet, the letters of which they make use of instead of numbers, and by which they compute a year in the year of any one who has perform'd some remarkable action; and the letters of this year at the expense, during the day, month and year wherein this action was perform'd.

Book IV. for Timur, and not in the name of Firuz
 Chah, as was done before.

The Debris, Menchis and other secretarys, sent a relation of this expedition, in their letters of conquest, into all the parts of the empire, and even to the princes in alliance with Timur, tho' it were a year's journey to go round to 'em all; so that public rejoicings might be made for these great advantages with which God distinguish'd the reign of Timur.

The Bittéctchis, or controllers of the Divan, also enter'd the city, where having taken an estimate of the mony due for saving the peoples lives, the receivers-general took care to receive it.

In the mean while the principal lords of the court, and the emperor's favorites remonstrated to his majesty, that after having suffer'd the fatigues and difficultys of this war, victory inspir'd 'em with thoughts of renewing their diversions and pleasures; that Faridou and the Kcis had always done the same; and that it was in justice due to 'em after they had thus fatig'd themselves. The emperor willingly consented, and gave orders for a feast, which was to continue for several days. Timur began the rejoicings by presents to the princes of the blood, the Emirs and generals of the army, in consideration of their services and great éclairs; and afterwards the musicians perform'd consorts of music in amorous and drinking tunes, which so charm'd the hearts of all, that they forgot the rigors of war, and the fatigues of a campaign.

Jan. 12.

The sixteenth of Rabiaulakhur, a great number of our soldiers being assembled at the gate of Delhi, insulted the inhabitants of the suburbs. The great Emirs were order'd to put a stop to these disorders; but God, who had predecess'd

the

the ruin of this place for the chastisement of Chap. 20
the inhabitants, permitted its destruction by se- ~~cond~~
cond cause. Our soldiers coming into the
place was one cause; and the despair of the
Guebres, who remain'd in great numbers in the
towns of Sairi, Ghanpenah and old Deli, was
another. The curiosity of the Sultaneses to
see the rarity of Deli, and particularly of the
famous palace, adorn'd with a thousand columns,
and built by the antient king of India, Melik
Juema, induc'd 'em to go into the city with all
the court, which was very immuroos: and the
gate was left open to every one, so that above
fifteen thousand of our soldiers got in unper-
ceas'd. Besides the Emirs and controulers of
the Divan, who were set at the gate to receive
the tribute for saving the inhabitants lives; other officers in commission had the same liber-
ty to enter the city: but there remain'd a far
greater number of troops in a large place be-
tween Deli, Sairi, and Ghanpenah. The dis-
orders our men committed in the two last
places caus'd a great bustle amoong the Guebres,
who in despair fell upon our men; and several
of 'em set fire to their houses, wherein their
wives and children were burnt. Our men
perceiving this desolation amoong the Gue-
bres, pillag'd 'em, because of their evil de-
signs. As other troops were let into the city
to seize on the inhabitants of the neighbouring
towns and villages who had fled for refuge thither, the confusion very much increas'd, and
the troops within the place employ'd themselves
entirely in plundering and burning the houses of
the Guebres. The Emirs, to quell this disor-
der, caus'd the gates to be shut, that the troops
without might not enter; but the soldiers within
open'd the gates to their comrades; by
more-

Book IV. morning all the army enter'd, and the soldiers
 rose in arms against their leaders, who oppos'd
 their enterprise. So on the seventeenth of Ra-
 binalther 801, this great and proud city was
 delivery'd.

The next day pass'd in the same manner;
 and there were some soldiers who took a hun-
 dred and fifty slaves, men, women and chil-
 dren, whom they carry'd out of the city: and
 some soldiers' boys had twenty slaves to their
 own share. The other spoils of precious stones,
 pearls, rubys, diamonds, stuffe, belts, gold and
 silver vellts, money, plate, and other curiositys,
 were innumerable; for the Indian women and
 girls were adorn'd with precious stones, and
 had on their feet and hands, and even on their
 toes, bracelets and rings: of which our men
 had such great numbers, that they refus'd to
 carry away a vast quantity of precious oint-
 ments of incalculable value.

The nineteenth of Rabinalther they did the
 same in old Dcii, whither the rest of the Gre-
 bres were retir'd. There Indians assembled to-
 gether in the great mosque, and prepar'd to de-
 fend themselves; but the Emir Chamlik and
 Ali Sultan Taseshi came thither with five hun-
 dred men, and having horribly enter'd the
 mosque, sent to the abyss of hell the souls of
 these infidels, of whose heads they crushed
 cover't, and gave their bodies for food to the
 birds and beasts of prey. Never was such a
 terrible slaughter and desolation heard of. As
 old Dcii was pillag'd the same day, they made
 some of the inhabitants slaves, whom they load-
 ed with chains, tho' they had promis'd 'em
 their lives. Several days were employ'd in
 making 'em quit the city; and as they went
 out, every Emir of a Toman or regiment took

took a number of 'em for his service: and as there were several thousands of tradesmen and artizans, some were distributed among the princes and Emirs who serv'd under Timur; and others were sent to the officers of the emperor's sons, and to the other Emirs in their respective governments. The emperor likewise order'd that all the masons shou'd be kept for his particular service, as he design'd to build a spacious mosque in Samarcand of stone.

But it may not be amiss to give a description of the three towns which compose the city of Deli⁴. That of Seiri is surrounded with a wall in form of a circle; old Deli is the same, but much larger: and from the walls of Seiri on the north-east, to the walls of old Deli, which is on the south-west, there are two other walls, one on each side: and the ground which lies betwixt 'em is call'd Gehrpenah, and is larger than old Deli. Three gates of Seiri look towards Gehrpenah, and the four others have the prospect outwards. Gehrpenah has thirteen gates, six to the north-west, and seven to the south-east: so that when one speaks of Deli, we comprehend the three towns together, which have in all thirty gates.

⁴ Description of Deli, as it was in the author's time; for as yet, when they call Deli, is a new city, situated in a different place, built by Gelsalim Khan, and call'd Lohar Alat, from the name of that king, the father of Humayoun Cob.

C H A P. XXI.

Timur departs from Deli; and pursues his conquests in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.

TI MUR continu'd fifteen days at Deli, the destruction of which place was caus'd by the ill conduct of the inhabitants: then having resolv'd to extirpate the idolaters of India, as well as the robbers and rebels, he march'd towards the other most famous places of this empire. At his departure he order'd the Cherifs, Cadis, doctors and Cheiks of the city, to assemble in the great mosque of Gehanpench; where he fix'd a governor over 'em, to protect 'em from the insults of the soldiers, whom victory had render'd insolent.

The twenty-second of Rabiulshher, at ten in the morning, the army encamp'd from Gehanpench, and march'd down to Firuz Abad, three miles from Deli. Here Timur spair'd an hour to view this delightful place: and, after having made two Rakets * in the mosque belonging to it, which is built of stone on the banks of the Jumna, to return thanks to God for his conquest, he departed out of this town.

About this time the lord Chamzeddin, one of the Cherifs of Termed, with Aladdin Naib, Lieutenant of the Chell Couker, who had been sent embassadors to the town of Gouzle, return'd from their embassy: they brought advice that Behader Nobar prince of these quarters, had willingly submitted to the emperor; and

* A pro-
nominous
prayer.

and hop'd next Friday to have the honor to Chap. 21.
kiss the ground before his majell., and offer ~~the~~ him his services. Timur being encamp'd on the other side of Gehunus near Vezir Abad, the ambassadors presented him two white parrots, from Behader Nehar. These birds had liv'd ever since the time of Toghe Chah, and had been kept many years in the untrichambers of the emperors of India. Timur took this curious present for a good augury; and continu'd his road six miles farther to a place call'd Mondala, having before cross'd the Joom.

The twenty-fourth of Rabibakher, he march'd ^{Jan. 20.} six miles and encamp'd at Kece, where Behader Nehar with his son Cenkach had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet, to offer a great many rich presents, and assure the emperor of their obedience. The twenty-fifth the army ^{Jan. 21.} march'd to Baghbar, which for its beauty is compar'd to the delicious garden of Derbehur, and to the magnificent temple of the idols of Fecar; which places are distant from each other six miles. The twenty-sixth they march'd ^{Jan. 22.} also six miles, and encamp'd at Asar, situate between two rivers, where Timur staid to repose himself.

C H A P. XXII.

Conquest of Myrthe. The Guebres are fles'd alive.

THE town of Myrthe being one of the most noted places of the empire of India, Timur resolv'd to make himself master of

Book IV. it: whereupon the twenty-sixth of Rabynlakhet
 he sent thither from Asar the lords Roustem,
 Jan. 22. Tagi Bonga, Chamelib, and Attahdad. The
 Jan. 24. twenty-eighth these lords sent advice to the em-
 peror, that Elias Ongani, and the son of Mou-
 lana Ahmed Tchaneleti, with a Guebre nam'd
 Sefi, had fortify'd the town, and were back'd
 by a company of Guedres; that they had re-
 solv'd to submit, and had not only declin'd that
 they resolv'd to defend themselves, but even
 shav'd to use some insolent expressions, saying
 that the emperor Turmechitun Can once came
 to besiege the place, but was oblig'd to raise
 the siege; and that they hop'd the same wou'd
 be our fate. This news disquieted Timur;
 and their speaking contemptuously of Turme-
 chitun Can, whom they tax'd with cowardice,
 highly incens'd him. On Tuesday at the hour
 of morning-prayer he took horse at the head of
 ten thousand men; and in two days and one
 night, march'd twenty miles.

Jan. 25. The twenty-ninth of Rabynlakhet at noon
 he arriv'd at the town of Myrbe, where he
 order'd the captains of the companies to under-
 mine the walls. At night they visited the works,
 and found they had already advanc'd ten or fif-
 teen cubis breadth to each bastion and court-
 ies; which so surpris'd the Guebres, that they
 desisted from defending themselves.

Next day the Lair Allahdad, with his re-
 gular band the faithful, consisting of the au-
 tent people of the Couthins, attack'd the gate
 of the town. A young lad, one of his domes-
 tics, nam'd Serat, son of Calandar, boldly call'd
 out upon the battlement, and mounted the walls. He
 was follow'd by Roustem Berlex, and a
 great many brave men, who rush'd into the
 town (sword in hand): they bound Elias Ongani,
 and

and the son of Tchaneseri, governors of the ~~Chapri~~, place, whom they carry'd to the foot of the ~~the~~ ~~imperial~~ ~~throne~~. The Guebri Sef, one of the ~~princes~~ ~~of~~ ~~this~~ ~~place~~, was kill'd in the assault, and his body cast into the fire which he ador'd.

The first of Junayzislevell they fleg'd alive all ^{Jan. 25.} the Guebres of this place, and made slaves of their wives and children: they set fire to every thing, and raz'd the walls: so that this town was soon reduc'd to ashes, tho' Turmechirin Can, a great emperor in Asia, cou'd not make himself master of it.

It is remarkable, that before the army's marching to this place, Timur had resolv'd to write a letter to the inhabitants, to reduce 'em by good-nature and promises: but the secretary being about to write these words, "Why do you compare us with Turmechirin Can?" Timur reprehended those who had order'd the secretary to write in such a manner, saying, "What am I to Turmechirin Can? He was a greater lord than me, of stricter virtue, and better conduct: but my design is to revenge the affront these villains have put upon so powerful and august a monarch." So without suffering the letter to be concluded, he march'd to exterminate 'em. This was Timur's modesty, which ought to serve as an example to others.

C H A P. XXIII.

* Called in
Persian
Derjai
Come, the
sea of
Ganges.

Several battles upon the great river * Ganges,
against the militia of the Guebres.

THE same day that Myrthe was taken, Timur order'd the Emir Gehan Chah to depart with the left wing by a different road, to ravage the country of the Guebres; for which purpose he embark'd with his troops on F. Juergz the Savan. The emperor gave the command of the baggage to the Emir Cheik Noureddin, with orders to conduct it along the river of Carasou; and then departed in person towards the great river of Ganges, fourteen miles from Myrthe. The Emir Solyma Chah join'd him on the road: and having march'd six miles, they encamp'd at Mansourz, where Timur staid one night. The second of Jumazinlevel, he set out at three in the morning, and at sun-rising arriv'd at Pircaour on the Ganges, where they march'd three miles to find an easy passage. Some time after they came to the ordinary passage, which was very difficult and dangerous: several horsemen swam over there on horseback, but not without great risque. Timur going to do the same, the Emirs on their knees besought him to the contrary, telling him that the Mirza Pir Mehemed and the Emir Solyma Chah, having cross'd the river near Pircaour, were on the point of perishing. In the mean while several brave men swam over, as the Tomans of the Mirza Chatoc, Seid Ceja son of Cheik Ali Behader, and Gehan Melic son of Mellet. Then Timur march'd

two miles further along the Ganges, and on Chap. 13
camp'd. The third of Jumadievel, he went ^{Jan. 2}
towards Tocloepour, a town on the bank of the
Ganges, twenty miles from the place whence
they set out. When they had march'd fifteen,
advice was brought the emperor, that a great
number of Guebres were got together on the
bank of that river. Timur immediately sent
thither the Emir Mobsacher, Ali Soltan Tava-
chi, and other Emirs of Tumans, and captains,
to the number of fifty thousand horse; and
continu'd his road towards Tocloepour. At
this time the emperor was seiz'd with a very
troublesom swelling in his arm, which much
impair'd his health; but this distemper did
not continue long, thro the care and assiduity
of his officers.

In the mean while advice was brought that
a vast number of Guebres in forty-eight boats,
advanc'd against us upon the Ganges. This
news fill'd up the emperor's fury: and the plea-
sure of having an opportunity of acquiring
glory and merit in this war against the infidels,
made him forget his distemper. He took
horse with a thousand of his particular officers,
and march'd along the banks of the river. He
had no sooner perceiv'd the enemy, than sever-
al of our brave men spur'd their horses into
the water sword in hand, with their quivers fast-
ten'd to their sides. The unskillful enemys on-
ly let fly their arrows upon 'em, with their
bucklers laid over their heads, while our men
continually advanc'd, and laying hold on their
flat-bottom'd vessels, enter'd 'em, notwithstanding
the resistance of the enemy, whom they cut
in pieces, and cast their body's into the Ganges,
making their women and children slaves. When
they were become masters of these great boats,
they

Book IV. they went in search of ten others man'd with
 ~~~~~ Guebres, who prepar'd themselves for fighting,  
 and fallen'd their boats to one another, that they  
 might the better defend themselves, and make  
 a kind of naval fight. Our soldiers, after hav-  
 ing discharg'd a vast number of arrows, board-  
 ed their vessels, giving praise to God; and  
 with their swords slew the remainder of these  
 unfortunate Indians.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Timur's three Gazies, or expeditions against  
 the Guebres.*

Jan. 25.

AFTER the taking of the first boats on  
 the Ganges, Timur decamp'd for Toc-  
 loepur: and when he was arriv'd there, on the  
 fourth of Junyembre, a little after midnight,  
 two men came from the Emirs Allahdad, Ra-  
 jahet, Coluchin, and Altoun Bacchin, the leaders  
 of our scouts, who brought advice that having  
 found an easy passage where they cross'd the  
 Ganges, they had met on the banks of that  
 river a great number of infidels well-arm'd,  
 who had for their leader a king nam'd Moba-  
 rek Can, who was resolute to defend himself.

Timur on advice of these motions, took horse  
 before morning at the sound of drums and  
 kettle-drums, being lighted by a vast number of  
 flambeaux and torches: he cross'd the Ganges,  
 and read the morning-prayer, after having  
 march'd 2 miles on the other side that river.  
 Then our soldiers, with their cuirasses on, ad-  
 vanc'd against Mobarek Can, who had rang'd

ten thousand horse, and some infantry, in order Chap. 2  
of battle, and expected us with his ensigns all-  
play'd, tho' he risk'd his crown on this occa-  
sion.

Timur hereupon imagin'd that these Indians  
being far more numerous than we, and our two  
wings at a great distance, we cou'd use no pro-  
tections, but must entirely resign our selves to  
the will of God. And as he was thus disquieted  
about the success of the battle, five hundred  
horse of the Tomans of Mirza Chacoc arriv'd,  
which had cross'd the water with Scil Coja  
and Gehan Mule, to make inroads in several  
places; and they joyn'd us at so proper a time,  
that one wou'd have thought they had been  
appointed to meet us here, or that heaven had  
sent 'em expressly to succour Timur when he  
had such need of 'em. Whereupon he return'd  
God thanks for his kindness to him, and or-  
der'd the Emirs Chamek<sup>1</sup> and Alshdad to at-  
tack the enemy with a thousand horse, and not  
to regard their number, or resistance.

Our brave men, in obedience to this order  
and in resignation to the will of God, rush'd  
with fury upon the enemy, who thinking that  
our men were not alone, but only the vanguard  
of a great army, suddenly grew afraid, and  
fled like hinds before a roaring lion, and like  
Chacals<sup>2</sup> hid themselves in the woods. Our  
warriors pursu'd 'em, and put a great number  
to the sword, carrying away captive their wo-  
men and children, with a considerable boar of  
cattle and other animals. Timur encamp'd in

<sup>1</sup> Chamek is an animal which partly resembles a dog, and  
partly a bear. It digs up dead bodies to devour 'em, and has  
a languishing voice.

Book IV. this place; and at the same time receiv'd advice that a great number of Guebres were rendezow'd in the defile of Compel, eas of the Ganges. Whereupon he departed with five hundred horse for that place, leaving the rest to guard the spoils. The emperor at his arrival at these mountains, met a great number of Guebres. The Emirs Chamek and Ali Sultan Tavachi, notwithstanding the enemy were superior to 'em in number, fell upon 'em sword in hand, giving praises to God. These infidels at first defended themselves: but our men put 'em to the rout, notwithstanding their great number, while the soldiers were employ'd in collecting the booty. Timur being left with only a hundred horsemen of his guards, a Guebre, nam'd Malek Cheika, fell briskly upon him with a hundred men, partly horse and partly foot. Timur oppoz'd these rash fellows; but while the two party's were about to let fly a shower of arrows, one of our soldiers, thro mislike, told Timur that this man was the Cheik Cukkeri, one of his faithful servants. This false alarm caus'd the emperor to return to the bottom of the mountain: which the Guebre perceiving, he attack'd some of our men. Timur then return'd against this infidel, shot him in the belly with an arrow, and unhors'd him with a cut of his sabre on his head: he was then bound with cords, and drag'd after our men. Timur being willing to question him concerning the condition of the enemy, but he presently gave up the ghost. Some time after advice was brought that in the defile of Compel, two miles from this place, a great many Guebres were assembled; that in the passages of these mountains were only thick woods, and trees twisted one within another, with reeds and

and canes so large and strong that a man cou'd scarcely grasp 'em.

Timur, who had already taken horse twice this day to fight, and was in great want of sleep, had no sooner heard this news, than preferring the treasures of eternal rewards to his quiet here, he march'd towards this desile at the head of some officers and Emirs of the vanguard. As he was oblig'd to go thro woods almost unpassable, and the Indians were far more numerous, Timur said to his men, " If my son Pir Mehemed and Solymar Chah shou'd arrive here presently, they would be of great service to us: but that cannot be; seeing it is but three days since I sent 'em to make inroads beyond the Ganges, which they have cross'd at Pirouzaour." While Timur was thus speaking, on a sudden they perceiv'd these brave men, who were over-joy'd to meet the emperor in this place. The glee-some, as one may easily imagine, was not less on Timur's side. They march'd together against the Guebres, on whom they discharg'd showers of arrows; and then rushing on 'em, sword in hand, they made a cruel slaughter: they took a vast quantity of booty from these infidels, as well camels, oxen, and other cattle, as gold and silver belts, which the enemy's wore.

Thus Timur was in three battles the same day, which never happen'd to any prince before him, that we find mention'd in history. The field of battle being so sterr, and full of woods and thorns, that it was impossible to encamp here, in the evening they were oblig'd to return to the place where the second Gazi was fought.

## C H A P. XXV.

*Timur exterminates the Guebres assembled in the famous defile of Coupole. Description of a marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.*

Rites of the Indians. THE defile of Coupole is situate at the foot of a mountain near the Ganges, and fifteen miles higher than this defile is a stone car'd in form of a cow, from whence springs this great river. For this reason the Indians adore this stone; and in all the neighbouring countrys, within a year's journey, when they are at prayers they turn towards it. One of their customs is to burn themselves alive, and to have their ashes stung into the Ganges, believing they shall merit salvation by it. They also cast into this river their gold and silver; and a chief part of their devotion is to wash themselves in it, and there shave their beard and head, upon which they pour water; which they esteem as useful as the Mahometans imagine the Abdeste \* necessary, when they go in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Abounair Orbi, in his book call'd *Yemini*, gives a relation of the superstitions of these Indian idolaters, and of the ridiculous notions they entertain concerning this river. We are told in this book, that Nafaredum Subuckkin,

\* The ablution which the Mahometans are oblig'd to make before prayer.

• A famous history of the Sultan Mahomed Subuckkin of India.

and his son the Sultan Mahmoud, for several Chap. 15.  
years made war on these idolaters of India, and by degrees conquer'd the towns and castles of this kingdom; that God blest their undertaking, and permitted the Sultan Mahmoud at the end of these wars, to march into the kingdom of Cannouge<sup>4</sup> with the mahometan army. The interpreter of the Yemini remarks, that this war in the country of Cannouge is the most celebrated of any that Yemin Eddole Mahmoud was ever engag'd in.

But to return to our subject: we must know that when Timur took up a resolution to carry his arms into India, he sent several Emirs with considerable troops by one road, and with the rest of his army march'd himself another; that these two armys took all the citys, castles, fortresses, towns and villages, in their way; that they extermimated the idolaters; and met together before Delli, as we have already mention'd; and that after the reduction of Delli, they cross'd the Ganges. Thus Timur accomplish'd his undertaking in India, for the extirpation of idolatry in that country. But as there yet remain'd a prodigious multitude of Guebres in the mountains of Coupele, who possess'd a

<sup>4</sup> A town and kingdom on this side the Ganges. The geographer Abulfeda says, that the Ganges runs towards the east of the kingdom of Cannouge, at forty leagues distance; and that the capital of Cannouge is in long. 103. 10. 25. Nesterovian Tschik says it is in long. 113. 50. lat. 26. 35; which is consistent with the former, because the sun crosses the temperate from Hercules's pillars, and the other from the equinoctial. Elzanghi remarks, that Cannouge is at 2 leagues east of Monson. Admet is a town of the kingdom of Cannouge, seven days journey from the city of the same name. Befeld tells us that Cannouge is between two arm's of the Ganges.

Book IV. great quantity of riches, cattle, and movable goods, he resolv'd to attack 'em. Whereupon the fifth of June, in the year of the Christian era 1397, the army began its march towards this defile, where the infidels, who were destin'd to perish, dur'd to wait their arrival, and rashly prepar'd to sustain the attack of our warriors, and make a vigorous defence. At sun-rising the mohometan army was rang'd in order of battle, and arriv'd at the defile in very good order. The right wing was commanded by the Mirza Pir Nekomed, and the Emir Solyman Chah; and the left by other Emirs of great reputation. The Emir Chamek and other captains famous for their valor, led the vanguard of the main body.

When the noise of the drums, the great and little kettle-drums, and trumpets, accompany'd with the usual great cry, had echo'd in these mountainous and narrow passages, the infidels were confounded, and lost all courage: fear got possession of their hearts, and wou'd not suffer 'em to wait the attack of our warriors, but oblig'd 'em to conceal themselves in the mountains, whither they were pursu'd by our men, and great part of 'em slain; some sav'd themselves, yet their effects, which consisted of furniture and other riches, fell to the conquerors.

This kingdom being thus deliver'd from their idolaters, the army return'd the same day, and cross'd the Ganges, on the banks of which Timur read the noon-prayer, returning thanks to God for the advantages and victorys he had gain'd thru his goodness. Then he took horse, and after five miles march encamp'd towards the lower part of the river, piez'd with the conduct of all the captains and soldiers of his army, to whom he gave rewards for their brave actions in this war.

C H A P. XXVI.

*Timur's resolution to return to the seat of his empire.*

TMUR being satisfy'd with having march'd as far as the eastern frontiers of the empire of India in one campaign, and having acquir'd the merit of the Gazir, departed from the bank of the Ganges the sixth of Jan. 35/ Jumanshaher, to join the baggage. Every one march'd in his respective post; and the quartermasters and harbingers had orders to meet the baggage, and conduct it to the army. The seventh, they march'd six miles, and encamp'd <sup>36. 1.</sup> four miles distance from the baggage.

In the mean while advice was brought that in the mountain of Scualee, one of the most considerable mountains of India, which stretches over two thirds of this vast empire, there were assembled a great number of Indians, with design to insult us. Timur order'd the troops which accompany'd the baggage to decamp, and march towards Scualee, while himself went in person to a place but five miles from thence, where the Mirza Calil Sultan and the Emir Cheik Noureddin join'd him with the baggage. The Emir Soliman Chih and the other generals on their knees besought the emperour to stay in the camp, and not continually expose his sacred person; while they wou'd go and extirpate the Indians. Timur told 'em, the Gazir produc'd two considerable advantages; one was, that it procur'd for the warrior etern-

Book IV. nal merit; the other, that he acquir'd by it worldly spoils and goods; that as they had these two advantages in view, they shou'd be willing that he might partake of 'em also, since his intention in all his fatigues and labors, was only to render himself well-pleasing to God, and so treasure up good works for his eternal happiness, and riches to bellow upon his soldiers, and do good to the poor.

Then he sent orders to the Emir Gehan Chuk, who had been gone out a week to make irroads on the Journ, to come to the camp, that he might partake of the merit of this expedition as well as the other Emirs. This Emir accordingly obey'd the order, and return'd to join his majesty.

---

## C H A P. XXVII.

*Timur's irruption on the mountain Soualec.*

Feb. 4.

**O**N Saturday the tenth of Jumarielevel, Timur departed for the mountain of Soualec, where a Raya nam'd Behrouz had assembled a number of Guebres in a narrow passag; and confiding in the strength of the mountain, and a strong place he had in possession, which he imagin'd inaccessible, had resolv'd to give us battle. Our army advancing in good order, Timur went down to the entrance of this defile, where he stopt. Our soldiers fell suddenly upon the infidels, who made but a weak defence; so that with their swords and halb-pikes they slew a great number of 'em. Having reduc'd 'em thus low, they became masters of their carrol and effects, and took those prisoners who escap'd the sword; but as

the

the booty was unequally divided, the rich and powerful having got four or five hundred even. Timur order'd the spoils thou'd be equally distributed, that the poor and weak might have their share. The following night Timur lay in the tent of the Mirza Pit Melhem ; and next day he went to Bahr, near Behri, commonly call'd Melispani.

The twelfth of Junrainevel he march'd four miles, and encamp'd at Chacarbara. The soldiers were so laden with booty, that they cou'd scarce march four miles a day. Next day they went four miles, and encamp'd at Kender.

---

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*Several combats in the woods near Sonalec.*

THE fourteenth of Junrainevel Timur <sup>Feb. 3,</sup> cross'd the Janno, and encamp'd in another part of the mountain of Sonalec, where advice was broughte that a Raya nam'd Ratan had caus'd the trumpets to be sounded to assemble the people, and fall upon our army, that by this means an infinite number of Indians were got together under his command, and had retreated into thick and inaccessible woods.

Timur wou'd not stay till night was over before he began his march against 'em ; but caus'd torches and flambeaux to be lighted, and order'd the captains to keep a constant march in order of battle. The soldiers employ'd all their strength in cutting down the trees to make roads, and the same night they advance'd twelve miles.

Book IV. Feb. 9. The fifteenth before morning they arriv'd between the two mountains of Soualee and Coule, where the Raya was prepar'd to give battle, having form'd two wings and a main body: but he had no more courage than the rest; for as soon as the noise of the drums, trumpets and kettledrums, with the soldiers' cries, were heard in this mountain, they fled, and the Raya himself turn'd his back, and receiv'd to the bottom of a wood. Our soldiers pursu'd the enemy, and cut in pieces a great number, enriching themselves with the spoils, and carrying away an innumerable company of captives.

Feb. 10. The same day our right wing went into another defile of these mountains, where, after having extirpated the Guebres, they gain'd a considerable booty; the left wing also made inroads in another place, and massacred several Indians; but got no spoils. The following night the two wings return'd to Timur. The fifteenth, Timur quitted this narrow passage, and re-enter'd the mountain of Soualee, where he encamp'd in a place fifteen leagues from Bekirout, all which country is full of forests and craggy mountains. Then he resolv'd to go in person into the most dangerous places; and sent back the left wing, compos'd of the troops of Corassans, to make inroads, because they were return'd without any booty.

In the mean while Sainte Maure, at the head of the scouts, arriv'd at nine in the morning; bringing advice that there were so many Guebres in these quarters, that it was impossible to number 'em. This news oblig'd Timur to stay in this place, while the left wing shou'd go out to make inroads.

Then advice was brought from the body of Chap. 18.  
troops commanded by the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan Tavachi, that several  
Guebres, with abundance of cattle, were got  
together in a defile on the left side. Timur  
immediately march'd towards this place, order-  
ing the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Ali Sultan  
to fall upon the Guebres. They soon became  
conquerors, putting the enemys to the sword,  
in the emperor's presence, who had set up his  
imperial standard on the very brink of the moun-  
tain, to encourage his men. Some of the wound-  
ed sav'd themselves by flight; but all their ef-  
fects and cattle fell into the hands of the victors.  
Timur laid upon the mountain till evening, and  
caus'd part of the booty to be distributed among  
those who cou'd get none; so that every one  
had as much as he cou'd well take care of. At  
night they encamp'd in this defile, where there  
were abundance of monkeys, who came to steal  
away the soldiers goods.

Thus we may truly say, there were twenty  
battles fought in thirty days, during which time  
our men conquer'd seven of the most important  
fortresses of India, which wou'd not give place  
to Calber<sup>1</sup>. These seven fortresses were at one  
or two leagues distance from each other, and the  
inhabitants were at continual variance among  
themselves. They had formerly paid tribute to  
the emperors of India; but were some time  
since brought to subjection to the Mussalmans,  
from whom they revolted, refusing to pay tri-  
bute to 'em; and thus they merited the punish-  
ment they receiv'd. One of these places, which

<sup>1</sup> A strong place in Syria, inhabited by Jews, formerly conquer'd by the prophet Mahomet.

Book IV. belong'd to Cheikou, a relation of the Cheik  
<sup>Prince of</sup> ~~W~~ Cukker <sup>Prince of</sup>, had willingly submitted to Timur, thro'  
 the interposition of the Mussulmans who liv'd  
 with 'em; but this was mere shew; for they soon  
 gave us marks of their treason and malice, and  
 when the customary tax for the living of their  
 lives was impos'd on 'em, they made use of tricks  
 and equivocations. In the mean while one of  
 Timur's officers invented a stratagem to oblige  
 'em to pay the money with less reluctance; which  
 was, that we shou'd buy up all their old bows,  
 which they accordingly sold our men upon their  
 offering a good price; so that they had scarcely  
 any more arms left. Then it was order'd that  
 forty Guebres shou'd be lilted in the service of  
 Rendu Chah Cazan, one of the emperor's of-  
 ficers; which they wou'd not consent to, but  
 slew several Mussulmans.

This oblig'd us to treat 'em as enemies, and  
 besiege their place in form; which having taken,  
 we put two thousand Guebres to the sword, as  
 a punishment for their past crimes.

The place belonging to Malak Durrage, and  
 five others, were taken with the same ease in a  
 very short time; so that this country was clear'd  
 of this generation of idolaters, their temples  
 were ruin'd, and the maledictan religion after-  
 wards flourish'd there.

C H A P. XXIX.

*Timur's Gazies and expeditions in the province of Tchamou.*

**T**HE Gazies on the mountains of Soualee being finish'd to Timur's satisfaction, he departed from Mansar the sixteenth of Junij in the year 1392. and after a march of six miles, encamp'd at Bails, a town of the province of Tchamou, where he was join'd by the Emirs Cheik Mahomed Aicoutmire, Moubacher, and Ismael Berlus, of the Toman of Mirza Casil Sulten.

The inhabitants of this town were valiant men, and their forces very difficult of access; they had fix'd their bucklers round their woods, where they prepar'd for a vigorous resistance. Our soldiers were eager to fall upon 'em; but there came an order from the emperor to defer the attack till next day, because he design'd to be there in person.

The seventeenth Timur took horse, and having rang'd his army in order of battle, caus'd the great cry to be made, and the instruments of war to be sounded; but the enemy abandon'd the town, and fled into the woods, to hide themselves. Part of our soldiers were posted on the side of the wood, while the others enter'd the town without opposition, and made themselves masters of a great quantity of men, and ammunitions; so that the army was furnish'd with all necessarys.

The same day the army departed thence, to encamp four miles further. Olai Timur, Toncator, and Conlad, as also the Mirza Roulem, and

Book IV. the faithful Zeimeddin, who had been sent ambassadors from Delli into Cachmir, arriv'd at the camp with letters from prince Chah Eskender, from whom there likewise came ambassadors; who assur'd Timur that their prince, full of respect to him, had resolv'd to demand his protection, with all the submissiōn that cou'd be expected from a subject, who was entirely resign'd to his orders; and that as a mark of his sincerity, he was upon his way to meet the emperor, being already arriv'd at a place nam'd Gelish, where he was rejoin'd by the doctor Nor-din, one of his ambassadors, who told him that the Emirs of Timur's Divan had tax'd him at thirty thousand horses, and a hundred thousand Dercells of gold, each Dercell weighing two Medecates and a half. Chah Eskender immediately return'd to collect the money he was tax'd at, that he might the sooner have the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Timur, on advice of this, disapprou'd of this order, because they had impos'd a tax upon Eskender, which he was not able to pay, since it was more than his little kingdom was worth: and as the ambassadors at the same time represented to the emperor how willingly Chah Eskender had submitted to him, Timur order'd that he shou'd be treated with civility, and sent to tell him that the payment of this tax shou'd not detain him from coming before him:

Act 11. The eighteenth of Junzimakher, the ambassadors of Chah Eskender and of Noramedreine-din were sent back to Cachmir, with orders for Chah Eskender to come to the bank of the Indus in ten days. Then the army on their road pillag'd three towns: but Aramoor, officer of Timur's household, was wounded with an arrow:

Act 12. The nineteenth of Junzimakher, they encamp'd over-against the capital of Tchamor, after

after having march'd four miles. In their road Chap. 29. they found four leagues of cultivated land, ready for harvest; which serv'd for forage, and our horses were let loose among the grass in this pasture-ground.

The twentieth of Junayzulashir, Timur enter'd the defile from whence the river of Tchamou springs, which the army had cross'd several times. It is situate at the foot of a mountain, on the left side of the city of Tchamou, having on its right the town of Menou. It was inhabited by strong and tall Indians, who were resolv'd to defend their lives, and having sent their wives and children into the mountains, had intrench'd themselves in almost inaccessible woods, upon a craggy mountain, having their king at the head; and like dogs barking at the rising moon, they houl'd, if one may so say, when they discharge'd their arrows.

Timur imagin'd it better to surprise 'em by artifice, than to attack 'em openly in so dangerous a place: whereupon he order'd our soldiers to leave 'em, and to go to pillage the town of Menou: which was accordingly executed. The troops also enter'd the town of Tchamou, whence they brought away ammunition and spoils enough for their pay and sustenance. Then Timur posted some regiments of active and resolute men in the woods where the enemy had fortify'd themselves, and in the mean while he departed with the cavalry.

The twenty first he cross'd the river of Tchamou, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the Genye, in a plain of four leagues in length, full of pasture.

As soon as the imperial army had quitted the defile of Tchamou and Menou, the Indians, like foxes running out of their holes, when they imagin'd the

forests

Book IV. foresis void of lions, came out of their mountain to re-enter their houses: but they were soon attack'd by our regiments who lay in ambuscade; and who falling upon 'em, cut 'em in pieces, not giving quarter to any one.

King of  
Tchamou  
taken  
alive  
and  
made  
a  
prisoner. Dolet Timur Tavaehi, an officer of the To-  
man of Chak Noureddin, assisted by Husein  
Melik Costchou, took the king of Tchamou pri-  
soner, with fifty officers of consideration, whom  
he brought to Timur. The emperor return'd

thanks to God, and thus address'd these Emirs:  
 "Blessed be the almighty King of heaven and  
 "earth, who hath humbled these proud Guebres,  
 "the enemys of his name, who but yesterday  
 "insolently brav'd the faithful from their craggy  
 "mountains, having no regard to any one: but  
 "to-day God has deliver'd 'em up to us, bound  
 "like malefactors. To him be blessing and glo-  
 "ry for ever." Then he order'd that the cap-  
 tives shou'd be loaded with chains, and left  
 travelling upon the earth, except the king of  
 Tchamou, who had been wounded in the fight:  
 he was heal'd of his wound, and treated with  
 civility, as well because of his character, as for  
 that they imagin'd they might the more easily get  
 the money due to the mahometan army for the  
 town of Tchamou, and the saving the lives of  
 the king and his men. In the mean while they  
 treated this prince with so much kindness and  
 respect, instructing him in the beautys of the  
 musulman religion, that he resolv'd to make pro-  
 fession of mahometanism, and quit his errors  
 and idolatry. So he declar'd his belief of the  
 unity of God, and eat the flesh of men with  
 the Musulmans, which is prohibited these mis-  
 erable Indians.

This change of religion caus'd him to be ho-  
 nor'd and caref'd by Timur, who consented to  
 make

make a treaty with him, by which he was receiv'd under the protection of our monarch. Chap. 55. 

The twenty third of Junrziulaher the army staid on the banks of the Otrave, to wait for the troops which were gone to Labor. March 19.

---

C H A P. XXX.

*Relation of what pass'd at Labor, with regard to Chicri Couker, prince of that city.*

**I**N the mean while advice was brought that the princes and Emirs, who had been sent towards Labor, had made themselves masters of that city, and actually receiv'd the tax for redeeming the inhabitants lives, having made Chicri Couker prisoner of war.

Deceit, says the poet, may at first have a good appearance; but in the end it makes the person blash who pratices it; wherefore Timur, who was an enemy to tricking, made use of the following words for the motto of his seal, *Sincerity in fair-dealing.*

But that every one may be sufficiently appriz'd of the affair of Chicri Couker, they must know that this prince of Labor, at the beginning of this war, accompany'd Timur every where, from whom he obtain'd so much favor and respect, that if any of the Indians made use of his name, they were neither kill'd nor made prisoners. When the army was between the two rivers of Ganges and Javen, he beg'd leave to go into his own country, which was granted him; and he even agreed about the presents he shou'd make to the emperor upon his meeting him again at the back of the Blah, which is also call'd the river of

Book V. of Labor. Thus Chicai Couler return'd into his own country, where he pass'd some time in plays and diversions, forgetting what he had promis'd before the august tribunal of Timur: and he not only neglected the performance of his promise, but even gave marks of his disregard to us; for several of our officers having pass'd thro his city coming from Transoxiana, as the doctor Abdallah Sedre, Hendoouchah Cazen, and others, thro whose protection he might have advanc'd himself in honor and power, he did not give 'em a handsom reception, nor shew the least marks of civility, pretending ignorance of their being in the city. This procedure drew on him Timur's indignation, who order'd that his country shou'd be pillag'd, and his person seiz'd. Thus our monarch punish'd ingratitude.

March 2. The twenty fourth of Jumazinlakher, Timur cross'd the river of Genave, and encamp'd after having march'd five miles. The same day officers arriv'd from Tauris from the Mirza Miran Chah, bringing news of the good health of that prince, his children, and principal Emirz. They also brought an account of the affairs of Bagdad, Egypt, Syria, Anatolia and Capchat; as likewise the condition of the fortress of Aelingic.

The twenty fifth, several sick soldiers were drown'd in the river; which oblig'd Timur, who was the most merciful prince in the universe, to give those who were in want of 'em, proper horses and mules out of his own stable, upon which they cross'd the river. The same day the emperor sent Hendoouchah Cazen to Samarcand, with advice that he was about to return home, to comfort the people who impatiently expected him. That day there likewise came an officer from Persia from the Mirza Pir Meleched,

med, son of Omar Cheik, who brought news of Chap. 19.  
this prince's health, and the state of his king-  
dom: he likewise presented Egyptian swords,  
damask'd blades, and other curiosities.

The twenty sixth of Junrzuulahher the army  
decamp'd from the bank of the Genare, and af-  
ter six miles march encamp'd in the desert; and  
the same day the emperor sent again to Samar-  
and one of the ambassadors who came from  
Tauris, to order the prince his son to come  
and meet him. Then Timur designing to cross  
the river Dindans before the rest of the army,  
set out before 'em.

The twenty seventh he march'd six miles, and  
encamp'd at the entrance of a wood: they saw  
a lion in a meadow, which every one attack'd,  
and the Emir Cheik Noureddin kill'd.

Then the Mirzas Pir Mehemed and Rouzem,  
with the Emirs Solyman Chah and Gehan Chah,  
arriv'd at the camp from Labor, after having  
slain several Indians, and taken a considerable  
booty. They kill'd the imperial carpet, and  
made their presents to Timur, which consisted  
of nine pieces of each sort. Timur gave great  
largesses to these brave men; and particularly  
distinguish'd Mehemed Azzi, to whom he pre-  
sented a vest, a quiver, and a gold-belt. The  
greatest lords only sought to be favorably regard-  
ed by our monarch.

The same day Timur order'd that all the E-  
mirs of both wings, the colonels of regiments,  
and the captains of companies, shou'd return home  
by the different roads mark'd out for 'em. Then  
he made presents to every one according to their  
rank and merit, beginning with the princes of  
the blood, the Emirs, Dukes, foreign princes  
call'd Netics; and then the Emirs of 10000,  
the colonels of Hexxes, and the centurions.  
The

Book IV. The Mirza Pir Mohamed, son of Ghanghis,  
 had a present made him of a belt and crown set  
 with precious stones.

He also honor'd with his liberality the lords  
 of India, the Emirs and Cheris, who had the  
 good fortune to accompany him; and giving 'em  
 letters-patent for their principalitys, he permit-  
 ter'd 'em to return into their respective coun-  
 try's.

Timur assign'd the government of the city and  
 provinces of Moulzan to Kedet Can, who having  
 been arrested by order of Sarelik brother of Mel-  
 lou Can, and laid in irons in a citadel, had escap'd  
 thence, and fled to Biana, a place dependent on  
 Deli, to the king Ahoudan a Musulman; and  
 who having heard of Timur's arrival in that  
 country, had with an humble confidence fled for  
 refuge to the foot of the throne, and had the  
 honor to accompany his majesty from that time.

As in this country there was a plain, which  
 for its yariness, and the great quantity of game  
 in it, seem'd to invite passengers to the chace,  
 (for there were lions, leopards, rhinoceros's,  
 unicorns, blue stags, wild peacockes, parrot's,  
 and other uncommon animals) Timur spent some  
 time in that diversion. He sent several thousands  
 of soldiers to form the great circle; and having  
 first purifi'd the idolaters, he chas'd the wild  
 beasts, and afterwards went a fowling. The  
 falcons and hawks destroy'd all the peacockes,  
 pheasants, parrot's and ducks in this country.  
 The soldiers took a great deal of game, and  
 slew several rhinoceros's with their sabres and lan-  
 ces, tho this animal is so strong, that it will beat  
 down a horse and horseman with a single blow  
 of its horn; and has so thick a skin, that it can-  
 not be pierc'd but by an extraordinary force.

The twenty eighth of Junrziolalcher the 25<sup>th</sup> Chap. 31.  
my march'd eight miles, and encamp'd at Geb-~~hān~~<sup>hān</sup>  
a delightful residence on the frontiers of March 25.  
Cachmir.

---

C H A P. XXXI.

*Description of the little kingdom of Cachmir,  
or Kishmir.*

AS Cachmir is one of the most noted country's in the world, has so particular a situation, and so few people ever see it, because it is not the ordinary passage into any other country's; we will give a short description of it, which we have receiv'd from the natives, and the truth of which we are fully satisfy'd of.

Cachmir is a principality near Hac, in the middle of the fourth climate, which according to Ptolemy, begins at 34 deg. 37 min. of lat. its middle is at 36 deg. 22 min. and its end at 38. 54. The latitude of Cachmir is 35 degrees; and its longitude from the fortunate isles 115.

The country is of an oval form, surrounded with high mountains on all sides: it looks southwards upon Delli and the country of India, northwards on Bedalchan and Coraisiu, westwards upon the hords of the Ouganis, and eastwards upon Tabbot or Thebet.

In the extent of its province are ten thousand flourishing villages, till of fountains and green plains: but the common opinion is that the whole principality of Cachmir consist of a hundred thousand villages, as well in the plains as mountains. The air and water are very wholesome; and the beauty of the Cachmir-

Book IV. tian women hath pass'd into a proverb among the Persian poets and oratres. They have vast quantities of good fruit ; but the winter is hurtful, because of the great abundance of snows which fall there. The summer-fruits, as dates, oranges and citrons, never come to maturity ; but are brought thither from the warm neighbouring countrys. The flat country in the middle is twenty leagues in breadth from one mountain to the other.

The prince and court reside at the city of Nagaz, thro' the middle of which, as at Bagdad, runs a river as large as the Tigris : and what is very surprizing, this river is exceeding rapid, tho' it is form'd from a single fountain in the same country, call'd the fountain of Vir. The inhabitants have built upon this river more than thirty bridges of boats, with chains across the chief passages : seven of these bridges are in the city of Nagaz, which is the center and capital of the country. When this river hath pass'd the limits of Caehmir, it takes different names, from the several countrys it washes, as Dicdara and Jamad : above Moultan it joins the Genave, and both together having pass'd by Moultan, fall into the Rave, which runs by the other Moultan : at length the river Dizh joins 'em, and near the town of Oncha, they all fall into the Indus or Absend, which disembogues into the sea of Oman <sup>\*</sup>, at the end of the country of Tatta.

The mountains which surround this country serve as fortifications against the insults of an enemy ; the inhabitants being under no apprehensions of their being rain'd, either by time, rains or storms.

There are three roads into this country : that of Corassana is so very difficult, that the inhabitants, who are accustom'd to that sort of labor,

are oblig'd to carry bales of merchandise and Chap. 33 other burdens upon their backs, which the beasts of carriage are not able to do. The road of India is equally difficult. That of Tabbet or Thebet is easiest; but for several days journey passengers meet with venomous herbs, which poison their horses.

This God has given this country natural defences; so that the inhabitants have no occasion for arms or armys.

The twenty-ninth of Junazulaher, Timur March 25, departed from Gebhan, march'd four miles, and encamp'd on the bank of the river Dindana, which he cross'd on a bridg built by his order; and which was an ease to the fatig'd soldiers, as well Turki as Tadgies'. The Emrys Chamelik and Gelselislam had orders for conducting the army over this bridg.

---

## CHAP. XXXII.

*Timur returns to the seat of his empire.*

ON the thirtieth of Junazulaher in the morning, Timur departed for Samarcand before the army, that he might get there in good time; he march'd twenty miles on the Dindana, and encamp'd at Sambat, a town in the mountain of Joodis. The first of Regeb he March 27, encamp'd at the castle of Berouge: he took horse after noon-prayer, and enter'd the defile of Gelis, from whence he came out in the even-<sup>\* Gene-</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The Turki are native Tatars; the Tadgies are inhabitants of conquer'd towns and countries.

Book IV. ing, and encamp'd in a cavern, where there yet remain'd some water of the Pecheals, or great rains of the last winter. This cavern is but three miles from Beroudge.

The 2d of Regeb at ten in the morning, he came to the Indus, over which the Emirs Pir Ali Selduz, and others, who had the care of the frontiers of Nagaz and Banou, and of the roads of those quarters, had caus'd a brig of boats to be built.

Timur having cross'd the Indus, laid till noon on its banks; and then leaving the Emir Allah-dad at the foot of the brig, that he might cause the baggage, and part of the army which was behind, to pass over, he departed in the afternoon, and march'd ten miles before he encamp'd.

March 29. The third of Regeb he stow'd at Banou, where the Emirs Pir Alizaz, Hallein Coutechin, and others, who had been left there to keep the Ougans in obedience, had the honor to pay their respects to him: having not seen him for a month, they presented him with nine horses and a thousand oxen. Timur gave 'em back their horses, and order'd that the oxen shou'd be restor'd to the right owners; and then he commanded Pir Alizaz to stay in that place, till all the army had pass'd it.

April 1. The 7th of Regeb, which is the first of Fer-verdin of the Gielan epoch, as also the first day of the spring, he took the road to Nagaz, where he arriv'd next day.

The same day the officer of Muzz Miran Chah was sent back into Azerbijana, with advice of the emperor's conquests, and the good condition of his troops. Alimond, son of Berat Coja, and Hendoucha, were likewise sent to Cabul, to bring troops from thence, to destroy

the

the Ourpan, against whom the Emir Soliman Chapa-  
Chah had caused the castle of Nagaz to be built  
before the emperor's departure for India, to op-  
pose their insults: which establish'd quiet and  
security among the Mussulmans of that coun-  
try.

On one side of the castle without the walls was  
a delicious garden, which Timur was desirous  
should be within the enclosure of the castle:  
for which reason, notwithstanding his great de-  
sire to see the prince his dear children, he pre-  
fer'd the good of the publick before his private  
satisfaction, and staid in that place till the walls  
of the castle and the building over the fountain  
were finish'd. This lasted no longer than from  
Tuesday till monday evening, because every one  
assisted in it, and the Emirs themselves, to set an  
example to others, carry'd the tiles to the mas-  
sons. Then the emperor gave the government  
of this castle of Nagaz to Nusret Comiri, an  
officer of the Mirez Pic Menemed, with three  
hundred men of the regiment of Sams Agler,  
whose captain was Varek Agott: to whom he  
join'd four hundred deserters of the Uzbeks. He  
gave the government of Irjab and Schenontan to  
the Cheik Hassan, nephew of the Cheik Noured-  
din. Timur at length departed to encamp at the  
dome of the Cheik Mabareschah.

The ninth of Regab he went to Kermadge, April 4  
where the Cheik Ahmed Ongani, prince of that  
place, had the honor to kiss his hand, being in-  
troduce'd by the great Emirs: but Timur was  
not please'd with the entertainment he gave him,  
for these mountaineers are neither acquainted  
with civility, good-breeding, or even the laws  
of hospitality.

In the evening they went to encamp at Ac-  
sia, where the Cheik Aboul gave the emperor

Book IV. as handsome an entertainment as he was able,  
 with which he was very much pleas'd.

April 5.

The 10th of Regeb, Timur encamp'd in the desile of Rame, and the same day sent the doctor Nimer to prince Charoc to acquaint him with his arrival. The 11th they stopt at a town, from whence they departed the same day at nine in the morning for Cabul, where Timur left the empress Tchelpan Muic Aga, with some troops, whose horses and mules were exceedingly fatig'd: he also left Mobsacher there, to conduct 'em leisurely. At night Timur arriv'd at the mouth of Joui Neu, a canal very full of fish, which he had caus'd to be dug. The 12th he went to encamp at Garban; where he built a great hospital of brick, because several roads meet at this place, which was soon finish'd.

April 6.

The 13th the court pass'd the mountain and desile of Cheberto, and went to encamp in a plain at two leagues distance. The same day the emperor being struck by some evil eye\*, or maligo influence, fell sick, and had on his feet and hands painful ulcers, which hinder'd his taking any repose, and retarded 'em a whole day's march: and because of this accident this place was call'd the dry and unfortunate camp. The night following an officer arriv'd from Herat from prince Charoc, with very agreeable news.

Timur departed from this place on the third day in a commodious litter carry'd by mules, he not being able to ride on horseback: and as his sickness yet continu'd, the officers

\* The Tchek, as well as the Indians, are so superstitious as to believe that certain persons bring misfortune to every thing they look upon; and that their eyes are so venomous as to kill children. The Indians call this, if native wiles, the evil eye.

of his chamber fasten'd leatheren straps to the Chap. 11.  
poles fix'd to the litter, and so carry'd him by  
the bottom of the river in a very narrow passage  
of the mountain Sizpoutch, which they were  
oblig'd to pass. From the beginning of this  
defile to the mountain they cross'd the river  
twenty-six times; and twenty-two times from  
the mountain to the end of the defile.

The 15th of Regeb, the domestics of the April 10.  
empresses Serai Mule Cagum and Townan Aga,  
and of the other ladys and children of the em-  
peror, arriv'd at Samarcand, where they made  
presents to his majesty, assuring him of the em-  
presses and princes health. Timur sent Cac-  
luc Timur, an officer of Townan Aga, to the  
baggage; to bring from thence the elephantz.  
In the mean while his majesty's indisposition  
disquieted the whole court, till the 17th of Re- April 11.  
geb, when they cross'd the river of the defile,  
at which time it pleas'd God to restore him his  
health.

The 18th he went in a litter from Surab to-  
wards Bacalan, and encamp'd at the town of  
Aler, where he staid a little to refresh himself,  
and afterwards encamp'd at Cara Bouise. The  
ladys of the Mirza Pir Mchener, and of the  
Emir Gehan Chah, with the Emirs and chiefs  
of Bacalan, came to meet the emperor, and  
make their presents.

The 19th at ten in the morning he arriv'd at  
Semencor, whence he departed the same day,  
to encamp at Gaznic. The 20th he march'd to  
Calm; and setting out from thence at noon, he  
arriv'd at the Gilon before Termed at midnight.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Timur crosses the Oxus, and is met by the  
princes and princesses of the blood.*

April 14. **T**HE 20th of Regeb, at nine in the morning, Timur having cross'd the Oxus in a boat, met on the other side the Mirza Ouloubel, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, the princess Beghli Sultan his daughter, with the empresses Serai Mule Camum, Tekil Camum, and Touman Agha, accompany'd by all the princes, Mirzas, Emirs, Lards and Cherifs of Samarcand, with others who came to meet his majesty, who gave 'em a handsome reception. This charming company, and especially the ladys, congratulated him on his conquests, and sprinkled over him so great a quantity of gold and precious stones, that it seem'd as if the sand had been transform'd into 'em.

The court staid at Termed two days, where they were entertain'd with a sumptuous banquet by the great Cherif Alael Mule, who made several handsom presents.

April 15. The 23d of Regeb the court went to the Kachlae of Gehzu Mule; and the 24th to the bath of Tucki: the 25th they pass'd the iron-gate of Cologa, and encamp'd at the river of bane. The 26th they encamp'd at Tchobedache; the 27th at Couzimondae; and the 28th they arriv'd at Dourbildgum, where the Mirza Charue, who was come from Herat, had the honor to kiss the emperor's hands: he congratulated him upon his victorys, made him presents, and sprinkled upon him, according to custom,

custom, gold and precious stones. The great conqueror most affectionately embrac'd his dear son, whom he tenderly lov'd, and loaded him with favors and honors.

At this place likewise the Mirza Omar, son of Mirza Chah, whom Timur at his departure for the Indian war had left at Samarcand, had the honor to kiss his majesty's feet, who gave him a very kind reception, because of the love and care he had always shewn to his people, and the justice he had so exactly render'd.

On monday the 29th of Regab, Timur went <sup>4pm</sup> to encamp on the bank of a little river <sup>2</sup> and <sup>3</sup> <sup>Topa</sup> the 30th, in the delicious fields of Kech. He immediately went to pay his devotions at the tombs of the great Sants, Chumseddin Kolar, and others; and at length at that of his illustrious father, the Emir Tregai, of blessed memory; and then he visited those of his noble children. Here he staid fifteen days, giving alms to the poorest that country.

He departed from this place the 12th of Schaban, to encamp on the bank of the river of Roudse. The 13th he encamp'd at Tchenez Rehat, or the town of plane-trees; the 16th he pass'd the mountain, and encamp'd at Cotiocyur. <sup>4</sup> The 17th he went to Tatz Cacatchash, which himself had built; <sup>5</sup> and the 18th he encamp'd at the Kiochli <sup>6</sup> of Gehanumma. The 19th he arriv'd at the pleasure-house of Doler-Abul; and monday the 20th, at nine in the morning, he came to the Kiochli of the garden of Dilen Chah, the palace of which had been lately finish'd; and to consecrate that palace to joy and pleasures, a royal banquet was prepar'd, at

<sup>2</sup> Kiochli is a building in form of a mosque.

Book IV. which the emperors, the emperor's children, the princes of the blood, the Emirs or dukes, and the Nevians and foreign princes, affisted. They cast so much gold and precious stones upon his majesty, to congratulate him on his victory and happy arrival, that the earth seem'd sown with 'em, and all the officers were loaded with riches.

The 21<sup>st</sup> of Schaban, Timur made his entry into his capital city of Samarcand, where, after he had been at the baths, to make his ablutions, he went to visit the tomb of the venerable Santon Farcidearam, son of Abbas; and there he gave presents to the officers belonging to this mausoleum: then he went to the hospital founded by the empress Toosman Aga. After noon-prayer he honor'd with his presence the garden of planes, and the palace of Nakchidjehan, where he was diverted with seats and plays. From thence he went to the delicious garden of Baghi Behicht, which is indeed a true paradise, as its name imports. Then he came to the palace of Baghi Bolend, at which place the elephants and baggage arriv'd. The inhabitants of Transoxians, who had never before seen any elephants, were surpris'd at these huge animals of such an extraordinary figure, and gave praise to the Almighty, whose works are incomprehensible.

The emperor distributed the curiosities and riches he had brought from India, among the princes of the blood, the Cherifs, and chief persons of the kingdom, according to their different rank and quality: among which were precious stones, gold, beautiful male and female Negroes.

Timur sent Sarenk, eldest brother of Mellou Can prince of Moultan, with two chains of elephants, and other curiosities, to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. He made other presents to the Emirs

Emirs who had been left in Transoxiana, that every one might partake of the benefits of his conquests. Then he permitted his son prince Chator, to return to the seat of his kingdom of Corassana, after having loaded him with favors.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

*Building of the great mosque of Samarcand.*

THE Alcoran expressly assures us, that the greatest proof of a prince's faith is his erecting temples to the honor of God: whereupon our conqueror, being persuad'd that this work of piety wou'd be the crown of the actions he had acquit'd in his wars and battles against the infidels, where he had destroy'd the temples of the false gods, and extermimated the idolaters, resolv'd to build a great mosque in Samarcand, large enough to contain all the faithful of that capital city, when they shou'd assemble at Friday-prayers; and to this effect he issu'd out his edict for the foundations to be laid.

The architects chose a happy moment to begin it, viz. on the 4th of Ramazan 801, which answers to the year of the Hart, the moon being then in Leo, going out of the fertile aspect of the sun, and entering the fertile aspect of Venus. The masons, brought from foreign countrys, as mention'd before, giv'e the greatest proofs of their art and skill, as well in the solidity and beauty of the angles, as in the strength of the foundations of this noble edifice. In the inticks of the mosque were employ'd two hundred masons from Azerbijana, Persia and India: two hun-

Book IV. hundred men likewise work'd in the mountains in cutting and hewing of stones, which were sent into the city. Several other artisans, of different trades, perform'd their parts with the utmost application. Ninety-five chains of elephants were made use of in drawing large stones with wheels and machines, according to the laws of mechanics. The princes of the blood and Emirs were appointed to oversee the workmen, that not one moment might be lost in finishing this stupendous building.

In the mean while the Mire Mehemet Sultan, who ordinarily resided at Amirkan, on the frontier of Gere, arriv'd with a great attendance of officers. He had the honor to pay his respects to the emperor in the hospital of Tounian Aga, where he made his presents, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon his majesty, according to the custom of the Tartars, Moguls, and indeed of almost all the nations of the Turks. Timur embrac'd this young prince with all the tenderness that cou'd be expected from so good a father. He then went to visit the works, to animate the workmen by his presence; and he did not sit either from the college of Canum, which is near this mosque, or from the hospital of Tounian Aga; at which places he distributed justice, sat in council, and decided the affairs of religion and of the state.

At length, under his conduct, this great edifice was finish'd. It contain'd four hundred eighty pillars of hewn stone, each seven cubits high. The arch'd roof was cover'd with marble, nearly carv'd and polish'd; and from the arrature of the entablature to the top of the roof were nine cubits. At each of the four corners of the mosque without was a Minaret \*. The doors were of brass; and the walls, as well with-

without as within, as also the arches of the roof, were adorn'd with writing in relief, among which is the chapter of the cavern, and other parts of the Alcoran. The pulpit, and reading-desk, where the prayers for the emperor were read, were of the utmost magnificence: and the niche of the altar, cover'd with plates of iron gilt, was likewise of perfect beauty.

After the month of Ramadam was past, and the feast of Bairam come, Timur went to the palace of Dilcu Chah, where he order'd preparations to be made for the most sumptuous banquets, and all sorts of plays and diversion. The empress Rulcia Canica on this occasion gave a noble entertainment, accompany'd with concourses of music and fine dancing.

---

*The end of the fourth book.*

BOOK

## BOOK V.

Two wars of Timur in Georgia. The conquest of Syria and Mesopotamia. The famous war with Bajazet the Ottoman emperor, who after the loss of a battle is taken prisoner, and dies in the Tartars camp.

## C H A P. I.

*The cause which oblig'd Timur to make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the western parts of Asia, from the river Gibon to the Mediterranean sea.*

An. Dom.  
1399.

**I**N the autumn of the year of the Hegira 801, which answers to that of the Mouse, the Mirza Miran Chah<sup>1</sup>, conducted by his evil destiny, went to take the diversion of hunting in the neighborhood of Tauris, where the tomb of Pir Omar Naq Chirban is to be seen.

<sup>1</sup> Son of Timur, and victory of Meiss, which is call'd by the Persian Arabians. The great Moguls of India are descended from him.

He met a roe-buck, which he was desirous to take with his hands: but as he was swooping down to that purpose, he fell off his horse, tho' he was one of the best horsemen of Asia; and the violence of his fall cast him into a swoon, in which he lay a long time. All the lords of his court were extremely concern'd at it, and got round him to comfort him. He continu'd in this for three days and nights: and his physician, being an ignorant fellow, or rather a knave, which Iras since been most suspected, fail'd in the application of remedys; by which means this prince was seiz'd with a giddiness in his brain, which impair'd his senses. Thus this great man, who till that time had possest the throne of Hulacou, and of the kingdom of Azerbissna, with so much applause and glory, by the administration of justice and by his liberality, was depriv'd of his understanding. Upon a bare suspicion he slew a man; and prodigally squander'd away the treasures of the state, destroy'd the most noted buildings, and did many things contrary to the good sense and dignity of a prince.

One of his actions, which plainly discover'd the alteration of his judgment, was, that at the beginning of summer, he departed in the head of all his troops to besiege the city of Bagdad; he march'd day and night, going two day's journey in twenty-four hours, imagining that the mere rumor of his approach wou'd strike a terror into the heart of the Sultan, and make him abandon the city. But affairs took a quite different turn; for when Miran Chah was at the court of Ibrahim Lir, he receiv'd advice from Tauris, that a great number of the principal men of the kingdom were confederated against him: which nevertheless did not hinder his progress to Bagdad. But the Sultan Ahmed, knowing it was

not

Book V. not a proper season to besiege the place, because of the great dryness and heat of the weather, resolv'd to defend himself. In the mean while couriers came incessantly from Tauris with reiterated advice of the conspiracy, and even of the revolt of the principal inhabitants; so that the Mirza, two days after the arrival of the great standard before Bagdad, was constrain'd to return to Tauris with expedition: he was no sooner enter'd into that capital of Media, than he put all those to the sword who were accus'd of being in the conspiracy, of which number was the Cadi.  
 \* The  
 \* During this autumn he suspected that the Cheif Ali, prince of Cheki, of the tribe of Lefat, wou'd revolt from his obedience: for which cause, without examining into the truth of it, he march'd into the field at the head of his army, and went to pillage his country.

When the Georgians, who by their acts of hostility had already drawn on themselves Timur's anger, were inform'd of the Mirza Miran Chak's small application to public affairs, they became so insolent, that during Timur's expedition in Indis they revolted. At the same time the Sultan Tamer, son of the Sultan of Bagdad, was with his troops in the fortress of Alegic, which had been besieg'd a long time, according to Timur's orders, by the Sultan Sndger, son of Hadgi Seifeddin'. The besiegers, the better to carry on the siege, had built a great wall round the place, so that no one cou'd get in or out. This conjecture caus'd the Georgians to get together a great number of troops: and even the Cheif Ali, tho' a good Musulman,

\* An old general of Timur's army, and his favourit, who had exceed'd him ever since the beginning of his rise.

join'd these infidels, to revenge himself for the <sup>Chap. 1.</sup> Mirza Miran Chah's having pillag'd his country. The Georgians came before Alengie with a great army, being resolv'd to deliver the Sultan Tamer, who had been so press'd, that his heart, as one may say, was in his mouth; and entring Azerbissar, they sack'd the country, pillag'd the Musulmans effects, and committed all imaginable disorders.

Sultan Sendger, on advice of this, rais'd the stoge, and march'd to Tauris to give an account of this strange accident to Miran Chah, who immediately order'd his son the Mirza Abdoubeere to march with four or five Eunuchs before Alengie, to repulse the Georgians, and put a stop to their disorders, which they cou'd not do with so much expedition, but that the Georgians got first to the place, from whence having made the Sultan Tamer go out, they plac'd Alengie in the hands of Hadj: Saleh, and three famous Oraours<sup>1</sup> of Georgia, and then return'd home, their design being only to deliver the Sultan Tamer. Yet by chance they met the army of Tauris, which being far less numerous, endeavor'd to avoid 'em, but that being impossible, the Oraours resolutely advance'd to it affor'd of the victory: at the first onset they broke thro' the wings of the army of Tauris: and the Cherif Ali, perceiving Abdoubeere, ran'd upon him out of the main body sword in hand, to revenge the ruin his father had brought upon his country: but this young prince, who was but eighteen years old, kept his ground, and let fly an arrow of walnut-wood against the

<sup>1</sup> The Oraours are the principal heads of Georgia, as the Emirs and Mirzas are with the Persians and Tauris.

Book V. Cherif, with so much skill, that he struck him near the collar of his helmet of gold, which he pierc'd, and the arrow stuck in his neck; so that the rash Cherif fell down dead on a sudden. This vigorous attack of the young prince did not hinder the Georgians gaining the victory; for they totally defeated the army of Tauris, and then return'd into their own country, while the Mirza Aboubeere sav'd himself by flight.

These melancholy events were the consequences of the Mirza Miran Chali's being lunatic; which yet appear'd in a more shameful manner in his excesses and debauches; for he employ'd almost all his time in drinking and gaming. And as one vice is always attended by another, he fell into greater extravagances. As he was one day in conversation with his wife the princess Canzade, he reproach'd her with a fact which wounded her honor, with which this chaste princess was so sensibly touch'd, that she us'd all her endeavors to discover the source of this calumny; in which search the lives of several men and women were sacrific'd; and even the Mirza's Vicer, Dolet Coja Eime, was oblig'd to fly with his wife to Beyan Coutechin at Rei, leaving all he had got during the time of his minority to be plunder'd. The aversion of the Mirza and Canzade so far increas'd, that the princess, being highly incens'd, was oblig'd to go to Samarcand, where she arriv'd just as Timur return'd from the Indian war, and had begun to take some recreation after the fatigues of that expedition, and inform himself of the present affairs of the empire. This was a favorable time for the princess to be reveng'd; for Timur had been already inform'd of the many disorders committed in the kingdom of Iran, and especially in Azerbijan, thro' the ill conduct of the

Mirza.

Mirea. Canisse at her arrival had the honor Chep. 51  
to lay the imperial carpet in the halls of plane-  
trees, where she acquainted his majesty with her  
husband's dis temper, assuring him that if he did  
not march towards that kingdom, the Mirea wold  
not fail of revolting. Since he now made light  
of the imperial mandates and prohibitions, and  
had squander'd away the treasures of Azerbijan  
in dabances and prodigality.

These reasons oblig'd Timur, before he had repos'd himself after the fatigues of the last campaign, from which he had not return'd above four months, to take up a resolution to carry his arms into the countrys of Iran, to put a stop  
to the disorders which had crept in there, to  
succour the weak, curb the insolent, and deli-  
ver those who were fallen under the weight of  
injustice and tyranny.

---

## C H A P. II.

*Timur's departure for a campaign of seven years.*

TI M U R, to whom the universal empire of Asia was deliv'd, was no sooner on his return from India, where he had suffer'd the fatigues of a tiresom war with the Indians for a whole year, than he resolv'd to march towards the western parts of Asia, for the reasons given in the preceding chapter. The emperors immediately sent messengers into all the provinces, with orders for the officers of the army to assemble their troops, as well cavalry as infantry, for a campaign of seven years, and repair immediately to court to receive his

Book V. majesty's orders. Timur sent to Herat three Emirs of the court of the Mirza Charoc, to signify to that prince that he must march into Azerbiana at the head of the troops of Corassana, and Charoc's that the Emir Solyman Shah \* shou'd go before Vilas. at the head of the vanguard to Tauris.

The Mirza Charoc having learnt the emperor's will from the Emirs, employ'd himself in getting ready the army of Corassana; and the Emir Solyman Shah departed at the same time with the Sold Coja, whom Timur had sent. As soon as the troops were assembled, the Mirza at their head took the road to Bellam and Damgan. When he was arriv'd at Jaggeron, he met Toukel Carrara, who was come from the imperial camp, which had already cross'd the Gibon, and who brought orders for the army of Corassana to take the road to Chalman, Esterabad, and Sari, because the imperial army must pass by Bellam and Damgan. Whereupon the Mirza turn'd towards Chalman; but many of his horses perish'd in their march, as well by reason of the difficulty of the ways, as for that the roads were full of poisonous herbs: and after a tedious journey he arriv'd at Firouzcoch. Timur before his departure gave the government of all the country of Touran to the Mirza Metomed Sultan, whom he left at Samarcand, the seat of this great empire. He stell'd several Emirs in employments near the Mirza's person, whose business was to defend the frontiers; and he gave the government of Andecan to the Mirza Eshander, to whom he entrusted the care of the limits of Turkistan. At length, recommending himself to God, he order'd the great imperial standard to be brought into the field; and at the beginning of autumn, the eighth of Muharrem 1399. 802, which answers to the year of the Hare-

this great conqueror departed for a campaign of Chap. 2.  
seven years; the date of which day is found in the letters of Etch Garib, which signifies, easy conquest. Timur went directly to encamp at Garatoupa, which mountain he afterwards pass'd, and went down to Keeli, where he visited the tombs of the prince his father, and of the Chirik Chamfeddin Kesar: here he distributed arms, and then went to Terned, where he did the same in the tombs of the Cherifs, as well as in that of Coja Melchined Ali, the great philosopher of Terned, and in that of the illustrious Aboubeckre Verrac, and other famous Sancors, imploring their intercession with God for the good success of his arms.

He cross'd the Gilon, and went down to Balc, where he encamp'd in a meadow situate at the foot of the fortress of Hendouan: he likewise visited at Balc the tombs of these holy men, Coja Okis Chah, Coja Rommanc, Sultan Ahmed Kerkouye, Edailayar, Sefan Thaouri, and others, whose assistance he besought: and he did the Emir Yadghiar Barlas, governor of Balc, the honor to lodge in his house. This Emir was not wanting in performing his devoirs, as well in sprinkling gold and precious stones at the emperor's feet, as in preparing for him a magnificent banquet and presents, and giving him all the marks of a profound respect and perfect obedience. Timur departed from Balc, and after several days march, came to Sarak Camich Dgjan, where he was join'd by the Mirza Chatoe's household, and by the prince's son Mellet Aga <sup>Chatoe</sup>, and Ghinier Glad Aga <sup>Chatoe</sup>, with their <sup>wives</sup> children, who came from Herat.

The emperor took pleasure in seeing 'em, and receiv'd their presents, and the precious stones they sprinkled on him, with so much the more

Book V. satisfaction, in that they presented to him the young Mirza Siorgattach, who was born of Muzaffar Agha but four months before, under the ascendant of Virgo, the eighth of Ramadan 801. The emperor was tenderly affected at the sight of the Mirza his grandson, whom he loaded with blessings.

The Emir Aeborga came to the same place to pay his respects to his majesty, making presents, and sprinkling precious stones at his feet. The emperor gave him a handsome reception, with a vest, and permitted him to return to Persia. Then he went to visit the tomb of the celebrated Nusfit Ahmed Dgiam, where he distributed dars as usual, to impel to the protection of this famous Sancar. and from thence he sent the Alix-Roukhim to his elder brother the Mirza Pir Mehered at Chiraz, with orders that these two be there sh'd march together towards Bagdad; and he commanded the Emir Seviadgic to accompany him with a thousand horse. Timur then took the diversion of the chase in the plains of Khergherd and Ferapherd, where in two days they slew an exceeding number of beasts; and afterwards he command'd his road by Nichabour and Belam, and distributed presents and ammunition among the troops; he pass'd by the province of Roi and Khoavar; and being encamp'd at the town of Aivanic, he was join'd by the Mirza Charos, who according to his instructions had march'd by the road of Mazaruran.

CHAP. III.

*The translation of the Emir Solymen Chah.*

THE Emir Solymen Chah, when he was on the road to Tami, with the vanguard, being arriv'd at Rei, heard from Deyr Chachin, governor of that town, of the Mirza Miran Chah's being banish'd: whereupon, musing himself whether it he should go to Rei upon this prince, he resolv'd to march to Huzistan. But the Mirza Abouberez having held a council with his father's Envoy, did command to write a letter to Solymen Chah, in which they invited him to come to Tami, assuring him that he should receive all manner of satisfaction. On this promise the Envoy went there, and with so much conduct wrought upon Miran Chah, that he persuad'd him to set out two days after to meet the emperor, with a numerous retinue; while the Mirza Abouberez gave this brave Emir a magnificent entertainment in the meadows of Comtoupa, with all the elation Tis-tis; honouring him with a tour, and sending him a present of several fine horses, to gratify his good-will; & he did also send Caja, & an accompani'd the Emir Solymen Chah; and then they went together to Chehrar. When Timur had pass'd by Chehrar, the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the imperial camp; but he could not obtain audience till the next day. The same day a messenger, nam'd Aman, arriv'd to Chehrar, and other'd presents to Timur from the Mirza Omar Cheik; he had a handsom reception, and the honor to kill the imperial carpet. Next

Book V. day the Mirza Miran Chali had also the honor to kiss the emperor's feet: he offer'd his presents on his knees; but he was not receiv'd by the emperor with any tokens of kindness, because of the faults he had committed. Then Timur sent to Tauris before the rest, Timur Caja son of Achouga, and Gelchellam, to carry information of the deportment of Miran Chali. These two commissioners, at their arrival there, cou'd the principal officers and lieutenants of this Mirza to be seiz'd and bound, and the registers of the Divan to be brought to 'em. And whereas the Mirza had sevander'd away two parts of the revenues for four years belonging to the Divan, these commissioners wou'd not pass his accounts for the same. But as information was given the court, that the principal cause of the disorder of the province came from the Mirza's excesses, and he was buoy'd up in this evil passion by the instigation of certain profligate musicians, and others, who made it their business to excite him to pleasure and drunkenness; that these parasites never stir'd from the prince's person, but took care to furnish him with new subjects for debauches; the emperor issu'd out an order that they shou'd be all hang'd, not excepting one man, to serve for an example to others. Thus all the Mirza's favorites were seiz'd; and even the most ingenuous men, who were of that number, were not spar'd, but serv'd as a warning to others; as the incomparable Montana Mehemed Couhessani, so famous for all sciences, and so celebrated a poet; whose conversation and agreeable wit had render'd him the wonder of his age.

Timur, at his arrival at Soltania, gave audience to Muzaffer of Nerevse<sup>\*</sup>, who came

\* A town near Cachem.

from Ispahan; and presenting to Timur jewels Chap. 5, and precious vessels, he kiss'd the imperial carpet. Timur continu'd his march towards Carabagh, by the way of Caraderra and Ardebil: he hunted in the plains of Moocam<sup>1</sup> and Astam<sup>2</sup>, and encamp'd on the banks of the Arzou<sup>3</sup>, which he cross'd the next day upon a bridge of boats, and went to Carabagh Arzan. He distributed the winter-quarters among his troops, which were to be in the neighbourhood of Coutourkint, where the hord and lordship of Ouerataban lay. At Carabagh the Mirza Aboubeere, and the Emir Solyman Chah, had the honor to pay their respects to the emperor; and all the Emirs and chief lords of Miran Chah's court, and the generals of his army, made their presents to his majesty, according to their ability.

We have already related how the Cherif Ali king of Cheki, of the hord of Eriar, had join'd the Georgian army; that he came with 'em to the gates of Alengic, and lost his life by the hands of the young Mirza Aboubeere, son of the Mirza Miran Chah. Since that time, his son, the Cherif Sidi Ahmed, who had taken upon him the reins of government, fell into an extreme inquietude, fearing lest his father's fault shou'd justly draw upon him Timur's vengeance; this reflection oblig'd him to seek the protection of the Emir Cheik Ibrabim, king of Chirvan, and to fly to him for refuge, because this Emir was honor'd with Timur's particular favor, who lov'd him because of his sincerity, and distinguish'd him among his greatest officers. Wherefore this king of Chirvan, relying entire-

<sup>1</sup> Towns of Azembazar.

<sup>2</sup> A river frontier of Azembazar and Arzan.

Book V. ly on the emperor's goodness, carry'd the Cherif to the foot of the throne, designing to beg pardon for him, and procure him the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. In effect, Sidi Ahmed kiss'd the ground with a profound submission, and the Cherif Ibrahim ask'd a pardon for his faults. The emperor full of clemency was willing to give him that mark of his clemency; and not only pardoned the Cherif on his account, but even gave him a sumptuous reception, and moreover confirm'd him in the principality of Cheki, which the Cherif Ali his father formerly possest'd. The Cherif Ibrahim, in quality of Emp of Chascan, paid also his particular respects, and to testify his joy at the emperor's coming into his country, he prepar'd great banquets, and caus'd so great a number of horses and dromes to be farr'd, that all the cooks in the court were not sufficient to dress 'em. Beside this banquet, he entertain'd the court with all other pleasures, which usually accompany the famous feasts; and after-wards he offer'd his presents, which consisted of curious animals, beautiful boys and girls, silver drapery, belts of gold set with precious stones, several sorts of curiosities, and other arms; and lastly, six thousand horses of great price and beauty.

## C H A P. IV.

*The arrival of good news from several parts.*

DURING these transactions, advices were brought from all parts, which were very advantagous to us; among the rest we were inform'd of the death of Timur Cottac Anga, who

who having fled for refuge to Timur, after the defeat and ruin of Togatmich Can, had thro' the protection of Timur been establish'd on the throne of the Cans of Capchac, and the empire of Louchi, and yet forgetful of all the favours he had receiv'd from Timur, thro' an unparallel'd ingratitude, had revolted, and declar'd war against him: they had advice, I say, of the death of this ungrateful prince, as also of the miserable state of the kingdom of Capchac from seditions and intestine wars.

At the same time we also heard that Malek Dschah of Eschir Barcoe, king of Egypt and Syria, had paid'd from this world into the other: that discord having crept among the Emirs and Mamelukes, the affair had ended in a civil war, in which several of the principal Emirs had been massacred: that Farrudje, son of Eschir, who was declar'd heir and successor to the kingdom, had neither credit nor authority: and, that the kingdoms of Egypt and Syria were entirely fallen into disorder.

There came also advice, that Tangout Can, <sup>Emperor of</sup> China, where he had reign'd a long <sup>the</sup> time, professing idolatry, was dead: and that the <sup>Emperors of</sup> Chinese who had revolted, had caus'd great confusion in that empire.

They also learnt that Kezze Coja Agien, king <sup>Emperor of</sup> Gere, had paid the tribute to the angel <sup>the King of</sup> Gere: and that after his death dissensions arose <sup>Emperors of</sup> Gere among his four sons, Chamegehan, Michael, Agien, Cairali, and Chadgehan, thro' the motions of some seditious people.

The same day they also heard that the Mirza Eshander, son of Onur Cheik, was departed from Andican at the head of his Emirs and army, and had enter'd Mogolistan, where, thro' Timur's good fortune, he had gain'd the adua-

Book V. —  
victorie over the Moguls, whom he utterly de-  
feated.

These advices, which were of so great import-  
ance to the designs of our conqueror, arriving  
the same day, fill'd the hearts of all the em-  
peror's faithful servants with joy.

As the affair of the Mirza Eskender is of such  
great consequence, we have thought proper to  
give the reader a detail of it. Diffusion having  
crept in among the people of Gote<sup>1</sup> after the  
death of Kizza Coja Agien, the Mirza Eskender  
had hold on this favorable opportunity, and  
got together the troops of Anatcan; and tho'  
he was but fifteen years old, he put himself at  
their head, accompany'd by the Emirs of his  
court, and by those who in compliance with  
Timur's orders, guarded the frontier of Gote;  
and boldly enter'd into the lands of the Moguls.

When he was come near to Cachgar<sup>2</sup>, and the  
Emirs had join'd him, they advanc'd all togo-  
ther to pillage and ravage the town of Yarkent<sup>3</sup>:  
then they march'd on farther, and did the same  
to Sarei Camich, Keiapino, Alighaul, Yar  
Courgash, Tchattac, and Keione Bagh<sup>4</sup>: they  
at length arriv'd at the province of Aandeg in  
Mogollan, and almost all the people, whose  
hords were in those quarters, came to meet 'em  
with subission and obedience. They took  
those prisoners who refus'd to obey, and carry'd  
'em with 'em towards the citadel of Aesen, which  
they besieg'd, and with great difficulty made  
themselves masters of it. This citadel consisteth

<sup>1</sup> The author seems to make no difference between the  
Gree and the Mogols, rather because the action is the same,  
or that the Mogols in that time inhabited the country of Gote.

<sup>2</sup> Capital of Turkistan.

<sup>3</sup> Town of Gote.

<sup>4</sup> All parts of Mogollan.

three castles, which have a communication with Chap. 4.  
 one another, and is esteem'd so strong, that the inhabitants of all the neighbouring provinces consider it as a sure asylum in time of war. The Mirza soon encamp'd with his Emirs without the place; and being prepar'd to attack it vigorously with instruments for scaling the walls, scaling-ladders, battering-rams, and other machines, he caus'd several assaults to be given immediately after one another, for near forty days, when the besieged were oblig'd to surrender: to which purpose they sent presents to the Mirza, and made several very rich Chinese merchants go out of the place, who had been shut up there with their effects. Then the Mirza sent men to make inroads at Bai and Cossan; the former of which is a cool place fit for the summer, and the latter a warm place proper for winter. The Scots pillag'd these two towns, and brought away captive the princess Hadgi Melik Aga, wife of the Emir Kere Orah, and her daughter Khan Melik, with other ladies. At length they went to pillage the town of Faran, whence they brought the inhabitants away prisoners.

After these conquests the Mirza Extender departed from Aesou for Cotan<sup>1</sup>, one hundred and fifty seven days journey from Cambaluc<sup>2</sup>, cap<sup>3</sup>ital of the northern China, call'd Cata, which is a flourishing and populous country, with abundance of water: for we count from Cotan to Cata Coja thirty-five days journey; from thence to Teteroul, frontier of China, thirty-one days journey, where there is a wall situated between two high mountains, in which wall is a great gate.

<sup>1</sup> Capital of a kingdom of the same name.

Book V. several Yam-Canes, or trees to lodge passengers, and several soldiers are always at this place to guard the frontier and entrance of the wall. From hence to Ghendgian Fou, a city of China, is fifty-one days journey; and forty from that place to Cambaluc. It is also forty from Ghendgian Fou to Nen-nai. We are assur'd there is another road, by which to go from Cotan to the frontiers of China in forty days; but there is not one dwelling-place in it, the land make it very tiresome; and tho' the water, which is drawn out of the wells in its deserts, is easily come at, yet in several places it is venomous, and kills the animals which drink of it: and what is very surprizing, out of two wells at a small distance from each other, the water of one is venomous, and the other perfectly good. From Cotan to Cathgar is fifteen days journey, and from Cathgar to Samarcand twenty-five. In Cotan are two rivers, Oracech, and Garacach, the stones of which being jasper, are carry'd to other countries. These two rivers have their source in the mountains of Gassangonac.

To return to our subject: at the Micer Eshen-der's arrival at Cotan, the inhabitants came out to salute him, and bring him presents; and he behav'd himself with so much prudence, that all the places and castles of this frontier-province were reduc'd to the emperor's obedience. He at length departed from Cotan, and came to Gassangonac, a very steep and rugged mountain, into which the inhabitants of Cotan and the neighboring places fly for refuge in time of war. When the Micer was fully inform'd of the strength and inaccessibleness of Gassangonac, he did not judge it convenient to hazard his troops there, but chose rather to return, and spend the winter at Cathgar. He chose two

companys of Mogul young women, the most Chap. 2.  
beautiful of Coran, nine in each company, whom he sent as a present to the emperor by the Cheik Yezoul : he likewise sent by the same person nine young women and nine horses to the Mirza Me-  
hemed Sultan, who being extremely incens'd against him, refus'd his presents.

The reason of this discord was as follows : the Mirza Mehemmed Sultan was come into Fuz-  
kistan with an army to join the Mirza Eskender, and go with him to the war against the Geres ; but Eskender, instead of waiting for him as he ought, went before, and march'd directly into Mogolistan, that he might not serve under Me-  
hemed Sultan. This excited Mehemmed's hatred, so that he wou'd not accept of his presents : and he return'd to Samarcand with his army, without putting any designs in execution.

When spring was come, the Mirza Eskender return'd to Andecan, from whence he took the road to Samarcand, to visit Mehemmed Sultan ; but he learnt at the mountain Ackiozeb, that the Mirza being highly incens'd against him, had a design to seize him. This gave his  
Eskender jealousies ; so he return'd to Andecan, and enter'd the castle : but the Emirs, Pir Mehe-  
med, son of Tagi Bongz, and Pir Hadgi son of Melik, tax'd him with a design to revolt. They  
assembled the militia of Andecan, and besieg'd the castle, upon which the Mirza Eskender came  
out, and went to lodge in a garden built by the  
Mirza Qasar Cheik, after having conser'd with  
'em with a deal of good-nature. Then the Emirs  
seiz'd his domestics, and bound 'em : of which they sent advice to the Mirza Mehemmed Sultan  
at Samarcand, as also of Eskender's entering  
the castle, and design to revolt. Mehemmed Sul-  
tan dispatch'd an express to bring Eskender to  
Samarc-

Book V. Samarcand, with the officers of his household. They deliver'd this prince to him at the bank of the river of Conhee; and having bound him, they put to death his 'Arabec', Boyan Timur, son of Bikidgek, with twenty-six of his domestics.

---

## C H A P. V.

*Timur marches into Georgia, and to the defile of Comcha.*

**T**IMUR designing to carry his arms into Georgia, in obedience to the precept of the Alcoran, which teaches us to wage war upon all who disbelieve the musulman religion, he began to make preparations from the winter of 1372, being then encamp'd at Garabagh Arran.

He gave a resl to the Cheik Ibrahim of Chitvan, and another to Sidi Ahmed of Cheli; and after having loaded 'em with his favors, he permitted 'em to return home. He chose three men out of every ten to serve as scouts, whom he order'd to take vicinal for ten days; and he commanded the baggage and rest of the army to stay in this place. He went to join these scouts with the Mirzas his sons; and being arriv'd at the river of Cyrus\*, he cross'd it with his troops on a bridge of boats. Soon after he was join'd by the Cheik Ibrahim of Chitvan, and Sidi Ahmed, prince of Cheli, who came to follow the court.

---

\* Arabec is a present governor.

The imperial army pass'd by Cheki<sup>4</sup>, and took Chap. 5.  
the road to the defile of Comcha<sup>5</sup>, where the ~~infidels~~ dwelt : and as this defile was full of  
thick woods, the trees of which were very closely  
intern over with one another, the soldiers had  
orders to cut 'em down to facilitate their passage.  
Accordingly they made a road with their axes  
and haws ten day's journey in length, and broad  
enough for five or six company's to march in  
front. At that time it snow'd exceedingly for  
twenty day's together ; but that cou'd not hinder  
Timur from arriving with his army in  
Georgia. Our men made the great cry, *Allah Eber*,  
and fell upon the enemy with so much fury,  
that the surface of the mountain which the savans  
had before render'd white, with the blood of these  
infidels became as red as fields sown with tulips ;  
and no quarter was given to any they met. Com-  
cha the chief of these infidels, who disbelieve  
any future judgment, was oblig'd to abandon  
his encamp and family, and fly. Our soldiers pur-  
sue him as far as the defile of Aefon, and re-  
turn'd with a great many oxen, sheep, and other  
cattle. After Comcha's flight, and retreating  
into the woods, they set fire to his houses, and  
pillag'd and ruin'd all his villages. And as  
wine was absolutely necessary for this people,  
their men, women, and little children being so  
accustom'd to it, that when they were on their  
death-bed, they entreated that some might be  
buried in their sepulchres with 'em, and order'd  
by their wills that after their deaths their body's  
should be wash'd with wine, and their coffins  
made with vine-tree : for this consideration,

<sup>4</sup> A town on the South frontier of Georgia near the Caspian.

<sup>5</sup> A defile in Georgia, belonging to prince Comcha.

Book V. that they might do 'em the more damage, and entirely ruin 'em, the vine-trees were distributed among the troops, who rooted up all of 'em, which they had with so great difficulty cultivated: they also cut down the other trees, and peal'd several. They afterwards raze'd the great edifices of this country, and especially the temples, where they paid their adorations, which were so disagreeable to God. And what is remarkable is, that in the winter of the preceding year, which was that of the Leopard, Timur destroy'd the Guebres of India, and raze'd their temples at Delli, and upon the Ganges; and that this winter, which was the year of the Hare, he was carrying on the same war of religion in Georgia, and razeing the temples of the Georgians. The poet say, that he had one foot on the eastern frontier of India, and the other upon the western limits of the country of Arran.

---

## C H A P. VI.

### *Timur's return from the defeat of Comcha.*

**T**IMUR staid near a month in this desite; and his soldiers had made themselves masters of all the mountains, after having slain an infinite number of brave Osmours, whose prince Comcha was retir'd to so great a distance, that no advice cou'd be got of the place he was in; and the enemy's country was entirely ruin'd: besides all this, the cold was very violent, and the ways were clos'd up with snow, so that the horses had nothing to eat but the barks of trees, and even several of 'em died with hunger.

Where-

Wherupon Timur resolv'd to return, he repair'd Chap. 4.  
the river of Cyru, and came back with glory to  
Carahagh, where he enter'd his imperial tent  
with the acclamations of all the lords and prin-  
cesses of his court. The joy at his presence was  
augmented by the birth of a son to the Mirza  
Cabil Sultan: this young prince was name'd Hau-  
kul: and several days were spent in sprinkling  
gold and precious stones upon him: they had  
banquets and plays, accompany'd with music,  
to celebrate this happy birth. Soon after a se-  
vere order was issu'd out, for prosecuting those  
in a council of war, who had not behav'd them-  
selves as they ought in the battel fought by the  
Mirza Miran Chah against the Georgians, in the  
neighbourhood of Alengie. The Mirza Capoc  
was commission'd to see to the putting this or-  
der in execution: who having examin'd all the  
acts, in council with the Emirs of the Divan,  
they presented a memorial to the emperor, with  
the several interrogatories, informations and  
proofs: upon which Timur order'd the punish-  
ment due by the laws of Gengiz Kan to be ex-  
ecuted. The bastinado was given to Haogi  
Abdalla Abbaz, and Mehemed Catgan: Yumno  
Harruzai Aperdi, who had fled first, was order'd  
to be put to death: but the Chah Ladze, or  
emperor's children, obtain'd the grace of his  
being repriev'd after the bastinado before the  
behind; and each of these three lords was fin'd  
thirty horses. They also fin'd the principal  
officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, some at fifty,  
some at two hundred, and some at three hundred  
horses, which horses were distributed among  
the foot-soldiers.

Timur bestow'd many favors and boons on  
the Mirza Alouberre, because of the valor he  
had shewn in the fight, when he when'd Sidi

Book V. Ah king of Cheli. At the same time the prince Burhan Aglen was likewise sent to death, for having committed some considerable faults, very unworthy of his birth, in several skirmishes. His son was treated in the same manner: and his regiment, officers, and domestics were given to Rouslem Foutad.

## C H A P. VII.

*Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rouslem, who was gone from Dgiam to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldest brother, the Mirza Pir Mehemed.*

WE have said before that the emperor had sent the Mirza Rouslem from Dgiam<sup>\*</sup> to Chiraz, and that he was accompany'd in his journey by the Emir Sevindgic at the head of two thousand horse. They happily arriv'd at Chiraz by the road of Yezd and Abrecoah. The Mirza Pir Mehemed gave him a handsome reception, and a sumptuous Banquet, in the garden of Garbagh<sup>†</sup>, and presented him with a vest and a hundred thousand Dinars Copperpice. Some time after the Mirza Rouslem, accompany'd by the Emir Sevindgic, his nephew Hassin Jander, and Hassin Jgadaou, who were at Chiraz, took the road to Bagdad, according to the emperor's order, and pass'd by Behbehan and Tostar; leav-

\* In Creations towards Dafchoua: the same with such Creath Dgiam.

† A royal garden at Chiraz, different from Garbagh near Tarsia.

ing at Chiraz, to govern that city, the Emirs Chap. 7.  
Said Berlas, and Alibek Aisa, a relation of the  
Emir Abbas, as Timur had commanded him.  
But the Mirza Mehemed, who had the like or-  
ders to depart at the head of this army, delay'd  
his departure, till a long time after; then pre-  
tending sickness, he return'd to Chiraz by No-  
bendigian in Chidelestan.

This did not deter the Mirza Roustem with  
his Emirs from ravaging Loraskeret, in the coun-  
try of Razhermez<sup>1</sup>, from whence he brought a  
great quantity of booty: he made the same haste  
in passing by the village of the bridge, call'd  
Dericul: he pillag'd in the plain of Dombat  
all the subjects of the princes Saki and Febl.  
From thence he went to plunder Bad<sup>2</sup> and Bar-  
fa<sup>3</sup>, whence he brought away several slaves; and  
in the month of Junazaneev Soz, he arriv'd at  
Mendeli<sup>4</sup>. The Emir Ali Calander, the gover-  
nor of it for the Sultan of Bagdad, put himself  
in a posture of defence; but he being repa's'd  
at the first onset, they seiz'd on eleven of his  
men, whose heads they cut off, and then per-  
mitted the soldiers to pillage the place.

In the mean while the Mirza Pit Mehemed,  
who under pretence of sickness had turn'd back,  
arriv'd at Chiraz, where by the instigation of  
certain Tadgies, who had listed themselves in  
his service, he fell into some extravagances; un-  
der-taking to compose poisons and fascinations,  
the designs of which he was utterly ignorant of.  
The Emir Said Berlas, governor of Chiraz, be-  
ing inform'd of it by some of this young prince's  
servants, immediately made a strict search into

March  
1200.

<sup>1</sup> A town of Lorashan. long. 96. lat. 35.

<sup>2</sup> Town of Chidea.

<sup>3</sup> A town of Arabia, dependent on Bagdad.

Book V. the matter, and learnt from his very officers the whole of it, even before the Mirza's face. Upon these uncontrollable proofs the Emir Said imprison'd Pir Mohamed in the inner fortres, and lott'd himself in the castle to guard him, leaving Atibec Aisa in the city to govern it in his stead: and he sent advice to court of what had pass'd at Chiraz. The messenger of the Emir Said gave an account of this to Timur in the winter-quarters at Carabagh, who immediately sent the Emir Allahdad to Chiraz, to prosecute those wicked Tadgics, who had taught the Mirza to make the poisons, that they might be put to death: he was likewise order'd to settle the Mirza Rouzhan upon the throne of Persia, in the room of his eldest brother, whom he was to bring bound to court. Accordingly the Emir Allahdad, at his arrival at Chiraz, put to death Moulana Mohamed Calife, Seid Dzerrah, and Roustem Coralani, who were convicted of having taught the Mirza how to compose the poisons; he caus'd Mashaoni Coubchchi's legs and arms to be cut off; and put in irons Mobarez Gaja, Mahib Cherberdar, and Cheik Zalei Fortid, who were acers'd of having been concern'd in the same crime. Allahdad then sent the emperor's letters-patent to the Mirza Rouzhan, in Irak-Arabi, by which he was install'd in the government of the kingdom of Persia. This prince receiv'd 'em at Mendoli, after he had gain'd the victory over Mir Ali Calimdar. As soon as he had read the emperor's orders, he departed for Chiraz: the Emirs Hassan Jandar and Hassan Jagadaou, who accompany'd him, return'd back; and the Emir Serindigic took the road to Chepchemal, for Garabagh Arsan, where the army lay then encamp'd.

Mir Ali Calander, who had fled from Mezdeli, being arriv'd at Bagdad, gave an account to the Sultan Ahmed, of what pass'd: this prince fell into a great inquietude, and order'd the gates to be shut, and the bridge of the city to be destroy'd.

About this time there happen'd a very remarkable affair, of great service to Timur. This monarch having given the government of Couristan to one named Cherouan, this governor immediately gave himself up to the getting of money at any rate: he exacted great sums from Chamfeldin Deldar, and other principal men of the country; he even put to death the governors of Haviz<sup>1</sup>; and what was worse than all this, he revolted, and with a thousand horse well-equip'd went to Bagdad, where he offer'd his services to Sultan Ahmed, who gave him a handsome reception, loading him with honors and caresses. Cherouan did not rest there; but endeavor'd to win over to him the Sultan's principal officers, and to that purpose secretly gave them considerable sums, from ten thousand to three hundred thousand Dinars of Bagdad. But it happen'd very unluckily to this traitor, that the memorandum of the sums paid to each of these lords was lost thro' the negligence of his secretary, and fell into the hands of Cours Behider, one of the Sultan's officers, who presented the note to his master, at a time when the affrighted Sultan had caus'd the gates of the town to be shut. This traitor greatly increas'd his sufferings; and particularly a sum of ten thousand Dinars, set down to the name of Rase, whom the Sultan immediately caus'd to be arrested, and sent off

<sup>1</sup> A town in the province of Couristan, call'd also Almata.

Book V. hit him with his own hand. In the mean while, as he had already sent Chetouan, with Couroub Haideri, Mansour, and other Emirs, to ravage Oirat, he immediately dispatch'd Yadghiar Etatchi, with orders to the Emir to slay Chetouan; which was accordingly executed, and his head brought to Bagdad, where the Sultan in less than eight days put to death near two thousand of his officers. He sent to Vafei the lady Vefa Carbon, who had mur'd and educated Chetouan from his infancy; while she was smother'd by a pillow laid over her face. He slew with his own hand most part of the other ladies and officers of his household, whom he order'd to be cast into the Tigris: and afterwards he shut himself up in the Seraglio, not suffering any one to come to him; and even when the Bayatchis, or stewards, brought him his dinner, they knock'd at the door, deliver'd in the dishes, and then return'd without entering. He spent several days after this manner, and then order'd six of his most faithful servants to convey secretly six horses out of his stable to the other side the Tigris, which river he cross'd one night in a boat, and with those six persons enter'd into the country subject to Cara Yousef prince of the Turcomans. In the mean while the stewards, as usual, carry'd the King's dinner to the gate of the Seraglio, and deliver'd it to an officer who was in the secret, the people having no knowldg of the Sultan's absence. This prince join'd Cara Yousef, and persuaded him to come with his troops to pilage the town of Bagdad. When they were come there, he assign'd quarters on the other side of the water for the troops of Cara Yousef: the Sultan cross'd the river in a boat, and came to his palace; and he gave so much ready money, jewels, arms, Arabian horses, gold

gold belts, and other riches, to Cara Youlef and Chap. 7.  
his men, that these Turcomans were content  with what they had got. The Sultan wou'd by no means permit 'em to insult the city; but as he very much fear'd being attack'd by the army of Zagatai, he sent out spys on all sides, who gave him a true information of the condition of Timur's affairs.

In the month of Zilhadgo 802, Timur being July 1402 on his march to Scbasle, the Sultan of Bagdad imagin'd that if the formidable armys of this conqueror shou'd again enter Natolia and Syria, all the passages wou'd be block'd up, whilst he must be oblig'd to save himself by flight. He therefore resolv'd to leave Farrudje governor of the city of Bagdad, whence he design'd to go out with Cara Youlef, his wives and children, and his jewels, with whatever he cou'd carry away worth taking. So they cross'd the Euphrates, for Natolia; and boing arriv'd at Aleppo, Temurcach, who commanded there, came out with his Emir to oppole his passage. A battle enfu'd: but those of Aleppo being defeated, the Sultan and the rest pursu'd their road, and came to Natolia. As they were on their march towards the city of Scbasle, capital of Roum, they were met by a party of Timur's army: but what pass'd between 'em we'll relate hereafter.

## C H A P. VIII.

*A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia*

AFTER winter was over, that is, in the beginning of the year of the Crocodile, Timur left his winter-quarters, at Carabagh. He assembled a diet, whereto the principal lieutenants, the Emirs, the lords and general officers did not fail of coming: he held a council with 'em, in which it was unanimously resolv'd that the war with the Insidels of Georgia was preferable to all others, as well for the good of religion, which ought to be the principal object of war, as for the increase of the power of monotheism, and the conju[n]cture of the present affairs. The usual feast was made after the diet; and the banquet, which was very sumptuous, was accomplish'd with all sorts of plays and pleasures. Timur, excited by a desire of liberality, distributed the treasures among the Chah Zades, his sons, the Emirs and all the soldiers of the army, and gave horses to those who were on foot. He afterwards inform'd himself of the roads and quarters of Georgia, where thou shou'd encamp; and had 'em very exactly set down in writing; and then imploring the divine assistance, he departed from Carabagh, taking the road to Georgia, the country of Malek Ghourghin. In ten days he arriv'd at the plain of Berdaz, where he encamp'd, and gave audience to Taharren, prince of Arzouqian upon the Kupuzes, who had already gain'd his majesty's favor by his good services. This prince kiss'd the earth before Timur; made a discourse in his presence,

full of vows for his prosperity: and order'd his Chap. <sup>10</sup>  
presence. Timur, being willing to distinguish  
him by very particular favors, not only gave him  
a vest, a cap and a belt, but he further honor'd  
him with a horso-tan, a standard, and two kettle-drums, which are the signs of sovereignty:  
and then he permitted him to return to Ar-  
zondzian, after having given his instructions  
concerning the application and care he ought to  
use in the government of the city in the present  
conjunction: and expressl. recomand ed to him  
to use circumspection to preserve his subjects  
from the insults of the Ottomans, to which pur-  
pose he ought to be watchful, cautious, and li-  
beral to his soldiers, and neglect nothing to pro-  
tect himself from his enemys artifices, who are  
very politic and dangerous.

Timur departed from Berdar, and after se-  
veral days journey arriv'd at the frontiers of Geor-  
gia. He immidiately dispatch'd an express to  
Malek Chowzin, to lead to the camp the  
prince Faher, son of Sultan Ahmed Gelair.  
The messenger acquitted himself of his com-  
mission: but the king of Georgia, Gheorghin,  
return'd him a very uncivil answer. The express  
came back without obtaining any thing, and  
gave an account to Timur of all that had pass'd  
in the audience. The rashness of this rebell  
kindled his wrath against these insults: where-  
fore leaving the baggage, he went before, and  
order'd his troops to enter the lands of the  
Georgians, and to put every thing to fire and  
sword. The soldiers slew every one they met,  
ruin'd the houses of the Georgians, and even  
rooted up the trees: they destroy'd the vines,  
spoil'd the fruits, and brought a terrible desola-  
tion upon this country. The affrighted Geor-  
gians fled for refuge into their high mountains,  
where

Book V. where no one had ever yet conquer'd 'em; for here were, fortify'd caverns, and basles upon craggy rocks, which it woud in vain to think any one cou'd enter by force of arms. They had entrench'd themselves in those places, and carry'd with 'em whatever they cou'd find worth taking. Timur's soldiers, without examining the dangers to which they were expos'd, and full of confidence in their prince's good fortune, ascended these mountains, and then laid themselves in boxes, to which strong cords were fasten'd, and so were let down by their comrades from the tops of the mountains, to the caverns of the Georgians; where discharging their arrows, they approach'd the enemys, and flew the most valiantly: then taking lances in one hand, and swords in the other, they enter'd the caverns, notwithstanding the vigorous resistance of the enemys, of whom they made a horrible slaughter. Among these craggy places there were some so well defended, that our men were oblig'd to call a great quantity of combustible matter, as well to dislodge the enemys, as to burn their wooden houses, and the entrenchments they had made. Thus by the assistance of heaven, tho' these infidels fought with all imaginable resolution, the musketeers soldiers had the advantage over 'em, according to the promise of the Alcoran; taking fifteen noted places, on which they very much rely'd. Those who woud turn Musulmans obtain'd quarter: but those who, thro' the temptation of the devil, stubbornly continu'd in the disbelief of the Alcoran, were beheaded.

Timur left several of the best troops of Corassana in the garrison of the city of Tedit, capital of Georgia, and then went to encamp in the plain of Mooran. The king Gheorghia being

being terrify'd at the success of the Mahometans, fled into the deserts, and as a vagabond wander'd about the uninhabited mountains; but the greatest part of the Ormians of Georgia, seeing themselves reduc'd to the utmost extremity, submitted; they came in a humble manner to the gate of the imperial pavilion, where they begg'd quarter and pardon at the victorious Timur, making divers excuses to avert his vengeance. When our troops had reduc'd this country, they raze'd the temples and monasteries, where the Georgians had for a long time exercis'd their religion; and erected chappels and mosques, in which they proclaim'd the Law<sup>1</sup>, and read the prayers of the musulman religion with the usual ceremony, to the glory of Timur.

## C H A P. IX.

*Timur marches against prince Jani Bee, a  
Georgian.*

ATTE R the conquest and destruction of the country of Malek Gheorghin, Timur resolv'd to attack the other provinces of Georgia. He departed with expedition from the plain of Mooran, and leaving the baggage, march'd towards the defile of Jani Bee. When they were arriv'd there, the troops surrounded all the country, pillag'd it, and brought away a considerable booty. Jani Bee soon abordon'd

<sup>1</sup> KAM is the cry the Mahometans make from the top of the minarets (or steeple) at their asperges, to call the people to prayer.

his mountain and fortresses; and with an entire submisſion came before the emperor. In the mean while our soldiers ravag'd the villages, burnt the houses, and slew every one they met: they carry'd away the Georgians slaves; and while they enrich'd themselves in this world, they were laying up treasures of merit in the other. Afterwards they return'd to join the baggage; and Timur sent, by the way of Scutte, the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali-Bekuler, to make incursions in other parts of Georgia: he order'd the Emir Geian Chak to pass the desile with the troops of the left wing: and the main body, commanded by Timur, pass'd by Semate, where it was join'd by all the troops which were sent out to make incursions in the provinces, from whence they return'd laden with spoils, bring-  
ing away a great number of horses and sheep: and, to mortify the Georgians the more, our sol-  
diers destroy'd all the standing corn, and ruin'd their temples and other edifices. At the mouth of the desile was a fortress name'd Bil, which was very high and difficult of access: nevertheless our army was no sooner arriv'd there than they had order to besiege it: and the siege and conquest of the place were almost perform'd at the same time. Having taken it, they raz'd it, lest it shou'd be of use to the enemy on another occasion. From thence the army went to encamp in the true ancient Georgia: and Timur sent the Emirs into all parts in search of Iung Ghoughghin, who, like wolves and chace, wander'd as a vagabond in uninhabited woods and mountains: but not being able to find him, they return'd to join the imperial camp with a great quantity of spoils, and some of Ghoughghin's officers whom they had taken. Timur at length decamp'd, cross'd the river of Cyrus, and happily es-  
camp'd

camp'd on the other bank, loaded with good Captives, fortune, and prov'd with his victory.

## C H A P. X.

*The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town of Suanit.*

DURING these transactions, the Spys brought advice that a great number of Ottomans were retir'd into the castle of Zerit, situate on the ridge of a narrow mountain, which had never been taken by any conqueror. On this, Timur, to whom nothing appear'd impossible, march'd with expedition towards this place, and order'd it to be besieg'd. The mangonel and battering rams were got ready; and after several attacks necessary at a siege, a general assault was given seven days after Timur's arrival. The fort was taken sword in hand, and raz'd the same day, after putting all the Georgians to the sword. Then they went out to make incursions, and brought away a great number of prisoners bound, whom the emperor order'd to be put to death, because they would not服从 Mahometanism. They afterwards receiv'd advice that king Goughian was in the town of Suanit. Timur order'd the roads to this town to be taken down to writing; and that the troops which were sent out to make incursions, should return to the camp. He left one half of the army with the baggage, and with enlight display'd march'd with the rest. But Goughian, who had his son about him, had advice of Timur's approach; he went out of Suanit,

Book V. Sosnit, and fled towards Abkhaze. The troops, at their arrival at Sosnit, carry'd it upon the first assault, and then went in pursuit of Gourghio, several of whose officers they slew: but this prince, reduc'd to the greatest misery, cross'd the rivers of Aigaz and Corian<sup>1</sup>, and had the good fortune to save himself from the dangers wherewith he was surrounded. Then seeing himself, in a manner, ready for the slaughter, he found it was not far so weak a prince as himself to protect the son of the Sultan of Bagdad, against the powerful emperor Timur: whereupon he oblig'd Taber to seek an asylum in the country of the Ottomans, whither he had heard the Sultan Ahmed his father was likewise fled. At length Gourghio sent to the court of Timur an ambassador nam'd Israel, who made known to him the great misery and extremity to which his master was reduc'd; desir'd the respite of his state, and destruction of his country; and with his face turn'd towards the ground, he spake thus to the emperor with all the submission that cou'd be expected from a miserable and vanquish'd prince: "I have seen the evil success of the methods I have so un- fortunately taken; I have failed the traits of my imprudence, and the bitterness of the punishment I have merited: but if the great emperor, whose generosity after victory, I may venture to say, surpasses the fury of his arms in battle, will take pity upon me, who am his servant, and confess my fault, and is willing to pardon me for what is past, and grant me my life, I will not only be entirely obedient to him, but my life shall always be

<sup>1</sup> A town of Georgia at the frontier of Circassia.

<sup>2</sup> Rivers of Circassia.

Chap. 1  
" employ'd in his service. I will take great care  
" not to hurt the Mussulmans in any manner;  
" and moreover I consent to pay the annual tribute  
" to the imperial treasury; likewise pro-  
" mising to send what number of troops his ma-  
" jesty shall order into his service, at the time  
" appointed."

CHAP. XI.

Timur marches against the Georgian prince  
AIVAN.

Timur, upon hearing this discourse of Ghourghin's ambassador, was touch'd with the condition of this prince, and did not doubt the truth of what he said; considering the great misery and necessity to which he was reduc'd, his sincere confession of his fault, and his repentance for having dar'd to give protection to the Sultan Tamer. These considerations, join'd with the promises he had made, and confirm'd with an oath, to be always ready in the emperor's service, and punctually to pay the annual tribute, caus'd Timur to grant him the pardon he demanded; who then went out of his country, and march'd towards the lands subject to prince Aivani, one of the most powerful sovereigns of Georgia. The soldiers having enter'd his country, ravag'd and pillag'd all they met; and as there was no army to oppose 'em, they dispers'd themselves up and down, razing the towns and castles, and destroying every thing with fire and sword. After they had entirely laid this country waste, they pass'd into that of Care Calcanic<sup>\*</sup>, the inhabitants of which, <sup>in the</sup>

Book V. which, arm'd with black bucklers, were skilful mountaineers, and good horsemen. They were not treated with more mildness than the others; for their country was ravag'd, and the places raz'd whither they were remov'd, their houses burnt, and themselves put to the sword, after our soldiers had got what spoils they cou'd from 'em, which were very considerable.

## C H A P. XII.

*Timur returns from Georgia.*

TIMUR being satisfy'd with the conquests he had gain'd, and having reveng'd himself on the Georgians, gave orders for his return. After several days march he encamp'd at Yeltac Mencooli; but having advice that the enemy were again assembled in a place nom'd Farasghard in Georgia, he sent the Emir Cheik Nauredum thither with his troops; and being willing to be in person at the execution of all important affairs, he decamp'd some days after, and leaving the baggage, march'd to Farasghard. In five days he made himself master of seven fortresses of the Georgians, which he caus'd to be raz'd, after having slain an infinite number of these rebels; and from thence he return'd with all his army to Mencooli, where he staid several days.

About this time there came ambassadors from an European prince, who brought with 'em the son of the Emir Amurat, the Ottoman emperor, whom they had taken prisoner: and by the intercession of the principal Emirs of the court, they were admitted into Timur's audience; to whom they made known the high esteem their master





smaller had conceiv'd his actions, and his desire to enter intelligence with him, which he shou'd account great honor. Timur receiv'd the embassys with all manner of civility, granted 'em what they desir'd, and after having given 'em relis, dismiss'd 'em; and they return'd by the way of Trebisond <sup>Chap. 11.</sup>, pleas'd with the honors they had receiv'd at court. The army encamp'd two months in the meadow of Koul, that the horses might have some rest & their fatigue, and to wite the arrival of thurs and troops which were dispers'd up and in the country.

## C A P. XIII.

*Reasons which urg'd Timur to march against the city of Saffir, capital of Anatolia.*

PHILOSOPHERS tell us that the relation betwixt a king and his kingdom is the same as betwixt the soul and body; for when the soul and body temperize in the rules of moderation, the body is in perfect health; but if the contrary happens, it is attack'd with distempers, and at length falls into corruption; and so when a king neglects to do justice, his kingdom falls into decay. This moral may with justice be apply'd to the case of the Ottoman emperor, and the Sultan of Egypt; for these two princes ruling in their power, committed several violent actions, which drew upon 'em

\* Capital of the kingdom of the same name, in Anatolia, on the shore of the black sea; long. 70. 30. lat. 42.

Book V Timur's anger, and caus'd the destruction of their country and the desolation of their subjects. Timur being irritated at their proceedings, tho' but newly return'd from a toilsome campaign, and notwithstanding the great distance of those Sultan's dominions, did not fail of understanding the conquests of their empires, which by the grace of God he brought into subjection, so that all the citys, towns and villages of these great countrys were pillag'd by his soldiers: which calamity was brought upon the poor innocent people thro' the bad conduct of their princes.

But to come to a particular detail of this history: we must know that Edurum<sup>1</sup> Bajazet, surnam'd the Thunder, who  $\pm$  21, then emperor of the Ottomans, surpass'd most of his predecessors in power, and the vastness of his dominions: he had brought into subjection a great <sup>part of</sup> ~~part of~~ the country of Roum<sup>2</sup>, to wit, the provinces of Aidine, Mentecha, Kermian, and Caramania, which his ancestors had never been able to do: and he had likewise extended his dominions the space of four months journey in Europe. After he had taken prisoner Cara Ossman, son of the Cadi Barthaneeldin, prince of Sedaſte, and had put to death the Cadi; he brought an army into the field, and having made himself master of Sedaſte, he push'd his conquests towards Malatia<sup>3</sup>, a town on the Euphrates, and bordering upon the province of Aleppo. He even besieg'd and took the city of Malatia, which had been a long time dependent on Syria. He made the

<sup>1</sup> Edurum signifieth lightning or thunder.

<sup>2</sup> Long. 71. lat. 37.

Emir Mollasa governor of Sebasie, to whose Chap. 14  
son he gave the government of Malatia. At length, as if he cou'd find no one to dispute his conquests, he return'd victorious, and loaded with spoils to the seat of his empire. He had a great number of troops and officers belonging to his household, and among the rest, near twelve thousand dog-keepers. His magnificence, riches, and power, render'd him so proud, that he forgot the sentence which reaches us, that God, the creator of the universe, hath made these who are superior to them who pride themselves in their strength. He had the boldness to send an ambassador to Taharten, to summon him to his court, and send the tributes of Arzengian, Erzehen, and their dependences, to his treasury; which order was in such haughty terms, that it did not become him to use. Taharten sent advice of this to court: and Timur was very much surpriz'd at the design of the Ottoman, who was not ignorant that Taharten was under his protection: whereupon he resolv'd to write a letter to him, to endeavor to bring him to a sense of his fault by sweetnes and friendship.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Timur's letter to the Cæsar Ream, that is, the Ottoman emperor.*

**T**IMUR commanded a secretary to be call'd to him, whom he order'd to write a letter to Ildurum Bajazet, mix'd with censure and reproaches, hoping by that means to make him reflect upon what he had done. The secretary began the letter in an eloquent manner,

Book V. with praises to God, and blessings on Mahomet  
 he made use of this passage of the Aleotan for the  
 subject of his letter, *God bless those princes who  
 know what use they shou'd make of their power,  
 and go not beyond the bounds prescrib'd 'em*, and he  
 continu'd it with expressions which were as dag-  
 gers to the heart of Bajzer, and ought to have  
 shewn him his duty. The letter was as follows.

*To the emperor of Roum, Bajzer the Thunder.*

" After the usual compliments, we let you  
 " know, that by the infinite grace of God,  
 " the greatest part of Asia is in subjection to  
 " our officers, which we conquer'd by our  
 " strength, and the terror of our arms. Know  
 " likewise that the most powerful Sultans of the  
 " earth are obedient to our commands; that  
 " we govern our dominions by our self, and  
 " have even constrain'd fortune to take care of  
 " our empire; that our armys are extended  
 " from one sea to the other, and our guard con-  
 " sists of sovereign kings, who form a hedge be-  
 " fore our gate. Where is the mortal who  
 " dares resist us? Where is the persecute who  
 " does not glory in being of the number of our  
 " courtiers? But for thee, whose true origin ter-  
 " minates in a Turcoman sailor, as every one  
 " knows, it wou'd be well, since the ship <sup>1</sup> of thy  
 " unfathomable ambition has suffer'd shipwreck  
 " in the abyss of self-love, if thou wou'dst lower  
 " the sails of thy rashness, and cast the anchor of  
 " repentance in the port of sincerity, which is

\* This metaphorical way of expression is very common  
 among the Orientals; but it sounds more proper in this place,  
 because of the case of Bajzer being related to a sailor.

the port of Sicry; left by the tempest of our  
vengeance you shou'd perish in the sea of the  
punishment which you merit. But as we have  
learnt, that in obedience to the precept of  
the Alcoran, which orders us to wage war  
with the enemys of the Musulman law, you  
have undertaken a vigorous war with the Eu-  
ropeans; this conlideration hath hinder'd us  
from making any inroads in the lands which  
are subject to you: and the reflection that  
your country is the bulwark of the Musul-  
mans, hath oblig'd us to leave it in a flour-  
ishing condition; for fear the passage of our  
armys into it shou'd raise a division among  
the inhabitants, and cause the Musulmans  
to be disquieted, and the infidels to rejoice.  
Then take care of your self, and endeavor by  
your good conduct to preserve the dominions  
of your ancestors, not suffering for the future  
your ambitious foot to wander out of the li-  
mits of your power, which is but small.  
Cease your proud extravagances, lest the cold  
wind of hatred shou'd extinguish the flam-  
beau of peace. You may remember the pre-  
cept of Mahomer, to let the Turks remain in  
peace, while they are quiet: don't seek to  
wage war with us; which no one ever dur'd  
to do, and prosper'd. The devil certainly  
inspires you to ruin your self. Tho' you  
have been in some considerable battles in the  
woods of Nacolia, and have gain'd advanta-  
ges upon the Europeans; it was only thro'  
the prayers of the prophet, and the blessings  
of the Mahometan religion of which you  
make profession: don't be proud at these  
advantages, nor attribute 'em to your own  
valor. Believe me, you are but a pismire;  
don't seek to fight against the elephants; for  
they'll

Book V. " they'll crush you under their feet. The dove  
 which rises up agaist the eagle destroys it  
 self. Shall a petty prince, such as you are,  
 contend with us? But your rodmonades  
 are not extraordinary; for a Turcoman  
 never spake with judgment. If you don't  
 follow our counsels, you will repent it. These  
 are the advices we have to give you: do  
 you behave your self as you think fit."

This letter was seal'd with the imperial signet, and deliver'd to Bajazet by envoys who knew how to carry on the intrigues of princes. When they were come to Bajazet, they presented him the letter, acquainting him with the reasons of their coming, and their master's pretensions: but pride had taken too deep root in the breast of the Ottoman, for a letter, or the words of an ambassador, to have any effect upon him: he gave 'em therefore a very haughty answer. " It is a long time, said he,  
 since we have been desirous of carrying on  
 a war with you. God be thank'd, our de-  
 sire has had its effect, and we have taken  
 up a resolution to march against you at the  
 head of a formidable army. If you don't  
 advance against us, we will come to seek  
 you; and pursue you as far as Tauris and  
 Sultaria. We shall then see in whose favor  
 heaven will declare; who of us will be rais'd  
 by victory, and who abas'd by a shameful de-  
 feat."

## C H A P. XV.

*Timur marches to Sebaste, and takes that city.*

THE troops, at their return from Anatolia, gave an account to the emperor's officers of Bajazet's haughty answer. Whereupon Timur, being incens'd against this Turkoman, caus'd his enignt to be display'd, in order to make war on him; and he immediately march'd towards Anatolia. Being arriv'd at Arzonic, he met the Emir Allahzad, who had been sent to Chirza to bring from thence the Mirza Pir Mohamed bound like a criminal: which he accordingly did. Timur order'd that the Mirza shoul'd be interrogated by the council of war; and that after his prolation, he shoul'd be punish'd according to his deserts. Accordingly, after judgment was given, he receiv'd 1200 blows of the bastinado, order'd by the law as call'd Vasa; after which his chains were taken off, and himself set at liberty. In pursuance of the same laws, the Cheik Zade Teyid, and Mabarrat Coje, who were then in irons, were put to death, for having corrupted the Mirza, and caught him nigh.

Then the emperor sent to Soltanija the emperors Serai Malek Canum, Camade, and the wives of the princes his sons, with the Mirza Olouebek, and the other young princes of the imperial household, under the care of the Mirza Omar, and some Emirs. After that he caus'd the great imperial standard to be display'd, and march'd at the head of his army. At his arrivul at Erzorum, he was saluted by Taharten prince of Arzengian. Two days after he decamp'd, and

Book V. march'd beyond Arzenglan, to enter the frontiers of the country of Roum, or Nacolia, which was then subject to the Ottomans.

Sept. 1.  
1400.

The first of Muharram 803, Timur enter'd the country of the Ottomans, and march'd against Sebaste. When he was come before the city, he encamp'd upon an eminence, to view its condition and situation; and the troops encamp'd round about it. He saw the place full of men lifting up their heads to heaven, and singing and rejoicing with musical instruments in their hands; the walls, whose marble foundations were at the bottom of a ditch full of water, lifted up their battlements to the very clouds: and the soldiers in garrison, arm'd with coirasses, rais'd a great cry towards heaven. Then advice was brought that the vanguard of Bajaret's army, commanded by his son Kerichtchi, and Temourtach, one of the greatest Emirs of the Ottoman empire, who had been sent to Sebaste, having learnt the march of Timur's army towards that city, were fled, and return'd into the very heart of Nacolia. The Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah, and others, were order'd to pursue 'em with expedition; which they did, and came up with 'em beyond Cesarea in Cappadocia, where they briskly attack'd 'em, and cut 'em in pieces: after which, they made inroads, pilaging all the places near Cappadocia. They then return'd to the imperial camp before Sebaste, laden with the spoils of the Ottomans.

The city of Sebaste had walls of an extraordinary strength, being built of free-stone from the battlements to the very foundations: and each stone was three cubits long, and one thick. The wall was twenty cubits in height: ten in depth at the foot, and six at the top. There were seven gates, and those which open'd were

of iron. It was built by Aladin Keicobade<sup>1</sup>, Chap. 13. and surrounded on the east, north and south sides, with a great ditch full of water; so that it was impossible to sap the walls on those sides, for they had no sooner sapp'd a cubit than the water enter'd: but it was not difficult to sap on the west side. The place was commanded by Mustafa<sup>2</sup> with four thousand horse, who prepar'd to make a vigorous defence, being furnish'd with all sorts of arms and machines for war. The besiegers rais'd a plat form higher than the town, over-against the gate of Irat, upon which they planted their machines to shoot stones. There were Arades<sup>3</sup>, Mangonies<sup>4</sup>, and Basilict<sup>5</sup>: they likewise prepar'd battering-rams to beat down the walls. On the west-side the sappers kept continually at work: while arrows were discharge'd from both sides, which did a great deal of damage.

After the siege had continu'd eighteen days, the violence of the battering-rams, and the great stones which were shot, began to shake the walls, and make breaches. On the other hand, the sappers had work'd with so much diligence, that the towers were propt only by stakes, which Timur order'd shou'd be set on fire; and so the towers fell. This struck terror into the hearts of the besieg'd, who perceiving that the troops wou'd soon enter the city, and take it by assault, chas'd Mustafa the governor out of it;

A Schubert Lied.

\* The Arabic history of M. Valier Gays, that Solymos, son of the emperor of Bagdad, was governor of Schahr, which is about a mile from

#### 4 Machines to 100 hrs.

• Machines to build floors.

### A kind of burning room.

Book V, and the Clerks, Cadi's, and Doctors, full of  
 ~~~~~~ hopes, came to wait themselves at the emperor's  
 feet, begging quarter and pardon for them and
 the garrison. Their prayers, mingled with the
 cries of the women and children, soften'd Timur's heart; he granted quarter to all the Mus-
 limans of the city, on paying the right of an-
 gelly; but order'd that all the Armenians, and
 other Christians, shou'd be made slaves. And as
 the major part of the cavalry, which had so
 stubbornly defended the place for Bajazet, were
 Armenians, he gave orders that four thousand
 horse shou'd be divided among the Tatars in
 the army, and flung into pits, and then cover'd
 with earth, to serve as an example to those
 who shou'd follow their steps. He afterwards
 caus'd the walls of Sebaste to be raz'd.

During the siege, advice was brought that
 Sultan Ahmed Gelair had fled from Bagdad,
 with Cara Yonset prince of the Turcomans, into
 Natolia. This oblig'd Timur to order some
 squadrons of horse to go in pursuit of 'em; which
 they accordingly did, and overtook their bag-
 gage, which they pillag'd, and brought away
 capture the Sultan's Dilchade, eldest son of
 Cara Yonset, with his wife and daughter. But
 he sav'd himself from our hands; and being come
 safe before Bajazet, our troops return'd to the
 imperial camp.

C H A P. XVI.

Timur marches to Abulestan.

WHILE Timur was employ'd in the siege of Sebalde, some robbers of Abulestan, which is the country of Zulcaderia, were so daring as to come and steal away the horses of our soldiers, who were then busy'd in the siege. For which reason, after the taking of the city, Timur march'd to Abulestan, to revenge himself on these robbers. He then sent the lord Taharten to Arzengian to guard his frontiers, and the Mirza Charoe set out in quality of chief of the scouts, accompany'd by the Emir Solymian Chah, and a select troop, which compos'd the vanguard. The name of the soldiers were register'd ; and they had orders not to abandon the Mirza one moment. They soon arriv'd at Abulestan, from whence, on advice of their march, a great number of Turcomans fled into the mountains and desarts. The Mirza pursu'd 'em so briskly, that he overtook 'em ; these miserable people seeing themselves closely press'd, endeavor'd to save their lives by fighting ; but after a weak defence, they were all routed and slain, as a punishment for their rash enterprizes. The Emirs return'd to the imperial camp laden with spoils, and a great many horses, mules, oxen and sheep. Afterwards Timur sent a courier to Melatia, to summon the inhabitants to submit to him. Mustafa's son, who was governor of it, blinded with ignorance, which is an inseparable quality of the Turcomans, and especially of those of Natolia, imprison'd the messenger,

Book V. senger. Timur on this was incens'd against the governor, and march'd towards that place. On the first advice these cowards had of the march of the imperial standard, Malatia's son fled out of the place with all his party. Timur at his arrival at Malatia, tarry'd in the same day. The Georgians and Armenians were made slaves; but quarter was given to the Musulmans, after they had paid the tribute for an amnesty, which mony was distributed among the soldiers. Timur order'd the Emir Gelen Chah to go, with other Emirs, to make incroacls in the country of Malatia: he harangu'd 'em, and with the most charming eloquence set before 'em the excellency of good warriors above other men; he told 'em that they ought utterly to exterminate the enemy, to take from 'em all means of renewing the war; and he spoke with a great deal of force of the punishment they ought to execute upon those who after pardon us'd hostilitys. After this discourse, he chose out of each Roman some good soldiers, whom he gave to the Emirs to strengthen their body of the army; and then he dismiss'd 'em. According to these orders they departed, and ravag'd the country on all sides, noe slopping in one place: they gave no quarter to any one, and left not one habitation unpillag'd; so that from Malatia to the castle of Kalita¹, they made themselves masters of a great many places, some by fair means, and others by force; and after having constrain'd the natural prince of the country to submit to Timur, they return'd with a great quantity of riches, and join'd the imperial camp at Malatia, the government of which Timur gave to Cara

¹ A castle in the country of Kars, frontier of Syria.

Osmian

Osman a Turcoman. Thus the frontiers of the ^{Chap. 17.} two kingdoms of Natolia and Syria were in a ~~short~~ ^{short} time brought into subjection to Timur, whose fame spread it self thro all parts of the world ; so that there was not one prince who was not struck with terror at the rumor of his conquests.

C H A P. XVII.

The reasons of Timur's carrying his arms into Syria and Mesopotamia.

MAHOMET has told us, that when God resolves to destroy any one, he deprives him of common sense ; conceals from him the methods he shou'd pursue, to protect himself from his destiny ; and permits him to commit impudent actions, which become the causes of his destruction, that the will of God may not fail of an accomplishment. The truth of these words was apparent in the fate of the countrys of Syria ; for the governors of the citys of this kingdom, being blinded with excessive pride, turn'd from the ways of peace and justice, and committed actions as infamous as extraordinary, violating the rights of nations, and trampling upon the laws. Thus in the year 793, Timur, ^{An. Dom.} ^{1382.} having made himself master of Bagdad, and conquer'd all Irae Arabi, sent to the Sultan Barroc in Egypt an ambassador, a doctor of Sare, whose learning, birth and genius distinguish'd him from the chief persons of the empire, as as we have said before *. This Cheik being arriv'd at Rahr ^{Book II.} ^{Chap. 22.} habba,

Book V. habu¹, he was law'd according to custom, that advice might be given the Sultan of Cairo of the arrival of an ambassador on his frontier. Barcoe, being excited by the evil counsels of the Sultan Ahmed Gela² King of Bagdad, order'd this ambassador to be put to death, not reflecting on the consequences of so enormous a crime, nor the intimacy of the action, since to insult an ambassador is to violate the right of nations. What is most surprizing is, that such a king as the Sultan of Egyp³ shou'd be ignorant how Sultan Mehemed, King of Carezon, in the same manner put to death the ambassador and merchants of the great emperor Genghis Can; and what was the tragical end of so black and barbarous an action⁴, which wou'd be too long to recite here. However the destiny, which caus'd the ruin of Syria, blinded the mind of Barcoe, and procur'd the causes of his destruction.

* See his history of Genghis Can, Book II. Ch. 2. Moreover, after the conquest of Azerbijan, and Irie Arabi, Timur being gone to make war in Capchic, and in Russia, Muscovy, Circassia, and the northern countries, there was a battle between Asilmich Contchin, governor of Armenia for Timur, and Cara Youlef, prince of the Turcomans, in which Asilmich was made prisoner. Cara Youlef loaded him with chains, and sent him to Sultan Barcoe at Cairo, who without any reflection upon the matter, continu'd his hostility against Timur, and confin'd Asilmich in a very close prison.

Timur being on the frontiers of Malaria, sent an ambassador with the following letter to Far-rudge son of Barcoe, who succeeded his father in the throne of Egyp⁵ and Syria.

¹ A town upon the Euphrates, otherwise call'd Habab. Mr. Lee Ben Tabor, frontier of Syria, long. 75. lat. 34.

² The

" The Sultan your father hath committed several criminal and odious actions against us; and among the rest, the murder of our ambassadores, without the least shadow of a cause, and the imprisement of Atilmich, one of our officers, whom he hath seiz'd instead of sending him back to us. As your father hath surrendered up his life to God, which he had only upon trust, the punishment of his crimes must be brought before the tribunal of the general judgment; but as for your part, it is necessary you shou'd have regard to the preservation of your self and your subjects, and to that effect you ought forthwith to send back Atilmich, lest, the effects of your wrath and vengeance, falling upon the people of Syria, and even of Egypt, our furious soldiers make a cruel slaughter of their persons, and burn and pillage their effects. If you are so hard born as to reject our counsel, you'll be the cause of the extirpation of the muselman blood, and the total loss of your kingdom."

The ambassadors, at their arrival at Aleppo, were seiz'd according to custom, that advice might be given the Sultan of their arrival. Faridg, to imitate his father's example, sent messengers to bind the ambassadors, and put 'em in prison.

It is not to be wonder'd at, that a plebeian shou'd commit actions of cowardice; what then may we expect from a Circassian slave? Harroc had been sold several times, and when his power increased thro the kindness of his governor, who was also a Mameluke slave, he traiterously slew his benefactor, and usurp'd the kingdom: and as there had never been any king of his race, so he had not in him the least apperance of royalty. That was Harroc; and his

Book V. his son Farrudge was the crooked branch of an
 ~~~~~ evil stock. He mounted his father's throne, the  
 but a child, no one having taught him how  
 he ought to live: he had neither suffer'd heat  
 nor cold; and was ignorant of policy and the  
 art of war. In short, the father was of an ill  
 character, and the son without merit.

Timur being inform'd of Farrudge's baseness, was transported with anger; and the fire of vengeance, which had lain lurking in his heart since the crimes committed by Barac, did so far exasperate him, that he immediately resolv'd to enter the Sultan's kingdom, and destroy every thing with fire and sword: which resolution he the more easily took up, in that Bajazet, with all his pride and menaces, had not dar'd to appear in the field of battle: and this proud Ottoman quietly saw our army besiege, take, ruin and pillage Sobistic and Malatia, and all the citys and towns of his kingdom, as far as Kabilz, without making the least defence. But these are all the hidden decrees of providence.

---

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Timur marches into the kingdoms of Syria  
 and Egypt.*

**T**HE heroes who are destin'd to execute great affairs, are also endu'd with a discerning spirit, which makes those enterprizes appear easy to 'em; and with resolution to carry 'em on with all the strength and power they are posses'd of: so that they easily compass those designs, which every one else accounts impossible. In effect, the Sultan of Egypt and Syria

Syria having added to his father's estates, by Chap. 18.  
the arresting and Imprisoning of Timur's ambas-  
sadors; on advice of it, the wrath of our em-  
peror was kindled, so that he resolv'd forthwith  
to chuse him for his fault: and tho' the execu-  
tion of this project appear'd impossible to the eyes  
of all politicians, or at least exceeding dangerous  
and difficult; yet the boundless zeal of Timur,  
made this great and perilous enterprize appear  
easy to him. The Emirs and principal lords of  
the state on their knees remonstrated to him, that  
it being but a short time since the troops return'd  
from the long campaign in India, they had not  
repose'd themselves, before they march'd to the  
Georgian war, where they had been extreme-  
ly fatigu'd, after re-iterated marchs in the  
mountains and rocks, and the conquest of the  
towns of that country: that since then they had  
march'd to Naxos, and conquer'd Schisse, and  
all the citys and town between that and Aleppo,  
where they had perform'd actions of the greatest  
valor: that therefore at present the expedition into  
Syria and Egypt appear'd very toilsome and diffi-  
cult, as well in that the country was full of towns  
and fortresses, with lofty walls and impregnable  
castles, as in that the army of the Egyptians was very  
numerous, good warriors, and provided with  
arms and every thing necessary to a vigorous re-  
sistance: for which reasons they besought his  
majest. to have the goodness to disband the troops,  
and send back the soldiers into their own coun-  
trys, to repose themselves for some time; and  
that afterwards fresh preparations might be made  
suitable to the greatness of this undertaking. Ti-  
mur answer'd them, that victory was a gift which  
God liberally bestows on the princes whom he  
loves: that the great number of soldiers and  
arms had nothing to do with victory, which he

Book V. had often prov'd: he put 'em in mind of the conquests he had gain'd with 'em, and the difficult enterprizes they had gone thro, tho' they had believ'd 'em impossible: that it was requisite they shou'd have the greatest ambition; and then he wou'd answer for the success, provided they trusted in God. The Emirs perceiving the emperor firm in his resolution, loaded him with praises and applause, resolving to follow him, and thinking only of the expedition into Syria, and the means of making themselves masters of that kingdom.

Then Timur put his army in order; and causing the brass-drum to be beat, which is a sign of his departure, all the soldiers began their march, every one in his proper post; and they took their road towards Syria.

## C H A P. XIX.

### *The taking of the castles of Belusna and Antapsa.*

TI M U R order'd the Mirza Charox to depart with several great Emirs, as chief of the scouts. Being arriv'd at Belusna<sup>1</sup>, they encamp'd there, where they were soon join'd by Timur with the whole army, who encamp'd on an eminence near the castle, to view the situation of the place, which is in a defile where several torrents flow: its walls were high and strong, being built on the ridge of a steep mountain. The troops soon made themselves masters of the lower town, which they entirely ravag'd. The

<sup>1</sup> A fortress of Syria, between Aleppo and Malatia.

governor

governor of the castle for the Syrians was nam'd Chaper, Mocbel, who relying upon the strength of the ~~castle~~ castle, put himself in a posture of defence. While Timur was examining the condition of the place, the besieg'd discharg'd a great stone from their machines against the emperor's person, which fell upon the ground near his tent, and roll'd into the very tent. This stirr'd up Timur's wrath, who immediately order'd the siege to be form'd, and thar'd the walls among the Tatars of the army, round which they erected twenty machines, and one of 'em upon the very spot where the stone fell. The first stone cast from this machine struck that of the besieg'd, and broke it to pieces, which was reckon'd as a good omen. Then the Mirza Roullem arriv'd from Chiraz with the Persian army, and join'd the imperial camp. The siege was continu'd, and the lappers follow'd their work close, while the Emirs and other brave men attack'd the place on all sides, and soon made breaches in several parts of the walls, propping the foundations with stakes. Mocbel seeing himself reduce'd thus low, was seiz'd with fear, and resolv'd to surrender: he sent messengers several times to the emperor, to acquaint him with his weakness and want of power; and alledg'd as an excuse for no coming before him, the dread he had of his imperial majesty; beseeching Timur to grant him quarter, which cou'd not in the least prejudice him or his officers. Timur made answer, that he wou'd grant him his liberty, but not till after the taking of the place; because at this castle was esteem'd impregnable, if the army shou'd tris the siege, those who had but little insight into things, would imagine that our soldiers were not able to take it by force; and that a conqueror should not be thought to have spur'd his enemy.

Book V.      The 7th of Seler 803, they were order'd to  
 Date 2.      set fire to the breaches, and so the towers began  
 1546.      to fall: which the besieg'd seeing, they were  
                   struck with fear, and Mochel lost all hopes. He  
                   left the Castle, the Breams and the Clerks, with  
                   all the pearls and curiosities he had, as a present  
                   to Timur. They address'd themselves to the Maza  
                   Charr, whom they befoight to be their advo-  
                   cate and protector. These doctors let the em-  
                   peror know that Mochel was the master of his  
                   majority's servants, that he sincerely repented of his  
                   fault, humbly demanded pardon for it, and hop'd  
                   that the emperor wou'd not refuse him the favor  
                   of sparing his life. Timur, at Charr's inter-  
                   cection, pardon'd not only Mochel, but even  
                   all the garrison: and the citizens contumeliously  
                   return'd back, praising the emperor, and making  
                   vows for the prince Charr. As soon as this  
                   good news was brought to the city, new gold  
                   and silver money was coin'd, and friday prayers  
                   read in the name of the invincible Timur.

After this, the army decamp'd and march'd  
 towards Antapa<sup>1</sup>. The walls of this city were  
 exceeding strong, being built of large stone,  
 and surrounded with a ditch thirty cubits deep,  
 and near seventy broad, with a draw-bridge:  
 the counter-scarp, which is of stone, has also a  
 cover'd way, broad enough for 2 men to pass  
 on horseback: which post was assign'd the archers.  
 The Tartar army on their arrival at this place,

<sup>1</sup> A town of Syria near Aleppo.

A Note taken from Atal Chak.

Timur left Charr-Begum without attacking it, which he sh'd  
 not do, because this place was very strong, and Nasir Khan  
 had, son of Mousa, son of Sairam, made four攻城機  
 (ladders) upon Timur's army, and very much inclined him.

found the principal persons gone out<sup>1</sup>, and only a few poor citizens left, who had shut the gates upon 'em: but the city was full of powder and ammunition. When Timur came before the place, the gates were open'd, and the keys brought out to him: he fix'd a governor over it, and join'd it to his dominions.

## C H A P. XX.

*The siege and taking of the city of Aleppo.*

M A H O M E T tells us, that the sole terror of his name made his conquests extend a month's journey: and we may with reason say, that Timur had the honor to resemble him in that, since the terror of his name was so great, that upon advent of the approach of his troops<sup>2</sup>, kings and princes were so terrify'd, that they abandon'd their dominions; fear blinded their eyes, and darken'd their understanding, so that all their actions tended to their destruction.

While the army was in the quarters of Belchena and Antaps, Temeurzach, <sup>3</sup> governor of Aleppo for the Sultan of Egypt, dispatch'd a con-

<sup>1</sup> The Arabian of M. Vauclusier, that the governor of Aleppo, name'd Aspermar, ready to defend himself; and being conquer'd and wounded, he fled to Aleppo, but was not pursu'd thither.

<sup>2</sup> A city of Syria in the province of Caesarea, it is the ancient Beras, long. 72. 24. lat. 34. 35.

<sup>3</sup> The Arabian says, that according to the computation of Caracum, Timur's conqueror, his army consist'd of eight hundred thousand men.

<sup>4</sup> Arab Orah says, that Temeurzach had agreed with Timur to betray the Sultan of Egypt.

Book V. <sup>letter</sup> to Grand-Cairo to give advice of it to his master. Wherupon the Sultan sent orders to the troops of all the towns and countries of Syria, to march towards Aleppo, with all the arms and ammunition necessary for a vigorous defence. According to these orders, Chabout<sup>1</sup>, chief of the Emirs of Damascon, march'd to Aleppo at the head of a great army. The governors and generals of Hierase<sup>2</sup>, Hama, Antioch, Tripoli, Napoles-Samaria, Baibec, Causan, Gaza, Ramla or Rama, Jersusalem, Esreh, Calat-Ercoum, and all the other countries and lordships of the kingdoms of Syria, came to the same place, well equip'd and arm'd cap-a-pie: and in a short time there were got together a very numerous army.

Temomtach, governor of Aleppo, who was esteem'd one of the most considerable lords, assembled the chiefs of all those troops, and made the following speech to 'em, in order to know their opinions of the matter: " We ought not, " said he, to regard this affair which is " coming upon us as a slight thing; and it is " requisite we shou'd reflect seriously upon it be- " fore it happens. The prince who is this day " come against us, is exceeding powerful: he " and his officers have perform'd such extraor- " dinary actions, as are no where recorded in " antiquity. Wheresover he hath march'd, he " hath always conquer'd the towns and fortres- " ses: and who ever attempted to relish him, " always repented in the end, and suffer'd the

<sup>1</sup> M. Vautier calleth him my lord Selen.

<sup>2</sup> Principal city of Syria.

<sup>3</sup> The historian tells us, that Timur sent an ambassador or herald to Aleppo, to summon the inhabitants to surrender; and that this herald was immediately put to death by Chabout's <sup>order</sup>.

most rigorous chastisement. Consider, sir, Cap. 25. how in a very short time he has reduc'd many vast and flourishing empires; as those of Garzerem, Turkestan, Corallana, Zabulestan, and India, as far as the great river of Ganger; the kingdom of Tabaristan, the two Iracs, Persia, Coubellan, Georgia, Azoubijana, and Diarbekir, with all their dependences, which he has wrested out of the hands of the most powerful Sultans, and the most illustrious emperors of the universe. He has establish'd himself in those places with such an absolute authority, that one of his lieutenants, with a few officers, maintains a whole city under his obedience; so that in the vast extent of the countries of Iran and T'ouran, there is not a soul who dares act the least thing against his orders. It seems as if the great rise of this prince was owing to the peculiar protection of Heaven; if so, we ought not to tempt God. My advice therefore, in this conjuncture, is to treat with him by the ways of submission and obedience; to coin our money, and to say the public prayers in his name; and to make use of the Cherifs, Imams, and doulars, as our mediators with him; seeing there are none but men vot'd in the law, and pious persons, who have any access to him, or whom he in the least regards. At the same time we'll send him presents and jewels, the most suitable to his grandeur; that we may endeavour to keep him from coming nearer us, and by that means preserve the repose of the city, and perhaps of the whole kingdom. He is a prince favor'd by fortune, powerful, active, glorious and ambitious: his wrath burns and coolneses a thousand times fiercer than fire; and if it is kindled, the sea it self won't be able to

Book V. " quench it. Therefore now conclude upon  
 something ; chuse either peace or war, quiet  
 or misery."

Temourzachi having finish'd his speech, those  
 who had most experience applauded his senti-  
 ments, and agreed that it was the best method  
 they cou'd take : but the majority, and espe-  
 cially Chadoan governor of Damascus, were of  
 a contrary opinion. Pride and presumption  
 were rooted in their hearts, and ignorance had  
 so stupify'd 'em, that they gave no heed to  
 what Temourzachi had said : and were so far  
 from applauding him, that they made use of some  
 hasty expellions, and tax'd him with cowar-  
 dice, laying, that he who is afraid, is already  
 frustrated of his desires. " What comparison,  
 " say they, is there between this kingdom and all  
 " those you have mention'd ? Their towns were  
 " built only of mud and brick : but ours are  
 " all of solid stone, cut out of the almost im-  
 " penetrable rock ; they are fill'd with good  
 " garrisons, and furnish'd with plenty of ammu-  
 " nitions of war and victuals ; so that it wou'd  
 " require a whole year's siege to force a single one.  
 " Why therefore has fear got possestion of your  
 " hearts ? Is it the great number of their cavalry  
 " and infantry, or of their arms and equipages,  
 " which terrify's you ? Only view ours, and  
 " you'll see the difference : our bows are of Da-  
 " maske, our swords of Egypt, our lances of  
 " Arabia, and our bucklers of Aleppo. In the  
 " registers of this kingdom are Sixty thousand  
 " villages ; out of each of which taking but a  
 " few brave men, we shall complete an army,  
 " which our vast plains won't be able to hold.  
 " The houses and walls of these Tartars are on-  
 " ly of cords and canvas ; while we live in good  
 " fortresses, which are of hewn stone from the bar-  
 " " Beacons

“ elements to the very foundation.” Thus fate, Chap. 20.  
having resolv'd upon the destruction of these unfortunate Syrians, inspir'd sentiments of pride into 'em: and these oblique people persist'd in their error, notwithstanding what Temourtach, and other men of sense, cou'd say to divert 'em from the evil steps they had resolv'd to take; who represent'd to 'em that the way of peace was always the most secure, considering the inconstancy of fortune, and the small hopes they cou'd reasonably expect of gaining the advantage over their powerful enemy. The others on the contrary said, they need only have courage and resolution; which if they had not, all sorts of disorders and losses wou'd happen among 'em. After a great struggle on both sides, the latter carry'd it by a plurality of voices; and it was resolv'd and concluded, that no one shou'd go out of the city, but that they shou'd fortify it with intrenchments, and with arrows and stones hinder the enemy from approaching the walls.

Timur departed from Antaps with joy, and made two days journey of six or seven leagues each: he afterwards gave orders that they shou'd march but half a league a day, and at each encampment dig a trench round the army, and make a kind of camp: with their bucklers: so that in a whole week they march'd but one day's journey, and that with extraordinary precautions. The Syrians, ignorant of the art of war, attributed the slowness of their march to fear, believing the Tartars misjudg'd their own strength; at which they became haughty and insolent: for abandoning their first resolution of not going out of the city, and which indeed was the least dangerous, they rang'd themselves in order of battle, and pitch'd their tents in the open plains.

Book V.  
Nov. 8.  
1400.

The 9th of Rabihelr 803, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the army of Timur arriv'd in the neighbourhood of Aleppo; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein, with some great officers, met the enemy's scouts: he fell upon 'em, tho' superior to him in number, and at the first onset unhors'd a cavalier, whom he collar'd, and carry'd prisoner out of the field of battel. His officers also perform'd some glorious actions, and took two prisoners; the rest of the Syrian army fled into the city.

The same day the Mirza Aboubecre advanc'd with fifty men; and a great number of the enemy made a sally to repulse him. After a sharp skirmish, the two party's return'd to their several camps. The next day some brave Tartars advanc'd to skirmish; and having shewn themselves to the enemy, not one dar'd to attack 'em. The third day at sun-rising, Timur order'd the whole army to take horse, and with ensigns display'd, and at the sound of drums and kettle-drums, to march towards the enemy's camp. Every one having on a coat of mail, a cuirass, and a helmet, they advanc'd in order of battel. The right wing was commanded by the Mirzae Mirza Chah and Charoe, accompany'd by several great Emirs, as Soliman Chah and others: and the vanguard of this wing was led by the Mirza Aboubecre. The Sultan Mahmoud, whose lieutenant was the Emir Gehan Chah, had the command of the left wing; and his vanguard was brought up by the Sultan Hussein. The main body was commanded by Timur himself, who had before him a rank of bully elephants, which had been taken in India, equip'd and expension'd in the most magnificent manner. They serv'd as a rampart to this body of the army; for the towers on their backs were fill'd with archers and

and flingers of wild-fire : and these animals had Chap. 22  
drawn in their snouts like serpents. When the ~~army~~  
army was rang'd in order of battel, a Roman  
of the best horde of the army was order'd to post  
themselves on an eminence on the right side  
of the field of battel, and to keep their ground  
there, when the Syrians shou'd be put to the  
route, and fly.

The Syrian army was likewise rang'd in or-  
der : it was compos'd of a right and left wing,  
and a main-body ; and adorne'd with its ensigas  
display'd. The kettle-drums and trumpets were  
the signal to begin, and both partys made the  
great cry of Allah Ecber <sup>\* God is</sup>. The battel began <sup>the great</sup>  
by the skirmishers, who rush'd furiously out of  
their squadrons into the midst of the enemy,  
and who after some brave action, as either the  
daughter of some noted person, or the taking a  
prisoner from the midst of the opposite battallion,  
return'd glorious to their post. Our right wing  
immediately fell upon the enemy's left with so  
much vigor, that it was routed, thro' the valor  
of the Mirza Aboubeckr, who enter'd the field  
of battel like a lion, and forc'd many of the en-  
emy to fling away their arms, and abandon their  
ensigas, while others were slain, and the ground  
soon cover'd with helmets, head-pieces, and  
sabres, mix'd promiscuously among the dead car-  
casses. Our left wing likewise defeated the Sy-  
rian right, and entirely dispers'd 'em, some  
crying out for quarter, and others saving them-  
selves by flight. Our main-body did not in the  
least yield to the other : and the elephants enter'd  
into the midst, and with their trunks rais'd some  
up into the air, and trampled others under their  
feet, no one being able to stop them.

Chadoun and Temourtach having seen the  
strange manner of our soldiers fighting, quitted  
their

Book V. their former screeness : they trembled at the sight of the dreadful slaughter which was made in so short a time ; and seeing no other remedy, they fled, and enter'd the city by the gate of Mancousa. The soldiers, perceiving their general's measures, likewise fled and dispers'd themselves : the major part took the road of Damascus, and were pursu'd by our men, who slew a great number, taking their arms and horses from em ; so that out of this prodigious number of Syrians there escap'd but one horseman, who fled to Damascus to carry the news of the defest.

After the tour of this army, part of 'em enter'd the city. The disorder was so great in the chief street of Aleppo, and the gates so crowded, that one cou'd hardly pass. Here was the greatest slaughter ever mention'd : for to avoid the fury of the sword, they flung themselves upon one another into the ditches, which were soon fill'd with men and horses. On the other hand, one man with a single pile often ran three or four of the enemy thro at a time, in the throng at the gate ; so that the dead bodys were pil'd upon onb another to the very plinth of the walls ; and at length a paillago was made over the ditch upon those bodys, level with the draw-bridge. There one might see the horses and their riders mix'd promiscuously together, and cover'd with blood and dirt ; some pierc'd with arrows, and others with their brains dash'd out ; one with a coat of mail, his head bending beneath the blow of a war-club ; another falling without his head, with his sword fast clasp'd in hand.

During this horrible slaughter, a body of the army was sent to pillage the Syrians camp, wherein they found the governor's pavilion, with his tents, furniture, arms, and several beautiful horses

horses richly harness'd. Each of the soldiers took Chap. 11.  
his share of the spoils, of which there were ~~much~~  
great abundance. At length all the army  
march'd with so much vigor to the general as-  
sault, that they enter'd the city the same day,  
which was the 15th of Rabielevel 803. Timur Nov. 11.  
permitted 'em to pillage the city of Aleppo 1400  
and they spar'd neither the markets nor any  
of the houses: they carry'd away the women  
and children, the horses, mules, and all the  
cattle: besides a prodigious quantity of gold  
and silver, arms, curious furniture, precious  
stones, pearls, vessels of gold, the women's rich  
habits and ornaments. All these were taken by  
the soldiers, who render'd no account of 'em to  
any one.

---

## C H A P. XXI.

*The castle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.*

CHADOUN and Temoïstach, not im-  
gining themselves secure in the city, en-  
ter'd the castle; which was a fortress upon the  
ridge of a high steep rock <sup>1</sup>; surrounded with  
a ditch thirty cubits wide, and so deep  
that there is a sufficient quantity of water  
to carry a boat <sup>2</sup>. From the surface of the  
water to the bottom of the walls of the castle,  
which is the shelving of the mountain, is about

<sup>1</sup> The castle of Aleppo is not built on a rock, but on a  
mountain of earth cover'd with trees.

<sup>2</sup> The author seems not to have seen the ditch any more than  
the castle; for if the ditch was full of water, a vessel might  
fall in it.

Book V. a hundred cubits, and it is so smooth and steep, that 'tis impossible to ascend it on foot, because this shelving is cover'd with steep-stone and flat polish'd bricks. The strength of this place render'd these two governors insolent; they undertook to make a vigorous defence, resolving to die rather than surrender: they made great crys in token of their resolution; and ran upon the walls and towers, to give orders to the garrison. They caus'd the great and little kettle-drums to be beat, and in good earnest began to insult the besiegers: they cast a great quantity of wild-fire, and pots fill'd with sulphur, which in their effects resembled a thunder-bolt; as likewise stones and arrows: by which they let us know that they were in a condition to defend themselves.

Timur having enter'd the city as a conqueror, encamp'd over-against the castle, ordering his troops to range themselves round about the ditch: for the out-parts consisted only of a single key unguarded: then there were nothing to be seen but showers of arrows, which the besiegers incessantly discharg'd with so much vigor, that none of the besieg'd dur'd to get upon the walls. In the mean while the sappers went down into the ditch, and savor'd by the archers, cross'd the water upon floats; and being come to the other side, they began to work upon the bottom of the mountain, and to shake the stones of the walls: but the besieg'd having perceiv'd their design, five of their bravest men went out by the great gate, and being resolv'd either to lose their lives or succeed in the design, they ty'd a cord to their waists, the end of which others held from the top of the walls, that they might descend and get up again, notwithstanding the steepness of the shelving, without fear

of falling. These fire men accordingly went Chapter down, and ran sword in hand upon the ladders; but the Tartars, who had orders to back the sappers, sally'd out of their tents, and flew 'em with their arrows. The besieg'd on this were afraid, and drew up again the five dead bodys with the cords. From that time no one dur'd so much as look thro' the loop-holes of the walls, so far were they from making sallys. Then Timur, whose advantages were consider'd rather as the scourge of God, than as an effect of human power, sent by an ambassador the following letter to the besieg'd, who now began to conclude that obstinately resisting him wou'd in the end produce repentance: "The Almighty having reduc'd under my command the greatest part of the kingdoms of Asia, my army's can't be stop'd either by walls or fortresses: the great number of soldiers or arms we are not able to opposo the just chales of my wrath, nor ward off the deadly blows of my vengeance. I believe the best way you can now take, is to have pity on your own lives; otherwise you'll be the murderers of your selves, your wives and children, and must answer for the crime of having shed their blood."

The besieg'd seeing no other refuge, were constrain'd to give way to force. Chaldoun and Temourtach took the keys of the castle, treasury, and magazines; and being accompany'd by the Cherif, Cadis, Imam, and nobles of the country, open'd the gate, and in an humble manner came to cast themselves at Timur's feet. Chaldoun, Temourtach, and other chiefs, with a thousand soldiers, were shut'd among the Tomans, and put in irons. Soldiers were sent to the castle, who brake down the battlements

Book V. of the wall. Timur sent in embassy to Grand-Cairo, to the son of Barcoe, Eben Bougai Da-vandar, when they had left'd in the castle, with advise that he had laid Chaboun and Temour-tach in irons, by way of reprisal for Atilmish, and that he woud not set 'em at liberty till he shou'd come back to him; that he must send Atilmish immediately, if he was willing to preserve the life and libertys of these two governesses, and of all the other slaves he had detain'd. Timur m'd the place where Eben Bougai was to meet him at his return: then he went to the castle of Aleppo, to take the direction of a very beautiful prospect, and also to view the situation of the city and country; and he staid there two days. He order'd the Emir Celien Chah to guard the gate of the castle and the riches within it, which consisted of the treasures which several kings had stash'd there, and an infinite number of jewels and furniture which the citizens had carry'd into it to preserve 'em from pillage. The whole amounted to innumerable sumes, part of which he distributed among the Emirs and soldiers. He afterwards left the baggage and cumbersome things belonging to the army, with his treasure, in the castle of Aleppo: and he m'd eight considerable Emirs for governors of this strong place, and as guardians of the treasures he left there. Then, after fifteen days residence at Aleppo, he began his march, to continue his conquests in the rest of Syria.

CHAP.

\* A note extract out of the history of Timur-Bec by Achi Celien Chah the author.

During the fifteen days that Timur staid in Aleppo, he order'd his doctors to come before him, so that he 'em might have quilibrium, and from thence gain an opportunity to put 'em to death. He sent to Ahmed Ben Arab Chah (author of the

Achi Celien

CHAP. XXII.

*The taking of the town and castle of Emessa  
and Hama.*

WHEN Timur lay encamp'd without the city of Aleppo, he sent the Mizzas Pir Mehemed and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Solymann Chah, Serindjic, and others, as scouts, towards Hama<sup>1</sup>. These lords soon made themselves masters of the lower town; but they cou'd not take the castle, because it was exceeding

Arabian history of M. Vairon: There have lonly been three sorts of our men, and sorts of years; which of the two are muryers? The question, said Arab Chah, was formerly proper'd to Mahomet by an Arabian prophet; and 't'll remain the same answer as he did. Timur demanded what answer he gave. The prophet, answer'd Arab Chah, said to Mahomet, Lord, apostle of God, some fight thro' paine, others thro' value, others thro' a zeal for religion; who is the muryer? He who fights for religion, answer'd Mahomet, and for the honor and shewbrag of the word of God. Very well, says Timur, you cou'd not have given a better answer; and then he refred to tell all his visitors, I have one foot, says he, in the grave, but yet I live employ'd my life to a good purpose; for I have conquer'd, &c. Arab Chah then said, In gratitude for the favor you have receiv'd from heaven, you have made men of learning. I never put any one to death, answer'd Timur, purposely; you see the cause of your own death: but then God I grant you quarter. Then every one had liberty of speaking, and endeavor'd to inform self, at in the college.

When Timur, says the Arabier, design'd him to any one, he did it without delay; but when good, he remov'd the execration of it to another.

Then one of several heads to erect a trophy.

<sup>1</sup> A town of Syria, of which the geographer Abulfeda makes it 13000 fms. long, 70. 42. lat. 33.

Book V. strong. After the affairs of Aleppo was finished, Timur's satisfaction, he went to Hama, and in his way took three or four castles. At the arrival of the great imperial standard before Hama, those who were in the castle, seeing this innumerable multitude of troops from the top of their walls, imagin'd it wou'd be best for 'em to go out immediately with what presents they had, to offer the keys of the place, and submit to Timur. They accordingly did so, and addressing themselves to the Mirzas who were come before as scouts, they besought 'em to intercede and obtain quarter for 'em. The Mirzas promis'd 'em this favor, and quarter was granted 'em; but their spoils were given to those scouts. Timur staid twenty days at Hama, for the refreshment of his troops and horses; during which time he had apartments built for himself, the Mirzas, and principal Emirs of his court, and a magnificent Divan-Cave, where the councils of the state were held: so that this place in less than two or three weeks became a second city.

In the mean while the Emirs made another attempt, to persuade the emperor to stay at this place, representing, that for two years past the troops had been either on the march, or employ'd in a battel, that the enemy had a great number of cavalry, whose horses were fresh and not fatigued, and being in their own country, had vast advantages over us, and that if his majesty approv'd of it, they wou'd go and repose themselves on the sea-shore at Tripoli in Syria, where they wou'd take up their winter-quarters; so that the horses might have some rest after their fatigues, and at the beginning of the spring they might march with vigor to extirpate the enemy. Timur wou'd not hearken to their

their reasons, tho' they were plausible; but an-  
sw'rd, that they ought to make dispatch, that  
the enemy might have no time to recover them-  
selves. Whereupon he order'd 'em to take horse,  
and march towards Emessa<sup>1</sup>. One of our  
great Emirs went thither first as a scout; and  
had the good nature to advise the inhabitants,  
telling 'em that their resistance wou'd serve  
only to ruin 'em, and it wou'd be pity so many  
should be destroy'd; that it they wou'd go meet  
the emperor, and submit to him, he wou'd an-  
swer for the success, and their lives and even  
their effects shou'd be spar'd. Thule-walls,  
which on one hand caus'd fear, and on the o-  
ther hope, in the people of Emessa, made an  
impression upon 'em; so that the principal men  
of the city took up a resolution to obey Timur;  
they came out loaded with presents, and ran to  
meet him; they cast themselves at his feet,  
kissing the earth, which they cover'd with gold  
and precious stones: they presented him with the  
keys of the town, upon which Timur had the  
goodness to prohibit any one's insulting 'em  
either in their persons or goods. He gave 'em  
for their governor Ali Erber, whom he order'd  
to have a singular regard to 'em, and to be  
their protector on all occasions.

---

\* Emessa or Homs, a town of Syria near Hama.

## C H A P. XXIII.

*Conquest of the town of Balbec.*

TIMUR decamp'd from Emessa; and continuing his road towards Balbec, he march'd a day's journey, and encamp'd near a salt-pit, from whence he sent out a body of the army to make inroads towards Seul and Barn, and to pillage the country along the shore of the Mediterranean. When the Imperial standard was arriv'd at Balbec, all the army admir'd the beauty of the walls of this town: the stones are of a prodigious size, and there is one at the corner of the castle, which looks towards the gardens, twenty-eight cubits long, sixteen broad, and seven high. This town is very famous, as well for the beauty of the walls, as for the height of its buildings; and it's believ'd to have been built by Solomon's order, by demons and genii, over whom he had an absolute command. Notwithstanding these advantages, it was reduc'd by our troops as soon as ever they appear'd before it. There were in it so great a quantity of fruits, pulse, and goods, that our soldiers were furnish'd with all manner of necessaries for a long time. Then Timur order'd the Emirs Cheik Nourreddin, Chamelik, Sereindjic, and others, to advance towards Damascus at the head of thirty thousand horse.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Timur marches to Damasus, capital of Syria.*

THEY laid not long at Balbec, because it was situated near a mountain, which render'd the air exceeding cold; and it being the beginning of winter, there fell abundance of snow and rain.

The 3d of Jumazulevel, the sun being in the sixth degree of Capricorn, Timur departed from Balbec; and after having march'd a day's journey, he halted to visit the tomb of the prophet Noah, whose blessings having besought, he set out for the conquest of Damasus. The body of the army, which had been sent out to make incursions towards Sidn and Barut, return'd, after having ravag'd all the maritim country of Syria; and join'd the imperial camp, loaded with the spoils of that country. As Syria was at that time under the dominion of the Sultans of Egypt, the Syrians were continually sending couriers, to carry the news of our army's march, to Farudgo son of Barac, their king, whom they continu'd to press so assiduously to come to oppose Timur, that at their persuasion he rais'd an army, which he equip'd with great expence and magnificence, and above all, the cavalry, which was the best in the world. In this condition he took the road to Damasus; which he was no sooner enter'd, than he us'd all his precautions to examine the fortifications, to post guards and sentinels every where, to put the walls in good order, and to augment the enclosures as well of the city as of the castle.

Jan. 1.  
1400.

Book III. In fine, he took all needful precautions: and using policy with strength, he sent to Timur, in quality of ambassador, an eloquent and perfect villain, who the better to cover his intentions took the habit of a poor religious. He order'd him for his companions two young assassins, to each of whom he gave a poison'd dagger, with orders to use their endeavours to murder Timur during the audience of the ambassador. At Timur's arrival near Damascus, these villains join'd the court, and came to the foot of the imperial throne to pay their compliments: they had several times the honor to approach his majesty, and very favorable opportunitys to execute their design: but the Almighty, who was always Timur's guardian and protector, wou'd not suffer 'em ever to come to perdition. Coja Masaoud Semrani, one of the great secretarys of the council, imagin'd by the proceeding of these rash fellows that they had some evil intention: wherefore he communicated his thoughts to some, who related 'em to the emperor, who order'd 'em to be search'd, and they found in their boots poison'd daggers. The chief of the villains perceiving himself and his companions discover'd, declar'd the truth, and the resolution they had taken to assassinate Timur. The emperor return'd thanks to his sovereign protector: and said, " It is not the maxim of king to murder ambassadors; yet it wou'd be a crime to suffer this rascal, or his comrades, to live, who tho cloath'd in the habit of a religious, is a member of corruption and perfidy." Then he order'd, that according to the passage which tells us that treason falls upon the head of the traitor, he shou'd be slain with the same dagger with which he wou'd have committed

mitted this abominable action, and his infamous carcass to be burnt for an example to others. His two allies had their nose and ears cut off; but were not put to death, because Timur wou'd send 'em back with a letter to the Sultan of Egypt.

Timur took horse, and having fix'd his troops in good order, march'd towards Damascs, near which he encamp'd at the foot of a hill near Cobbel Seia: a trench was dug for precaution round the army, and fortify'd with bucklers and pallisades. Then Timur ascended the hill to examine the situation of Damascs and its out-parts. He sent scouts to skirmish with the enemy, and to keep 'em in play: the Emirs Scindig, Sainte Maure, and others, advanc'd, and were back'd by the Seid Cojs of the right wing, and the Mirza Rouslem of the left, at the noise of kettle-drums, hautboys and fiddles, mix'd with the soldiers cry. By next morning they attack'd the enemy's scouts, whom they put to flight, after having slain several, and taken others prisoners. Then Timur, to revenge himself for the scandalous action of the Sultan of Egypt, order'd Chidoun and the other prisoners brought from Aleppo, to be put to death.

The same night there happen'd an affaire as ridiculous as extraordinary. The Mirza Sultan Husein, after a debauch, was excited by some sedition Perians to revolt against the emperor his grandfather; and he accordingly went to the city of Damascs, and listed himself into the Syrian service: which adventure gave the Sarvant a great deal of satisfaction, imagining it wou'd produce to 'em considerable advantages. They conducted the prince into the city with a great

Book V. deal of pomp and ceremony". Farrudge, imagining the union with this prince wou'd deliver him from all troubles, and cause a calm after the storm was over, treated him with all possible respect. The officers of this Mirza, Adouc, and Hussein son of Barat Coja, gave advice of what had pass'd to the Emir Chamelik, who inform'd the emperor thereof. At break of day they decamp'd, and after a league's march towards the south-side of Damascus, which looks upon the country of Canaan, Egypt, and the desert of Arabia, they encamp'd again, and built a wall about the height of a man round the camp, and dug a trench round the wall. The scours went out to ravage the country in the neighborhood of Damascus: and Timur plac'd both infantry and cavalry round the walls of the camp to guard them in the night.

Two days after Timur sent Padi Chuh Bagum ambassador to the Sultan of Egypt, with the following letter. " You are not ignorant of the effects which circumfpection and exactness produce: and know that emulation and jealousy, mix'd with ambition, are the motives which oblige conquerors to raise armys, undertake the most dangerous wars, and make themselves masters of countries and kingdoms: and that by this means they preserve the honor of their crown, and acquire eternal fame. All this great noise of the world is not so much to heap up riches, as to acquire honor; for half a loaf every day is sufficient for

\* The author remarks, that the Mirza Sulem Hussein had a bushy head of hair, which they shav'd off, and having bound him with a robe, dress'd him after the fashion of their country: and that he had quitted Timur, being afraid to be mix'd with his army in so miserable a condition.

the nourishment of a man. We have several Chap. 4.  
times demanded Attilmich of you, and you ~~have~~  
have not once offer'd to send him to us;  
but have always started some difficultys,  
and delay'd an affair of such consequence.  
This hath oblig'd us to make war in your  
country, which will bring ruin and desolation  
upon your subjects. If rocks cou'd speak,  
they wou'd tell you that this action of yours  
pertains no good to you. Yet, notwithstanding  
your unreasonable proceedings, if you'll  
cause the money to be coin'd; and the public  
prayers to be read in our name, that shall stop  
our fury. This you ought to do, if you have  
any compassion for your self or subjects.  
Our soldiers are like roaring lions, which  
want their prey: they seek to kill their ene-  
my, pillage his effects, take his towns, and  
overturn his edifices to the very foundation.  
There are but two ways to chuse: either  
peace, the consequences of which are quiet  
and joy; or war, which produces disorder  
and desolation. I have set both before you: it  
is your part to follow ~~one~~ or other. Consult  
your prudence, and make your choice. Fare-  
well."

The ambassador having carry'd this letter, they receiv'd him with very particular honors, contrary to their usual custom: at which reception they practis'd all the ceremonys us'd towards the most illustrious men. And as fire-works are very often made in this country, they assembled a great many persons of this trade, who pass'd in review before the ambassador, to shew their strength and power: but they were not ignorant that these were no more than atoms in comparison of the court of Timur. After they had endeavor'd to please the ambassador by  
about

Book the second. abundance of civil treatment, and several honours bellow'd on him, they sent him back; and he was follow'd by several lords of the court of the Sultan of Egypt, who came to cast themselves at the foot of the imperial throne, and spoke to Timur in these words.

" Most excellent and formidable emperor, we  
 " know that we appear before your majesty as  
 " your meanest servants; yet we are full of  
 " respect and submission. We have resolv'd to  
 " send Attimich to your angust court within  
 " five days: and it after that you deign to  
 " pardon our faults, we'll omit no occasion of  
 " giving you marks of a perfect obedience:  
 " and as far as depends on the power of the  
 " Sultan, and the capacity of his subjects, they  
 " shall endeavor to merit by their services the  
 " good-will of your majesty, and the friend-  
 " ship of the illustrious lords and officers of  
 " your imperial court." The emperor, being  
 touch'd with their discourse, which was color'd  
 over with an appearance of sincerity, gave  
 'em a kind reception, worthy of his clemency:  
 he made 'em presents of rich, and with very  
 obliging expressions assur'd 'em of the sincerity  
 of his heart; he afterwards sent 'em back very  
 well contented and pleas'd with having succeed-  
 ed so well in their embassy. And this appear-  
 ance of an accommodation occasion'd joy to the  
 inhabitants of Damascus.

## C H A P. XXV.

*Timur gives battle to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.*

AFTER ten days encampment, an account was taken of the state of the army: upon which Timur order'd they shou'd depart from thence directly to encamp at Goutz, that the horses might feed in that delicious place. The army had no sooner began this motion, than thro' their ill-fortune, the inhabitants of this country imagin'd that this march proceeded from weakness, and that our troops were fled towards the Levant. They likewise thought that so numerous an army cou'd not decamp without falling into some disorder, and that if they laid hold on this opportunity to attack the rear of the Tartar army, they cou'd not fail of defeating 'em; that the surprise wou'd so embolden the soldiers, that they must be constrain'd to disperse and fly; and that this action wou'd be a great honor to 'em in all future ages. In this hope the whole army of Syria took horse, and made a sally out of Damascus: the populace join'd with the soldiers, some having swords, and others sticks and stones in their hands; and at there were prodigious numbers of 'em, they had the rashness to fall on our rear. There came so great a multitude out of the city, that the whole plain was cover'd with horse and foot. The cavalry were arm'd with cuirasses, and were perfectly well equip'd; the infantry were arm'd with bows and arrows, swords, bucklers and axes, presuming in victory: and there were never

Book V. never seen before so great a multitude assembled together.

Timur being inform'd of this ridiculous rash action, knew that fate had resolv'd on the Syrians destruction : he implor'd the assistance of God, and reflected seriously upon the conduct he ought to use in this conjuncture. He gave orders that the whole army shou'd face upon the enemy, and that all the cavalry shou'd dismount to encamp : he caus'd a kind of wall to be made with the bales of the baggage, prop'd up with great stones ; and being thus entrench'd, they erected their tents and standards. Then Timur got upon an eminence with fifty of his favorites, and according to custom, on his knees address'd himself to God in prayer : he order'd his cairabs and other arms to be brought him, and then he took horse full of confidence, commanding the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. In the mean while the troops of our left wing arriv'd all in good order : and as the Syrians were already very near us, Timur sent instructions to the Miras Miran Chah, Charoc, and Abou-becc, who commanded the right wing, to attack the enemy on one side ; while the Emirs of the left wing shou'd fall upon 'em on the other. In this order they advanc'd against the enemy, and gave 'em battel. The Emirs Sevlyudic, Chamelik, Seid Coja, Sainte Manie, and others, as well of the vanguard as of the rear, began the fight : being back'd by the main-body. And as the two wings fell furiously upon the unfortunate Syrians, there was so great a slaughter, that the whole plain was cover'd with blood. After an oblligate battel, victory inclin'd to Timur : the Syrians were defeated, and repul's'd as far as to the gates of Damascs, having above half their soldiers slain, and a great part dispers'd ;

dispers'd; but this part was afterwards over-  
taken by the Tartars, who slew vast numbers of  
them. There were nothing to be seen but heaps  
of dead bodies, and rivulets of blood, armor,  
and standards, mix'd together. Scarce any escap'd  
the fury of our soldiers, except thole who enter'd  
the fury of our soldiers, except thole who enter'd  
the city. This signal victory was gained  
the 19th of Juny in the year 805, which answers to Jan. 19  
the year of the Crocodile. During the heat of  
the battle, the Muza Selma Hassim, who com-  
manded the Syrians left wing, was sent against  
the Mirza Mirza Chah and Charoc; but Topalie  
Coutchim, an officer of the Mirza Charoc, fell  
upon him, and having seiz'd his horse's bridle,  
brought him to his master, who gave advice of  
it to Timur. His majesty being incens'd, gave  
orders that Hassim shou'd be put in prison, and  
loaded with chains, as a punishment for his strait-  
ness; but he was shortly after set at liberty, thro' the  
intercession of the Mirza Charoc, yet not till  
they had given him the bastinado, as order'd by  
the law of Yasse. This was not so much a pa-  
nishment to him, as the shame and continual re-  
proaches he receiv'd from the whole court; and  
he was never permitted to enter the emperor's  
hall.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Taking of the city of Damascan.*

THE next day our army decamp'd, and  
went to erect the standard near the city at  
the foot of a hill, while the news of the late  
victory spread it self every where. At length  
they departed at the noise of drums and trumpets,  
and,

Book V. and Timur order'd that the army shou'd march in order of battel, and place before 'em a great rank of elephanes, as well to augment the magnificence of the army, as to strike terror into those who had never seen such things. It is remarkable, that from one end of the right wing to the extremity of the left, the Tartar army took up between three and four leagues of ground. Then having their elephanes at their head, the army got upon a rising-ground, from whence there was a prospect of the city, that the enemy might see their power, and be dishearten'd. By this means all the inhabitants of the country, as well soldiers as others, were satisfy'd of the multitude of this army, of which before they had had but an imperfect knowledge. All the cavalry being upon this hill, the drum was beat, and the whole army made the usual great cry; and then they advanc'd nearer the city, to encamp on the bank of a deep rivulet, which serv'd instead of a trench; and with their great and helle bucklers they made a sort of rampart round the camp. After these precautions, both the cavalry and infantry cross'd the rivulet; and the army, according to custom, rang'd themselves in order of battel in sight of the enemy. There was a full number of Syrians, but the disadvantages they had had the preceding-day had so discourag'd 'em, that they dur'd not advance. The Sultan of Egypt held a council with his great Emirs, as Norouz Hafizi, Yash Bee, Chadouriaz, Cheiki Hajeki, and others, upon what they shou'd do in this conuentre. Some, who were attach'd to the inhabitants interest more than to the Sultan's, said, that tho' they had receiv'd a great shock, the city and walls were entire; that there yet remain'd a full number of soldiers, who were dispos'd to fight; that the

the best way wou'd be to make a second sally, and afterwards to defend the city and fortresses. The others who had greater experience, and were more attach'd to the Sultan's interest, were of another mind: they thought that men of sense shou'd not be prepossess'd with chimeras: that when the Tartars were disorder'd by a decampment, without precaution, or lying upon their guard, and not in the least expecting a battle, the Syrians with their great numbers, and in good order, went to surprize 'em, and attack their rear, with all possible diligence and artifice: yet every one knows what the success was: from whence they concluded, that the best remedy wou'd be for them to take the road of Egypt in the night, under favor of the darkness, according to the proverb, which tells us, That he who gains his life, gains all: that in the town and castle there were a great number of soldiers, as well as inhabitants, who were capable of defending themselves, and wou'd use all their efforts to preserve their lives, their wives and familys; that if fortune favor'd 'em, and they sav'd the city, the king wou'd always continue master of it; but on the contrary, if the Tartars took it, and burnt and destroy'd every thing, the king and court at least wou'd be sever'd from the public desolation.

The whole Egyptian council was of this opinion: upon which Fardjude sent an ambassador with presents to Timur, and a letter in these terms. "The affair which happen'd yesterday was a popular sedition, in which we had no hand: a number of ignorant young fellows of the common sort, had the rashness to sally out of the city, and receiv'd the punishment they merited. For our part, we have no other design than to keep our words, as we promis'd before:

Book V. "fore; and if your highness is willing to grant  
 ~~~~~ " a cessation of arms for this day only, to mor-  
 " row we will execute whatever you shall or-
 " der, and endeavor to repair the fault com-
 " mitted against our will, and obtain pardon
 " for it."

The ambassador acquitted himself of his in-
 structions: and after he had made known to the
 emperor the subject of his coming, he order'd
 the army to return, and encamp a second time.

When night was come, the Sultan of Egypt
 took horse, accompany'd by the principal lords
 of his court; and having dispos'd every thing
 in a proper order for his departure, he went out
 of Damascus at midnight, and took the road to
 Grand-Cairo. A Farter deserter nam'd Thac-
 mac, came with expedition to find the Mirza
 Chiroc, to whom he gave an account of all that
 had pass'd. This Mirza ran to inform Timur of
 it, carrying Thacmac with him. He order'd
 that the troops of the right wing, under the
 command of the Mirza Aboobecre, shou'd in-
 vest the city on one side, and those of the left
 wing, commanded by the Esir Gehan Chah, on
 the other, that no one might get out. At the
 same time Timur sent some of the most famous
 Emirs of his army, with a great body of cavalry,
 in pursuit of the Sultan. These brave men
 march'd with so much diligence, that they over-
 took him: they slew several of his men, and
 oblig'd the others to abandon their horses, mules,
 camels, and all their equipage, to save their lives:
 so that the ways were cover'd with goods which
 they had cast away to fly the better. On break
 of day, Timur took horse, and order'd the
 suburbs of Damascus to be pillag'd. Next day,
 the 23d of Junius, after sun-rising, the
 whole army were commanded to march in order

of barrel, and after having pass'd the gardens Chap. 6.
and suburbs, to ravel the city. This order was
exactly executed; and Timur went to lodge in
the palace of Castrabac; situate over-against the
turrets, and built by Malek Ershier, formerly
Sultan of Egypt. The Mirzas, Emirs, and sol-
diers took up their quarters in the suburbs; where
they found a great quantity of furniture, arms,
finery, and all sorts of merchandize.

Timur, who never omitted any opportunity
of paying his devotion, visited the tombs of
Oumme Selma and Oumme Habiba, two of the
wives of Mahomet; and afterwards that of
Belalhubachi, whose intercession he implored;
and then he return'd to his camp. As soon as
the inhabitants of Damasera saw themselves be-
sieg'd in form, they were so seiz'd with fear, that
all the Cherifs, the Cadis¹, Imams, doctors,
and other lawyers of the city, open'd the gates
themselves, and with an entire subission went
out, and carrying with 'em presents, cast them-
selves at the foot of the imperial throne. They
represented their misery, and the great displea-
sure they had at what was pass'd; and they be-
icaught the emperor to have pity on the Musul-

* * * * * *Doctrines of Arab Cash.*

The chief of this corporation was the C*h*ef Veladillo, son of
Tchidoun, who very much please'd Timur in his discourse with
him; this prince made him, and the others who were with
him, sit at his own table. And as Veladillo had travel'd thro'
Africa, Timur was desirous of hearing him discourse concern-
ing the Kings of that country; for Timur was well vers'd in
the histories of priests and Kings, and was not ignorant of
what pass'd either in the east or west.

Timur gave robes or bags to these lawyers, and sent 'em
every continent.

He rebuk'd him who comes to see him, according to the
value of his present, and preferr'd after giving him what a prop-
er dñe.

Book 5. mans, and only grant 'em quarter for themselves, and for their family. They made several presents to the officers; and after having submitted to pay the tribute for ransoming their lives, they return'd home. Timur gave a commission to the Emirs for receiving the tax, and sent 'em into the city. These Emirs were Cheik Noureddin, Chamelik, and Allahdad, accompany'd by the comptrollers Coja Malaoud Semnani, and Getaelisham, who enter'd into Damascus, and according to custom wall'd up seven gates of the city, leaving open only the gate of el-seradis, without which they kept their office. The receivers having drawn from the city the sum's agreed upon, brought 'em to the Emirs*. The Friday following the Comite, or prayer for the king, was read in the famous mosque of the emirades Caliph, in the name and titles of the great emperor Timur.

C H A P. XXVII.

Taking of the castle of Damascus.

THO the condition of the city was as bad as we have represented; yet Yedlar Countal, governor of the castle, confiding in the strength of this place, which was one of the most noted fortresses in the world, resolv'd to defend himself. Its walls were of great pieces of rock, very high and regularly built. It had round it a ditch of about twenty cubits; and

* Timur caus'd some of his soldiers to be crucify'd, for having us'd violence after the publication of quarter.

the place was supply'd with all sorts of ammunition. The garrison began first to cast stones out of their machines, as also arrows, and pots full of naphtha and wild-fire, to hinder our approach. Nevertheless orders were given to all the generals of Il'omans and Hesares to advance towards the castle, and besiege it in form. The necessary preparations were made, and the battering-rams and machines to cast stones were got ready; and the soldiers rais'd three platforms of such a height, that they commanded the castle. They afterwards entirely drain'd the ditch: then the sappers advanc'd to the foot of the wall, and began to work with all imaginable diligence, notwithstanding the great stones the besieg'd continually shower'd on 'em; which were answer'd by those from the machines erected on the platforms, and which hinder'd the besieg'd appearing so often in view. From our machines were likewise cast pots fill'd with wild-fire like theirs, besides the arrows which constantly fell upon the place like hail. The siege being divided among the Emirs, every one shok the walls on his side with battering-rams and other machines.

During these transactions, Timur order'd the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, and the Emirs Solyman Chah, Gehan Chah and others, to go and take up their winter-quarters near Canan, that their soldiers might refresh themselves, and their horses might get some pasture. The rest of the army advanc'd in the siege with a great deal of vigor: they heated great pieces of the rock by putting fire underneath, and casting vinegar there; and then with their hammers they broke 'em, and took 'em out of the walls: and when the wall and bulwarks were ready to fall, they prop'd 'em up with great stakes lest they shou'd fall on a sudden. In this manner they soon

Book V. finish'd sapping the bastion of Tarina, which was the largest of any: and the place which Al-toun-Biechi inspected was soonely finish'd. This being done, orders were given to set fire to 'em: and at the same time this high and famous tower fell, and made a vast breach by its fall. The soldiers ran with their bucklers on their heads to enter by this breach: but on a sudden another part of the wall fell, which rais'd a prodigious dust, and crush'd to death eighty men of the troops of Cerasinia and Sistan. This misfortune stop'd the ardor of our men, who wou'd advance no farther: and the besieg'd laying hold on the occasion, clos'd up the breach, and fortify'd themselves behind. These breaches struck terror into 'em; and they had willingly surrender'd, if they had not despair'd of pardon. The other parts were then order'd to be set on fire: and great part of the castle soon fell. This accident entirely taking away all hopes from the besieg'd, Yezdar governor of the place caus'd the gate to be open'd; and being constrain'd to go out, he came full of grief to deliver up the keys of his castle, and of the treasury and magazines within it. The other sides of the walls, which had been prep'd up with stakes, were not set on fire.

Timur gave orders that the governor Yezdar shou'd be put to death, because he had waited too long before he surrender'd. They found in the castle great quantitieys of riches, jewels, curious stufis, and raritys which had been kept there for many ages. There was a famous granary full of corn, being the revenue of the two renown'd citys of Mecca and Medina. Timur, who w:23 sincere in his religion, prohibited any one from touching 'em: and Herimale, one of the Tavatchis, having taken a hundred batmans

of duty, he was bastinado'd both before and Chap. 2
behind, and the mony he had receiv'd for em
taken from him. Timur order'd the intendant
of this magazine to sell him some corn at the
price of three Dinary Copeghis for each Ratum
or pound, because the war had render'd pro-
visions extremely dear. This intendant got a
great sum of mony for the corn; and the whole
sum was distributed among the officers of the
above citys, who were sent back to Jerusalem,
after having receiv'd a great deal of civil treat-
ment from Timur.

The garrison were male slaves, and distributed
among the Mirzas and Emirs; it was mostly
compos'd of Circassians, Mamalucks, Ethiopian
slaves, and Zangheburs: all the women, chil-
dren and old men had the same fate. The
tradesmen were separated from the rest, and
shipp'd among the Emirs, with those who had
been taken out of the city, to be conducted to
Samarcand. Moullana Jumaleddin, and Mou-
llana Sulleimani, two celebrated physicians, were
also carry'd with 'em. Then Timur went from
the palace of Castrabac to ledge in the house of
Boutebach, one of the great Emirs of Syria,
which house was the most charming and noble
of any in that country. At the sight of all
this magnificence, Timur cry'd out, " Is it not
a shame that in a Kingdom of so large an ex-
tent, where men give themselves up only to
pleasures, they shou'd build all these fine edi-
fices to please their senses; and not have the
charity to erect a single mausoleum of four
walls for the holy wives of Mahomet, who
lie underneath these tombs?" Whereupon
he immediately order'd that two magnificent
dome shou'd be built over the sepulchres of these
holy ladies. The commission was given to the

Book V. Mirzas Aboubeire and Cahil Sultans, and to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Ali Sultan, and Mengheli Coja, who made the workmen proceed with so much diligence, that the whole was finish'd in twenty-five days. These two domes were of white marble, full of sculptures and chisel-work.

As the Syrian money was of a base alloy, Timur caus'd new money to be coin'd both of gold and silver, which was refin'd by the coppel: there were pieces of a hundred, of fifty, and of ten Medicales, which were all honor'd with the name and titles of the august emperor Timur. The money was so common among the soldiers, that the Dicau got about six hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi out of the single revenue for monys.

Timur commanded the principal secretaries of state to prepare letters of conquest, to send to Samarcand, and all the capital cities of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, which were subject to his empire, with advice of the redaction of Syria; and to command the governors to make public rejoicings for his victorys. These letters were dispatch'd by couriers, who likewise carry'd with 'em several of these new-coin'd pieces of gold and silver, to be distributed among the emperresses, the princes of the blood, and chief lords of the kingdoms of Iran and Touran.

Timur sent Coja Hassan to the Mirzas Mirancha and Charoc, that they might order the Emirs Saliman Chah and Gehad Chah to make inroads along the coast of the Mediterranean, as far as the town of Akkia. These Emirs having departed according to order, made havock in all this country, from whence they brought away a great quantity of booty, and return'd to Caffa.

During these transactions, Timur was attack'd Chap. x. with a distemper, which proceeded from a sin of humor which fell upon his back, and turn'd into an impostume. He was very bad with it: and one of the Emirs who attended his person, nam'd Aratmer, was sent into Canaan, to order the princes of the blood and the Emirs to return with expedition; but at their arrival the distemper went off, and the emperor recover'd. Then Timur reflecting upon the history of Syria, assembled his privy-council to communicate his sentiments to 'em. "I have heard," says he, "that in the wars which the Merouanian Omades Califi wag'd against the children of Mahomet, and particularly with Ali, his son-in-law, nephew, and lawful heir, where they exercis'd all the malices and crueltys they cou'd invent, the Syrians kept an intelligence with 'em, encouraging 'em in all these abominable actions. Nothing shoo'd be more wonder'd at than this: for how can a nation be thought to be of the sect of a prophet, and be drawn from the abyss of error and infidelity by the light he has afford'd 'em, when it becomes so far the enemy of his family as to unite with its most cruel adversary, and suffer all sorts of cruelty and injustice to be us'd towards 'em? This is what I can't comprehend. We ought not to disbelieve this tradition: for if it were false, so rigorous a sentence would not have come from the tribunal of God's justice, in consequence of which they have suffer'd so cruel a punishment at this time, notwithstanding all their strength and power."

Timur having related this piece of history, with which he was perfectly acquainted, they explain'd his highness's thoughts among one another;

Book V. ther; and the officers of his household were constantly reasoning on it. It was so intimated into the minds of the warriors, that on the first March 28. of the moon of Schaban the troops forcibly enter'd the city without orders, and made a terrible slaughter, committing all manner of violences: they made both men and women slaves, took from 'em their jewels, and pillag'd their goods, which consisted of an infinite quantity of gold, precious stones, curious merchandizes, rich stuffs, and all sorts of raritys. They got so much riches, that all the horses, mules, and camels, which they had taken from Schalte as far as Damascus, were not able to carry 'em away: so the soldiers were oblig'd to sling away a great part, and especially several pieces of gold and silver stuffs, and curious belts of Egypt, Cyprus and Russia, which they had pillag'd at the beginning of the campain. This circumstance I have heard from several credible persons who were eye-witnesses of it.

The first floor of the houses of Damascus are built of stone, and the two upper ones of wood: and most of the ceilings and even of the walls of 'em are varnish'd; which renders 'em very inflammable: so that when any place has took fire, the judges and governors, notwithstanding all their prelections, are not able to stop it; and it commonly burns a great way. This often happens in time of peace.

March 29. The 12th of Schaban, the city took fire by an accident; and every one strove in vain to quench it - it increas'd so much, that no place was free from the scorch occasion'd by the ebony and sandarac, of which the varnish was compos'd; and the houses became exceeding black.

Timur, whose regard for religion was unparalleled, sent the Emir Chumelik to preserve the

the famous mosque of Ommiades from the fire: Chap. 27.
but tho' the roof was made of wood cover'd with lead, instead of being varnish'd, God made his wrath appear against these people: for notwithstanding the soldiers endeavors to quench it, they cou'd not hinder the eastern Minaret of this mosque's being reduc'd to ashes, tho' it was built of stone: whereas the Minaret of Aroua, otherwise nam'd Mountar Beira, remain'd safe, on which the Mussulmans believe, that the lord Meissah Jesus, on whom, as our prophet, may blessings and salvation be shower'd, will descend from heaven, when he shall come to judg both the living and the dead. And what was most miraculous is, that this latter Minaret, tho' built of wood, and plaster'd over with lime on the out-side, remain'd intire, while all Damascus was burnt down, and the immense riches within it pillag'd and sack'd, as well as the rest of Syria.

Then Timur took up a resolution to return back: and to give the inhabitants of Syria some marks of his clemency, after having made 'em feel the effects of his wrath, he order'd that all the slaves of Damascus and the rest of Syria, men, women and children, shou'd be set at liberty. Gelaclislam had the commission for executing this order, and conducting all the slaves to the city of Damascus, which was exactly observ'd.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Timur returns out of Syria.

March 21.
1401. **T**HE fourth of Schaban 803, which answers to the beginning of the year of the Serpent, the sun entring Aries, Timur decamp'd from Combaibar, and march'd to Goutz, where he encamp'd. He there caus'd two orders to be drawn up; the one to the Mirza Méhemet Sultan, to leave the government of the frontiers of Megolistan, to the Emirs Godadad Huseini, Birdi Bei, Sardeouga, and others, and to come forthwith to the foot of the throne, to receive the crown and investiture of the empire of Hulacou Can, which was granted him in consideration of his merits and services. The second order was, that the angust emperis Touman Aga, and the young princes his children, shou'd come to meet the emperor. These two orders were seal'd, and sent by Danè Coja.

Timur being departed from Goutz, pass'd by Carzoun Boc; and in three days he arriv'd at Emeisa, the inhabitants of which had continu'd firm in their obedience, for which reason the troops did not molest 'em in their passage. Then a council was held, and Timur order'd the Mirzas Roustem and Aboubecre, with the Emirs Soliman Chah and Cheik Noureddin of the right wing, to march with ten thousand horse to the town of Tedmir, built by the prophet Solomon, the houses of which were of free-stone; and to pillage the subjects of Zulcader, who were in the territorys of this town. He commanded the Mirza Sultan Husein, and the Emir Berend-

part of the left wing, to march to Antioch at the head of five thousand horse: and he sent the Mirza Calil Sultan, the Emir Rouslem Tagi Bouga Berlus, Temour Coja, Arbonga, and others, with fifteen thousand horse of the main body, against the Turcomans of Coubec, who were encamp'd on the banks of the Euphrates.

Those of the right wing soon arriv'd at Tedmir, from whence they brought away about two hundred thousand sheep belonging to the Zulcaderians, who were constrain'd to fly into the deserts of Arabia with their horses and camels. After this the troops return'd, pass'd the desert, and came to the banks of the Euphrates, along which they advanc'd.

Those of the left wing being arriv'd near Antioch, cou'd scarcely enter it, because of the great waters, sloughs and marshes: they pillag'd the city and country, and then turn'd towards Aleppo, where they join'd the troops selected out of the main-body, and commanded by the Mirza Calil Sultan: with these they march'd into the neighborhood of Calaz-Erroum, towards the Euphrates. Here they met the Turcomans, who had the boldness to wait their coming, and prepare for battel: they were briskly attack'd, and as courageously defend'd themselves; but the Cheik Houssein, son of Coubec, their leader, being slain, his brothers and the rest of the chiefs were constrain'd to fly to the desert. Several of 'em were kill'd; and abundance of horses, camels, sheep and other spoils taken, which being join'd to the other booty of our soldiers, they counted above eight hundred thousand sheep; and the soldiers were so fatigu'd, that they cou'd not carry away the rest of the captial.

Book V. When Timur was arriv'd in the neighborhood of Hama, the evil destiny of the inhabitants excited 'em to commit acts of hostility against our men: they destroy'd the edifices our soldiers had built when they were there the first time. This action inflam'd Timur's wrath, who permitted 'em to be pillag'd: the inhabitants were made slaves, and their houses set on fire, after they had taken from 'em their best effects.

The army march'd from Hama to Aleppo, from whence to Damiscus are seventy leagues. After some days journey they came near Aleppo; and the Emirs Seid Azeddin, Hezaregheri, Chah Chahan, and Moussa Tin Bouga, who were in the castle belonging to that city, raz'd the walls, burnt the houses, as well of the castle as of the town, and join'd the imperial camp. After four days journey the army arriv'd at the banks of the Euphrates; and the Mirzas Roustem and Aboubeere, with the Emirs of the right wing, arriv'd there at the same time, coming from the lower part of the river. The Mirzas Calli Sultan and Husein Sultan, with the Emirs of the main-body, came there also by water: and they had all the humor to kiss the imperial carpet, and offer presents of the booty they had taken in their inroads. There was so great a number of cattle in the camp, that a sheep was sold for a Dinar. As the Mirza Salian Husein had perform'd several brave actions, and done the duty of a good subject in the last inroads, he obtain'd a pardon for his former fault, and kiss'd the emperor's feet, who promis'd to restore him his best favors, and take care of his advancement.

C H A P. XXIX.

Timur crosses the Euphrates, and burns in Mesopotamia.

APTER all the Mirzas and Emirs had join'd the imperial camp, orders were given to repass the Euphrates: and accordingly two boats were brought from the town of Bire, on the east side of this river, to transport the emperor's baggage. The Mirzas, Emirs and soldiers swam over, and encamp'd near Bire, the governor of which came out to salute the emperor, bringing him presents: and in acknowledgement of his services, his highness confirm'd him in his government, and the inhabitants receiv'd no damage from our troops. Kara Osman arriv'd at this place, and kissing the imperial carpet, made his presents; and he had a handsom reception.

The army being departed thence, Timur had a desire to hunt in Mesopotamia: the soldiers of the right and left wing form'd the great circle of five days journey in circumference; and the circle growing less and less, they found so much game of all sorts near the fine fountain of Riefain, that they took the beasts with their hands. After the chase, tables were erected for a general banquet, to eat the game which had been taken, wherein the most delicious wines were serv'd up: and as an incentive to drinking, they eat roe-bucks and antelopes, whose flesh is very tender, and the best-tasted of any creatures of the desert.

Book V. Then they decamp'd from Bire; and when they were come to the town of Edessa¹, the principal persons came out with presents to salute Timur, who treated 'em handsomly, assur'd 'em of their lives, and sent 'em back contented. Passing farther, they found a castle inhabitzed by Armenian robbers. Timur gave orders for their being exterminated; and they were accordingly put to death, their goods seiz'd on, and the place raz'd. During these transactions Hendou Chah Catandgi arriv'd from Samarcand: he had an audience of the emperor, to whom he gave an account of the good state of affairs in Transoxiana. There also came an officer from the empresses Tonkel Canum and Touman Aga; and another from Sultania, from the emperors Deraï Male Canum, with presents of stuffs and jewels: and all these messengers inform'd the emperor of the good health of the princes his sons.

CHAP. XXX.

Timur marches to the town of Mardin.

THEN the army march'd towards Mardin. Timur sent back Hendou Chah Catandgi, and the officers of the empresses, giving 'em presents, and letters full of affection for the princes his children. To the same place came the Sultan of Hulsi Keifa², and the Sul-

¹ The same is Rabia and Oryha.

² Commonly call'd Helen Keif, a town on the bank of the Tigris between Amud and Mardin.

tan of Arzine, with the other princes and Chap-20-
lords of those quarters. They brought presents
and precious stones to lay before the emperor,
and they had the honor to kiss the imperial
carpet.

As to the Sultan of Mardin, we have already
remark'd, that he being reduc'd to obedience,
had been imprison'd by the emperor's order
in the castle of Sultania; that Timur in com-
passion to him had pardon'd him, and given
him a vest, with much civil treatment; and
that he had promis'd to become a faithful servant
as long as he liv'd, and let slip no opportunity
of giving marks of it, that so he might render
himself agreeable to the emperor, and merit
his favors. After this it became him to follow
out army into Syria with his troops; or if thro
the nearness of the enemys, there was any diffi-
culty in that, he ought at least to have sent
one of his sons or brothers. But as he had fail'd
in this particular, he was conscious of his fault;
and dur'd not come to meet his highness. Ne-
vertheleis Timur, being arriv'd near his frontiers,
had the goodness to ask after him, or-
dering him to come before him in very oblig-
ing terms: but this unhappy prince, giving
way to his evil destiny, had the insolence to
refuse to come, and dreamt of defending his
town, being persuad'd that it cou'd not be
taken by force. In effect, as a long siege
was necessary to the carrying it, tho' in the
neighborhood were abundance of fertile plains
full of pasture, and proper to encamp
in; Timur was contented with ruining and
burning

* Timur could not take the castle of Mardin, which was
situate upon an insurmountable rock, large enough to contain
much

Book V. burning all the houses of the lower town, as well as the markets: and he order'd Cari Osman, governor of Malatia, after having honor'd him with a vest, to form the blockade of Merdin, and shut the inhabitants up so close, that no one might be able to escape.

Timur w'd abundance of civility to the Sultans of Hulm Kéfî, Arrine, and the other neighboring places, who were come to pay their devours to him at his arrival. He gave to each a robe wove with gold, a belt set with precious stones, and a sabre with a gold handle; and he permitted 'em to return to their own countrys. Then Timur sent the Emir Alshadad to Samarcand; with orders to march afterwards to Achpete, to take care of the frontiers of Gete.

C H A P. XXXL

Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.

THE army being departed from Merdin, Timur order'd the Mirras Sultan Husein, Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik, and Aboudecce, as also the Emirs Gehan Chah, Timour Coja, Seid Coja, and others, to march with a great body of the army to Alengic by the way of Amid,

which plough'd land. Here we greate springs of water; and the garrison stand in no need of the out-pars to maintain 'em.

The Arabian says, that to be desirous of taking Merdin, is to seek the friendship of an envious man, or to make a sign to the blind.

to make themselves masters of Alengic, and Chap. 44
from thence to pass into Georgia. The Mirzas
and Emirs departed according to order: but as
Alengic had been besieg'd already two years
by others of our troops, (for when the army
march'd towards Scabat, the Chelk Mohamed
Deroga, with the troops of the Mirza Miran
Chah, Firouz Chah, and the Mirza Giaroc,
went to besiege it, and press'd it so closely,
that most of the inhabitants died of hunger;
they being in so great want of victuals, as to
be oblig'd to eat old leather, skins and such like
things, to appease their hunger; and even these
things failing 'em at last, constrain'd 'em to go
out and deliver up the place) Alengic, I say,
having been besieg'd two years, when the Mir-
zas and Emirs came near Alengic, and heard of
the reduction of Alengic, instead of marching
to it, they turn'd towards the right for Geor-
gia. They made great haste to surprize the
Georgians, whose country they ravag'd. This
exceedingly disturb'd Malek Gourghin, who
sent an ambassador to the Mirzas, to acquaint
'em with the great surprize he was in at their
coming into his country, seeing he was one of
the emperor's most faithful servants, and to assure
'em that as soon as his highness shou'd come into
those quarters, he who'd not fail of paying his
obedience to him. The Mirzas sent an express
to court with advice of Gourghin's subversion;
they ceas'd ravaging his country, and staid at
Mencoal, which is a place proper to pass the sum-
mer in, to wait the answer of the court, and
know whether the emperor wou'd grant quar-
ter to Gourghin. The same day an order was
issu'd out for the Sultan Mahmood Cap, the
Mirza Rouszim, the Emir Solyman Chah, and
other Emirs, to march at the head of their
Vol. II. O Tomans

Book V. Tomans and company's towards the city of Bagdad. These lords set out immediately, and after several days march arriv'd at Bagdad, and encamp'd on the south-side. Farrudge, of the Mogul hord of Gelzir, was governor for the Sultan Ahmed. The vast multitudes of Turks and Arabians, who were assembled in this city, render'd Farrudge insolent; and confiding in the strength of his walls, and the number of his soldiers, he even daud to fally out to oppose the Tatar army, and rang'd his men in order of battle in the view of ours.

As soon as the rumor of the arrival of our army was spread, the Emirs Ali Calander of ^{in Cor-} Mandeli ^{*}, and Dgian Ahmed of Bacon ^{*}, began their march against us, and pass'd the Tigris at Medaine. On the other hand, Faruk Chah of Hille, and Mirail of Sib, also departed with the same design, and join'd together at Setler; and with three thousand men well arm'd advanc'd to fight. The Mirza Roustem, the Emir Soliman Chah, and others, immediately took horse with their troops, and surrounded the enemy. They repul'd 'em as far as the Tigris, and a bloody battle ensu'd near the castle of the Emir Ahmed. Dgian Ahmed was there slain, with a great number of his bravest soldiers: many cast themselves into the river and were drown'd, while the rest leap'd with a great deal of difficulty. After the defeat, one wou'd have thought Farrudge shou'd not have held out any longer; but this peasant, who had never before been master of a government, and had attain'd this only by cowardly intrigues, cou'd not resolve to quit his new dignity of governor, but found a pretence to excuse himself. " The Sultan Ahmed my master, says he, made me swear, that if Timur shou'd come in person,

" I wou'd surrender the city, for fear of bring- Chap. 21.
" ing the people into misery ; but if that em- 
" peror shou'd not come in person, whatever
" number of troops approach'd, I wou'd make a
" stout defence, and not deliver up the place :
" and I must obey my master's orders."

Under this fly pretence, he gain'd over the inhabitants and militia, whom he posted upon the walls to defend the city. There he wou'd all his efforts ; for he excited the soldiers upon the walls, and advanc'd upon the water in a boat, discharging a shower of arrows on our men in the rear.

In the mean while Timur advanc'd towards Tantis : he pass'd by Nasibene¹, a strong place, which he gave orders to besiege and take ; but the inhabitants coming out with presents, and bringing the keys of the fortress, Timur gave 'em quarter ; and they receiv'd no damage from the passage of our troops. The army being arriv'd at Mosul², they built a bridge over the Tigris, which all the troops cross'd in a week.

C H A P. XXXII.

Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.

THE Emirs who were before Bagdad, sent in express to the emperor, to acquaint him with Farringe's sentiment, and the pretence with which he color'd over his obstinacy in defending the city. On this advice Timur

¹ A town of Cappadocia, long. 26. 35. lat. 37.

² A town of Mesopotamia, long. 47. lat. 35. 47.

Book V. chose the bravest men of his army; and leaving the emper's Tchelpan Muile Aga, with the rest of the troops and baggage, under the care of the Mirza Charoc, accompany'd by the Emir Chameliki, whom he order'd to march to Tauris by Tchinatan and Calaghi, he departed in person for Bagdad, by the way of Alton Cuprue¹; where being arriv'd, he encamp'd at the lower part of the river, over-against the gate of Carric Uiacab; and all the troops encamp'd round the city. He immediately order'd the sappers to begin to work. The Mirzas and great Emirs of the Tomans, Rezars and Couchens, fix'd the sappers each before his post, and some bodys of the troops to sustain 'em. Farrudge being desirous to know whether Timur was there in person, sent one to him whom he had confidence in, in quality of ambassador, because this person knew him, having had the honor to see him before. The ambassador met with a handsom reception; and after his audience was honor'd with a vest, and at length dismiss'd. At his return he gave Farrudge an exact account of what had pass'd; but this governor, tho' he well knew he spoke the truth, accus'd him of dissembling, and put him in prison, lest others shou'd likewise know the truth from him: and then giving out that Timur was not there in person, he continu'd to defend himself, and committed hostilitys, not considering what the consequenc wou'd be. Then the Cops Masaoud Semiani, and Mengheli, who were employ'd in building a platform, which might have a prospect upou the city of Bagdad, were wounded with arrows, and soon after expir'd.

¹A bridge on the river of Alton Sosj near Moushi.

Timur

Timur sent Locman Tavachi to the Mirza ^{Chap. 11.} Charoc, to order him to return to Bagdad with the baggage and the rest of the army. Locman join'd the Mirza at Calaghi, and accompany'd him in his way to Bagdad. When this great army was assembled together, Timur review'd it: and the astonish'd inhabitants no longer look'd upon their city as the house of peace*, but as the palace of hell and discord. The troops encamp'd on both sides the river, and surrounded the city, tho' it was more than two leagues in circumference. A bridge of boats was built over the Tigris below Camet Ulacab: and several skilful archers were laid in ambuscade down the river, to hinder any from flying. The care of the upper part of the river, was given to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Charoc, who encamp'd over-against Souys Essultan. On the other side of the Tigris were Mehemed Arad, and Tangri Birmich Coja, to guard the fore-part of the city, that no one might get out that way. In fine, it was so block'd up and environ'd on all sides, that tho' the Tigris pass'd thro' the middle of it, and there was a great number of boats, yet it was impossible to get out. During these transactions, Ahmed Ogoul-chai, governor of the castle of Alengic, who was sen'd after the taking of the place, was brought to Timur, who order'd that he shou'd be put to death, and the castle committed to the care of Malek Mehemed Aoubchi. The execution of this order was given to him who had brought Sidi Ahmed to court.

At the same time the Emir Moosia arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan at Transoxi-

* Bagdad is German'd Discessum, that is to say, the house of peace.

Book V. 201, and gave the emperor an account of the good state of affairs in that kingdom. He presented him with a piece of a balas ruby, weighing one hundred and twenty Medicates, dug out of the mine of Bedakchan.

In the mean while Fardjude and the inhabitants of Bagdad were struck with fear; so that they fought not so much out of bravery as from despair: they perform'd actions of the greatest rashness, which almost exceeded human power; for as soon as the Tartars having made a breach, had set fire to it, and a side of the wall was about to fall, the besieg'd immediately repair'd the breach with mortar and brick, and entrench'd themselves behind. It was then summer, the sun being in Cancer: and as Bagdad was situate in a country near the tropic, the violence of the heat was so great, that the birds fell down dead; and as the soldiers had on their cuirasses, one may say they even melted like wax; nevertheless they rais'd a high platform, which command'd the city, from whence they incessantly cast great stones out of their machines. The Mitzra and Emin fell several times on their knees before the emperor, begging leave to make a general assault, that they might take the city sword in hand: but Timur would not consent to it, saying, perhaps the besieg'd may come to a sense of their fault, beg pardon, and deliver up the place, that they may save themselves from being slain or made slaves, and that the kingdom may not be entirely ruin'd. But fate had fix'd it otherwise, for these unfortunate people continu'd in their stubbornness, notwithstanding the dearth and scarcity of provisions, the siege having already lasted forty days.

The 27th of Zilzade 803, at noon, when the Chap. 22.
inhabitants by reason of the heat of the sun, ~~July 23.~~
not being able to stay upon the walls, had re-
turn'd into their houses, and fix'd their helmets
upon sticks which they had erected in their places,
our army undertook to give a general assault.
The Mirlas and Enirs intently advanc'd, and
having fix'd their scaling-ladders against the
walls, the Emir Cheik Noureddin mounted first,
and erected his horse-tail upon the wall, crown'd
with a half-moon. He caus'd the trumpet to be
sounded, and the drums and kettle-drums beat:
immediately all the captains in their respective
posts mounted the walls, and then cast them
down into the ditch: the troops enter'd the city
sword in hand, and Timur advanc'd to the foot
of the bridge which had been built below Bag-
dad. The soldiers being in the place, the in-
habitants endeavor'd to get out by all the ways
they cou'd, but in vain: so they were con-
strain'd to cast themselves into the Tigris, where
escaping the swords of the Tartars, they be-
came the prey of the fishes. Several got into
boats, and others swam, to gain the lower part
of the river: but they were no sooner come to
the bridge than they were shot by the soldiers
arrows, who lay in ambuscade. Farnudge on-
board'd with his daughter, and found means,
notwithstanding all Timur's precautions, to
escape by water. He was pursu'd along the
banks of the Tigris by our soldier, who dis-
charg'd upon him a vast number of arrows:
whom not being able to relish, he was con-
strain'd to cast himself and daughter into the
water, where they were both drown'd, and the
boat sunk to the bottom. The boatmen had
orders to fish up Farnudge; and having drawn
him up out of the water, they cast his unfortu-
nate

Book V. nine carcase upon the bank. As there had been
 several Tartar soldiers slain in the general
 assault, each soldier was order'd to bring one
 head ¹ of the men of Bagdad; which they ac-
 cordingly did, and spar'd neither old men of
 fourscore, nor children of eight years of age.
 No quarter was given either to rich or poor;
 and the number of the dead was so great, that
 no one cou'd count 'em up, tho' the Tavachis
 had orders to register it. Towers were made of
 these heads, to serve as an example to posterity.
 Some learned men found means to cast them-
 selves at the feet of the emperor, who granted
 'em pardon and quarter, and even gave 'em vests
 and horses, with a convoy to conduct 'em to
 what place of security they desir'd: all the rest
 of the inhabitants were exterminated. After-
 wards Timur gave orders that there shou'd not
 remain one single house in the city unraz'd;
 but that the mosques, colleges and hospitals
 shou'd be spar'd. Accordingly they ruin'd the
 markets, caravansaries, hermitages, cells, mo-
 nasteries, palaces, and other edifices. Thus,
 says the Alcofan, *The houses of the impious are*
overthrown by the order of God.

¹ Arabischah says two, and that there were thirty thousand inhabitants of Bagdad slain in cold blood. They hung away the bodies, and made trophies of the heads put together. There were one hundred and twenty towers made of the heads for trophies.

C H A P. XXXIII.

Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.

AFTER the Tigris was grown red with the blood of the inhabitants of Bagdad, and the air began to be infected by the dead bodys, Timur decamp'd from that city the beginning of Zilhulqas, and march'd a league towards the upper part of the river. He camp'd near the tomb of the great Imam Abou Hanifa, chief of one of the four orthodox sects among the Mahometans, to implore the intercession of this saint. Then he sent a messenger with letters and orders to Mousike, who was come from Transoxiana; which messenger he order'd to be accompany'd by Nemodes, Deroga¹ of Khivaz², that this Nemedes might have the care of the government of Carezem in the absence of Mousike, and till his return to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

Timur order'd the Sultan Mahmoud Cin, and the Mirza Caleb Sultan, accompany'd by several great Emirs and a good number of troops, to make inroads in the neighbouring places. They hasten'd to obey this order, pass'd by Hille, and went as far as Meehad Nodges³;

¹ Deroga is the particular governor of a town.

² A town of the Ghom, in the kingdom of Carezem.

³ A place in Issac Archa near the Euphrates, where Hullen, friend of the false prophet Mahomet, was slain by the soldiers of Tarije, son of Meavie. To this place they go to P² pilgrimage from all parts of Asia,

Book V. but instead of attacking that holy place, they paid their devotions there: then they ravag'd Hille and Vaſt, and return'd to court laden with booty.

Timur took the road to Chichcior and Cabghai; and leaving the care of the baggage and main of the army to the great Emirs, he order'd 'em to march slowly behind, while no one shou'd separate from his Teman or company. The emperor made hale, accompany'd by the Mirzas Miran Chah, Charoe, and Cabil Sultan: but while they were on their march, the Comdes were so rash as to attack those who were separated, tho' at ever so small a distance from the army, and rob 'em. Timur being inform'd of their boldness, plac'd soldiers in ambuscade round the roads; and as soon as these villains appear'd, our men falling out of their ambuscades, seiz'd 'em, and hang'd 'em upon the spot on the chestnut trees which grew in the roads. As to these chestnut-trees, I have heard it reported by very creditible persons, that one year they produce chestnuts, and the next gall-nuts *; which appearing so very extraordinary, I thought fit to mention it. Timur being arriv'd at the river of Jigroon, the empress Seral Mule Canum, Cianzade, and the other wives of the Mirzas, with their children, among whom was the Mirza Oulone-Bee, came to meet his highness, and kiss'd his feet at Sinaiper, congratulating him on his conquests, and sprinkling upon him precious stones and pieces of money. After having offer'd their presents,

* I believe the author is mistaken, supposing the oaks which produce gall-nuts shew'd, with some, to be chestnut-trees, which are very uncommon in Syria.

they decamp'd, and being arriv'd at Acziaret, encamp'd there. The Cherifs, doctors and principal lords of the empire of Iran, cloth'd with scarts of silk, which they wear in the mosques, came as far as this place to meet Timur, who gave 'em a handsom reception. They staid twenty days at this place; and the baggage and remainder of the army soon arriv'd. And as the most learned Imams, and doctors were assembled in this place, Timur, who was extremely desirous of being enlighten'd upon any questions of religion, invited 'em to dispute upon some point of doctrine, for the better clearing up of the truth: he employ'd himself in this exercise as long as he continu'd at Acziaret. Afterwards he gave leave to the Mirza Roustem to return to Kahriz, with order, as soon as he shou'd arrive there, to send to court Hassan Yander, and Salan Jagadaou.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Timur sends the Mirza Charoz to Arzendgian.

DURING Timur's stay in Syria, Bajazet, surnamed Ildorum or the Thunder, the Ottoman emperor, thro the instigation of Sultan Ahmed Gelair and Cara Youlef Turcoman, who had fled for refuge to his court, brought an army into the field; and to revenge himself for the ruin of Schalate, he march'd to besiege Arzendgian, which he made himself master of, having routed Tabarten. Mezbel, Tabarten's lieutenant, was kill'd in the battle; and Bajazet sent the disconsolate wives and children of Tabarten to Broully; and then return'd

Book V. turn'd himself. When Timur was departed from Arzirar, had pass'd by Oudgian¹, and was encamp'd at Hechtroun, that is to say, the eight rivers, he receiv'd advice that Buzaret was again marching towards the east: upon which he order'd the Mirza Charoc forthwith to fall upon the Ottoman, and make him repent of his boldness: he appointed the Emirs Sulymen Chah, Chameik, and other chiefs of Tonman, and colonels of Hexare, to accompany the Mirza. He then sent orders by the Emir Mezzab, to the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone out to make inroads in Georgia, and had stop'd in Mencoul, to depart directly to join the Mirza Charoc, which they accordingly did. The Mirza being set out from Avenic, and arriv'd at Nevine, met the Cheik Ali, nephew of Taharten, who brought advice that Buzaret, fearing the success of his bold undertaking, had besought Taharten to intercede for him with Timur, that he might obtain pardon for his hostility, on condition of his future obedience; that he wou'd send ambassadors with letters to make a treaty of peace, and a sincere alliance between the two empires, that so the Mussulmans might live quietly; and that he promis'd that if the peace shou'd be concluded by the intercession of Taharten, he wou'd send back his wives and children, whom he had carry'd to Brossa. The Mirza Charoc sent the Cheik Ali to the emperor, to give him an account of this affair; and staid himself some time where he was. Timur having decamp'd from the eight rivers, went to Oudgian, and staid some days in the Kioch of Argoun.

¹ A town of Armenia near Tauris.

C H A P. XXXV.

Arrival of the second empress Teuman Aga, and the young princes, from Sogard.

WE have said before, that when the army decamp'd from Damascur, orders were sent to the empress Teuman Aga to repair to court with her children. As soon as the princess receiv'd that letter, she hasten'd thither. When she arriv'd at Bocra, she went to visit the tombs of the saints, and amoug others that of the Cheik Seiseddin-Bicerzi, whose intercession she besought. She cross'd the Gihon at Amouye, and passing the desert, came to Macan; and then going thro the desert of Regen, she went to Machhad of Tous, where she visited the tomb of the great Ali, making vows, and distributing alms. When she was arriv'd near Oudgian, Timur went to meet her, and had the pleasure of seeing and embracing his dear children the Miras Ibrahim Sultan and Sad Vacas. He return'd thanks to God for his favors; and afterwards gave audience to the empress Teuman Aga, and his daughter the princess Beghisi Sultan, as also his cousin Sadekin Aga, who paid their respects to him. After having staid several days at Oudgian, Timur took the road to Fauriz, hunting in his way. When he was arriv'd there, he went into his imperial palace, where he inform'd himself of the affairs of all his people, and did justice to those who had been oppress'd by his officers. Then the Cojs Ali-Seisumi arriv'd from Herat; and the Cojs Seiseddin from Sebrouir; they saluted the emperor,

Book V. peror, and made their presents. Timur gave em a place in the Divan, in consideration of their services.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Timur marches into Georgia, and to Carabagh Arran.

TIMUR having staid some days at Tauris, resolv'd to march into Georgia: he went to encamp at Comcoupa, where he order'd the Coja Ismael Cavasi to be hang'd before the marker-place of the camp, to punish him for the tyrannys he had exercis'd upon the people. He afterwards cross'd the river Araxes, and went to encamp with all the army, \pm Nakchivan. And as the castle of Alengic was near Nakchivan, he was desirous to see that strong place, which had been taken by his soldiers in to short a time: and carrying with him the empresses, with the prince his son, and his favorite Emirs, he carefully examin'd the place, and return'd to his camp.

About this time Tahartes arriv'd at court, where on his knees he presented Bajazet's letter, gave an account of his repentance, and begg'd pardon for him; which he did with so much eloquence, that he appeas'd the emperor's wrath, and obtain'd his desire. Timur staid some days at this place, during which time he sent an ambassador into Georgia, to Malek Gliourghlin, to demand the tribute of him. Then the Mirzas, Pir Mchemel son of Omar Cheik, Sultan Hussein and Aboubeere, with the Emirs who had been sent to Menconi, to join the

the Mirza Charac, arriv'd at court, and saluted the emperor. The army decamp'd from the meadow of Nakchivan, went to the defile of Chahborz, and enter'd into the mountains. Timur being arriv'd at Gheuktebetonkez, had a desire to take the diversion of hunting; and when the circle began to close as usual, they took a very great number of flags. After this chace they encamp'd, and the Mirza Charac return'd with his Emirs, and had the honor to salute the emperor at that place. Afterwards they departed; and when they were encamp'd at Chemkour⁴, which is a delicious place, Idecoz, son of Coja Seifeddin Berlat, arriv'd there from Kirman; he kill'd the imperial eurus, and made his present. The commissary, whom Timur had sent into Georgia to receive the tribute impos'd on Malek Ghourghum, likewise return'd to the same place. That prince sent with him his own brother, loaded with curious presents, among which were birds and animals proper for the chace, he also sent the tribute impos'd on him. He had an audience of the emperor, by the intercession of the great Emirs; and having offer'd his presents, related the subject of his embassy. He said that the king his brother had receiv'd to continue obedient to the laws of the emperor of the Mussulmans; that if he had committed any fault, he sincerely repented of it; and if his highness wou'd pardon him, he wou'd not let one opportunity slip of rendering him his services; that tho' on'd faintly pay his annual tribute, and always keep troops ready to march where his inglenoys thou'd please to order 'em.

⁴ A town in Georgia, long. 47°, lat. 47°.

Book V. Timur pardon'd Malek Ghoughin ; he look'd upon his brother with a favorable eye, and giving him a vest, permitted him to return home. He order'd him to acquaint his brother that he forgave him, and wou'd quit his country, on condition that he kept within the bounds of his duty ; that he treated the Mussulmans of Georgia civilly, and protect'd 'em from all insults and oppressions ; and that he rais'd an army, which he shou'd send directly to the imperial camp.

Then Timur sent to Samarcand Temour Coja son of Achouga, with other Emirs, to serve under the Mirza Omar, in quality of lieutenant-general in the government of Transoxiana. The army departed from this place, and went to encamp at Caraoultopa, where they receiv'd advice that the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had orders to return from Samarcand to court, was arriv'd at Nichaboor, and that the Emir Hadgi Seised-din, his lieutenant-general, was dead. Timur was sensibly touch'd with this news, and melted into tears, because of the good services he had always receiv'd from that faithful servant.

C H A P. XXXVII.

Timur passes the winter at Carabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan from Samarcand.

Dec. 12. 1401. **A**FTER a month's stay at Caraoultopa, Timur departed : and having pass'd by Ghendige and Berdsa, went to encamp at Carabagh Arran the 22d of Rabiulakbar 802, which answers to the year of the Serpent, the sun being

in the middle of Sagittarius. They built houses Chap. 31. of reeds for Timur and the Mirzas his sons; and within the inclosures they erected tents and pavilions. And as Timur's intention was to make war in Capchac in the spring, the face of the pavilions was turn'd towards Dorbend; and every one took up his winter-quarters, after Timur had distributed the money in his treasury among the soldiers and Emirs. But at this time ambassadors arriv'd from Capchac: they obtain'd an audience by the intercession of the great Emirs, and on their knees assur'd the emperor of their Can's submission and perfect obedience. The respectful terms they us'd appeas'd his anger, who granted 'em pardon, and assur'd 'em of his friendship.

Then advice was brought that the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had pass'd by Ardebil, and was arriv'd at Achan, at the head of his army. The Mirzas Miran Chali, Chiarot, and others, accompany'd by all the great Emirs, listen'd to meet him: they cross'd the bridge of the Araxes, and join'd the Mirza on the bank of the river Agioue. The Mirzas embrac'd their brother with tenderness and affection, tellify'd their joy, and congratulated him on his happy arrival. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan went to cast himself at the emperor's feet, with the ordinary ceremony. Timur embrac'd him, discouers'd with him on the fatigues and length of his journey, and gave him a thousand benedictions. The Mirza offer'd his presents, as did also the Emirs of his court. For joy of this happy arrival the emperor made a great feast for several days, where the emperies and ladys appear'd with extraordinary splendor.

Timur particularly distinguish'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; he plac'd a crown of gold on his head, and gave him a belt of the same mate-

Book V. tal, with nine sets of Arabian horses, with saddle-cloths of gold. When the feast was over, Timur again took upon him the care of the public affairs; and the first thing he did was to finиш the process against the Mirza Estander, whom the Mirza Mehemed Sultan had bound for a fault he had committed: he was interrogated in a full Divan, and being cast, receiv'd the bastinado appointed by the laws of Yafa; but at length his chains were taken off, and he set at liberty.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Timur sends troops to make inroads in divers places.

WE have before remark'd, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, for fear of Timur's troops, had fled from his city of Bagdad for refuge into Natolia to Bajaret. Upon the rumor of Timur's march, the same Sultan departed from Bajaret in the neighborhood of Cefarea in Cappadocia, and went towards Chaldea, which is call'd Irac-Arabi: he pass'd by Calat-Erroum, and along the banks of the Euphrates; he went to Hir, and thence to Bagdad, which city he endeavor'd to rebuild, tho' entirely ruin'd; and he got together all those of his party who were dispers'd, and wander'd about as vagabonds in the desarts. Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to exterminate 'em before they shou'd be able to gather to a head: to which purpose he held a council with the Mirzas and Emirs, and order'd four bodys of the cavalry to march each a different route. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik,

had orders to go towards Lorestan, Chouestan and Vaser; the Mirza Abouheere, with several Emirs of Tomanis, was to depart for Bagdad: the Mirzas Sultan Husein and Calil Sultan were order'd to go with several Emirs into certain places of Chaldea; and the Emir Berendac was nam'd to march with a good troop, to pillage Gezire, and endeavor to extirpate the rebels. And as the Courdes had dar'd to commit insults against our army, on its return from Bagdad, and had rob'd some of our soldiers who were scatter'd; the emperor order'd that the first of these robbers they met shou'd be destroy'd without mercy.

Tho' it was winter, and the cold exceeding violent, because of the snow, so that it was impossible to pass without laying felts before one; yet the Emirs readily obey'd their instructions. This execution was begun upon the Courdes robbers, who, forc'd by the snow and violence of the cold, were come down from their mountains, and had encamp'd in the plains of Derbend Tachi Catoun: an infinite number were put to the sword, some wou'd have fled into the mountains, but were hinder'd by the snow and cold, and constrain'd to submit and beg quarter, which was not granted, because their own wickedness had brought upon 'em the wrath of Timur.

The Mirza Abouheere, having the Emir Gherancha for his lieutenant-general, took the road to Bagdad, and blocking up the ways on all sides, arriv'd there in the evening, when the Sultan Ahmed least expected him. The Sultan was so surpris'd and presid'd, that he cast himself into a boat in his shirt, pass'd the Tigris, and accompany'd by his son the Sultan Tamer, and

Book V. some officers of his household, took the road to Hille. Our troops repos'd themselves that night at Bagdad; and next morning, when they were assur'd of the Sultan's being gone to Hille, the Emir Gehan Chah was detach'd in pursuit of him, and went as far as Hille; but as the Sultan, who had caus'd the bridge to be broken, was gone towards the lower part of the Euphrates, into the illes of Khaled and Malek, Gehan Chah wou'd not march so far, but staid at Hille, and sent a horseman to give advice of it to the court.

The Mirza Sultan Hulsein and Calil Sultan pass'd by Cheychemal, and pillag'd Mendeli, from whence the Emir Ali Calander, who was governor of it for the Sultan Ahmed, fled, pass'd the river, and having got together some fugitive troops, possest himself on the bank of the Tigris. The Mirza Calil Sultan sent by the upper part of the river the son of Gehanghit Berla, at the head of five hundred brave men, with orders to swim over the river, and attack 'em in the rear, while himself, with his army, lay in their view to attise 'em. This detachment cross'd the Tigris, attack'd the enemy's rear, while the Mirza's troops swam over the river, charg'd the enemy on both sides, and having defeat'd 'em, pillag'd and broght 'em away prisoners of war, after having burnt alive their commander, who had had the boldness to defend himself.

The Mirza Pte Michemed, with his lieute-nant-general the Emir Soymen Chah, pillag'd at Doubender the hords of Saki and Fili. He was join'd by the Mirza Rouslem, who, according to his instructions, was come from Chiraz to pass the winter at Chuchera; and they went together

ther towards Abada¹ and Vaser. The Cheih Chap 18.
 A. 712, 2 Conde, offer'd him to be their
 guide, and advise'd 'em to ford the Tigris at Con-
 peler; they afterwards march'd all night, and
 came to Mabedia, where they visited Sidi Ab-
 med Kebir. From thence they march'd two
 day's journey, to plunder the Arabians of Abada,
 from whom they brought away great spoils of
 horses and camels. They went no farther; but
 repelling the Tigris, return'd to Chaldeia, the
 government of which the Emir Soizman Chal-
 confirm'd to Doncom, and that of Derfahl to
 Mehemed Aojah Chir, as likewise that of Ha-
 rizza to Temour Coja, and that of Conzelan with
 its finances to Chamseddin Dehdar; but by
 way of retaliation he exacted of 'em great sums
 of mony. Then the Mirza Roustem departed,
 in order to return to Chirze.

All the Mirzes and Emirs, who were gone to
 make inroads into Sivers parts, staid the whole
 winter in Chaldeia, where they several times
 beat the enemy, and brought away a great
 quantity of booty: and in the spring they took
 the road to the imperial camp; and being all
 join'd at the bridge of Calz² near the mountain
 Dgebethaniri, twelve leagues from Bagdad, and
 say: from the dome of Ibrahim Lic; they march'd
 together to court, to give an account of what
 they had done.

¹ A town in Arbil, frontier of Chaldeia, on the Tigris
 gall, near Nahr or Es-Sor.

C H A P. XXXIX.

The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Bajazet the Ottoman emperor.

AS Kara Yousel, prince of the Turcomans, had begun afresh to commit disorders in the Musulman country, robbing all passengers of whatever quality, and even insulting the great caravan which goes yearly to Hidjaz and Mecca¹; and afterwards fearing the just indiguation of our monarch, was fled for refuge to the country of the Ottomans, which was a sure asylum to all the robbers of Asia: Timur, who made it a point of conscience to quell the disorders which affected the Musulmans, resolv'd to make war upon Bajazet. This prince receiv'd the news with indignation; and all the people of Anatolia were so seiz'd with fear, that the principal men of the state, as well lawyers as Clerks, waited upon him, and gave him the following advice.

The Ottos. "The prince who designs to march into our country, is so formidable and powerful, that
 our couns. "he has destroy'd all who have refus'd to obey
 Bajazet. "him. Whatever his armys undertake, they
 "easily accomplish: and they have never yet at-
 "tack'd a province, city or fortress, which they
 "have not soon reduc'd. It is impossible,
 "mighty emperor, to execute so great designas
 "without the favor of God; which makes us
 "presume that to wage war with such an enemy,

¹ Every Mahometan Kingam sends yearly a caravan for the pilgrimage to Mecca.

" is against the rules of prudence. We believe it Chap. 39
" best to act with him in the ways of peace and ~~~~~~
" mildness ; and that your highnesses shou'd use
" all your efforts to do what he desires of you,
" and to maintain a good correspondence with
" him."

The ^{letter} which had possess'd Bajazet made all this appear reasonable to him. He wrote a letter to Timur, full of submission and obediency, which he sent by a Cadi of the law, accompany'd by an eloquent Emir skillful in negotiations, who went in quality of ambassadors to our conqueror. They arriv'd in the imperial camp at Carabagh Arran ; and by the intercession of the Mirzas and great Emirs were admitted to an audience : they fell on their knees, and having kiss'd the imperial carpet, presented their letter, and gave an account of the subject of their embassy. The letter importeth, " That since by the infinite favor of the great ruler of heaven and earth, your highness has been rais'd to the throne of the empire of Asia, we willingly resolve to be entirely obedient to you : and if for the time past, we have acted contrary to our duty, we assure your highness, that we will repair the fault by our zeal in embracing all opportunitys of paying our homage and services."

Bajazet's
letter to
Timur.

Timur having heard the ambassadors haranguer, and read Bajazet's letter, answer'd 'em in these terms. " Inasmuch as we have been inform'd, Timur's
" that your master wagers war with the infidels
" of Europe, we have always call off all de-
" signs of marching into his country with our
" army, not being willing to consent to the
" destruction of a Mahometan country, which
" will cause a great deal of joy to the infidels.
" But there can be nothing more disagreeable to

Book V. " is, thin to hear that he grants a protection
 to Lazz Yousef Tootoman, the greatest robber
 and villain in the whole earth, who pil-
 lages the merchants, murders passengers on the
 high-ways, and commits a thousand other in-
 sufferable disorders: and what is most danger-
 ous is, that this wretch resides in the midst
 of the Medianian country, where he is as a
 wolf among the sheep; and the evil he does
 is a thousand times worse than what a stran-
 ger could do, tho' he was the most powerful
 monarch in the world. If your master has
 a real desire to remove the evillies of our quar-
 rel, and keep a good correspondence with
 us, he must resolve upon one of these three
 things: either first, to put Lazz Yousef to
 death as a criminal, after a legal process;
 or secondly, to send him to us bound in
 chains, that being convicted of his crimes,
 he may receive the punishment due to 'em.
 or thirdly, that he at least expel him out
 of his dominions. On these conditions we
 will maintain a friendship with your master
 as far as possible; and give him proofs of it
 by the powerful succours we shall send him,
 to carry on the war against the infidels more
 vigorously."

The ambassadors receiv'd the emperor's an-
 swer with all possible marks of respect. Then
 his highness took horse to follow the diversion
 of the chace; he pass'd the river Araxes, and
 the plain of Acrum was chosen for the place
 to hunt in. This vast country was surrounded
 by hills; and the circle growing less, the em-
 peror and the Mirzas enter'd, and with their
 hounds flew what game they pleas'd. Timur
 permitted Tabarten and the Ottoman-ambas-
 sadors to enter the circle with the Mirzas: seve-
 ral

ral officers of the household, as Mehemed Azad, Chap. 59. Tengkul Biourtehi, and others, had the same honor, and they flew a prodigious number of standards. In the mean while the circle press'd closer, and there were five or six ranks of soldiers behind one another: and then the Mirzes and Emirs came out of the circle, and order'd the kettle-drums to be sounded. The beasts, terrify'd at this noise, fell upon one another in such great numbers, that they form'd a kind of mountains. Then all the cavalry were permitted to kill and bind the beasts; and the chase was so great, that every one took five or six with his own hands.

After this hunting, Timur return'd to the camp; and in few days made a most magnificent feast, in which he did particular honors to the Ottoman ambassadors, gave 'em caps of gold, and belts; and told 'em that he wou'd take up his winter-quarters in this place, and at the spring set out for the frontiers of Natolia, where he wou'd wait the arrival of the ambassador whom he shou'd send to their master; that if he brought a reasonable answer, he shou'd be glad; if the contrary, the sword shou'd determine who was in the right. Then Timur sent with 'em, in quality of ambassador, Bayazid Tchempaschichkese, with a letter to Hajaser; he gave 'em a numerous attendance, and then dismiss'd 'em all. The tenor of the letter was as follows.

" After the usual compliments, we declare to you, that if what your ambassadors have said be sincere and true, it is requisite that what we have propos'd concerning Cara Yousef Turcoman shou'd be immediately put in execution; and that you send to us forthwith one of your Emirs you can most confide in,

Timur's
letter to
Hajaser.

to

Book V. " to confirm with an oath the articles of a treaty of peace between us. After that, by ambassadors and letters a good correspondence shall be maintain'd between us; so that the Musilmans shall no longer fear any insults from either of us: otherwise you may expect to see our army enter your country, and ruin your monarchy. Safety be to him who follows the right way."

C H A P. XL.

Timur digs the river of Berlas.

IT is a common observation, that the grandeur of princes is known by the monuments which remain of 'em after their death. Never any potentate left so many of these marks of power as Timur. Some ancient prince had dug a canal into which the Araxos was brought; but this canal was at length overflow'd, and its banks demolish'd. While Timur was hunting in these quarters, he by chance cast his eyes upon this beautiful relique of antiquity, and at the same time his ambition, and the desire he had to immortalize himself, excited him to repair this canal. To this purpose, he crois'd the Araxos, and regulated the manner in which this project shou'd be executed: the Tatars distributed the work among the Emirs, who were to take care that the soldiers wrought at it. This work was carry'd on with so much vigor, that in a month two entire leagues of the canal deep enough for a boat to swim in, were dug. The place where it discharges it self into the Araxos is call'd Kiochka Tchetygichi; and the spring-

head

head is at a place nam'd Surcapil. Timur gave Chap. 41. it the name of Nehri Berlas, that is, the river  of Berlas; and on its banks have since been built several towns, villages, mills, vineyards, gardens and pleasure-houses. Tho Timur employ'd almost all his time in war, with design to render himself master of Asia, using all the means of policy, which seconded by fortune, hath facilitated to him the conquests of this great empire, by a chain of almost incredible victorys; yet this prince, the better to transmit his memory to posterity, has erected so many stately edifices and other famous monuments, that this canal, with all its beauty, ought to be accounted one of his least undertakings, since if compar'd with the others, 'tis but as a rivulet to the ocean.

C H A P. XLI.

Timur departs from Carabagh for the plains of Chemkour.

THE sun was now in Pisces, and the spring was advancing, when the emperor was as much resolv'd upon marching into the Ottoman country, the prince whereof was his enemy, as he was set against it by the consideration of the religious war which Bajazet at that time so zealously maintain'd against the infidels. His heart being agitated by two different motives, he remain'd in suspense. The vast extent of the Ottoman empire, the number and valor of its troops, who were perfectly will'd in war, and prepar'd to defend themselves, did not a little contribute to keep up his irresolution. Moreover, our troops, having been employ'd

Book V employed for three years in attacking places, fighting battles, and making incursions upon several enemies, were so fatigued, that the Emirs and generals fear'd they wou'd be dishearten'd by this new enterprise; yet they dur'd not discover their sentiments, for fear of being thought guilty of cowardice or weakness. They judg'd it most proper to reveal their mind to Chamseddin Almaleghi, whosoever his great wit, eloquence and clearness of thought, had obtain'd so much access to Timur, that he cou'd declare his sentiments at any time, without being in the least thought ill of. The Emirs hereupon address'd themselves to him, and unanimously besought him to try hold on some favorable opportunity to make known to his highness their thoughts of his march into the Ottoman country; they conjur'd him to let him know the consequence of it, and advise him to think seriously on it, before he begin it; and they even engag'd him to apprise Timur of the astrologers opinion, that in the campaign against the Ottomans, there appear'd in the heavens an inevitable misfortune attending the Zogataian army. Chamseddin willingly undertook this commission, and represent'd the Emirs sentiments to Timur, which were confirm'd by the prediction of the stars. Timur having heard him, order'd Moulana Abdalla Leian, one of the most famous astrologers of the empire, to be call'd before him: and to take away all fear from the Emirs, he interrogated him in public, and order'd him to declare freely the different aspects of the planets, and the judgment which might be form'd from thence. Abdalla hereupon deliver'd the following prediction: "It appears by the Ephemerides of position of the present year, that the ascendant of the empire is in the highest degree of strength, and

" and that of the enemy in the lowest degree of Chap. 11.
" Wretched. A comet will appear in Aries ;
" and an army which comes from the east, will
" make an entire conquest of Natazia, the prince
" of which will be taken prisoner."

The 17th of Rejeb 804, Timur departed April 3.
from his winter-quarters, and went to encamp 1800.
in a meadow dependent of Carabagh, Arran.

The 7th of Schaban 804, which answers to April 27.
the year of the Horse, and is the first day of
the Gelalian year, he departed from Carabagh
Arran for Chemkour; and in the mean while the
Mirza Mehemed Sultan cross'd the river of Cy-
rus, and advanc'd along its banks. Then Ti-
mur sent Moullana Obaid Allah Sedre to Ippa-
lian to guard the imperial treasure there; he
sent to Chiraz Moullana Cotobeddin Garig,
to regulate the expences of the Divan, and the
revenues of the kingdom of Fars; and this mo-
narch having pass'd by Beril and Ghendje,
went down to the plains of Chemkour. They
staid here some days, that the camel might
graze, and then they march'd towards Azer.

When the army was encamp'd at Tabadar,
which is on the frontiers of Georgia, on the
29th of Ramazan 805, which answers to the June 13.
13th of the month Qurdibehir 124 of the
Gelali epocha, a son was born to the Mirza Beg of
Charoe under the horoscope of Cancer. The em-
peror ^{Mohamed Djidiki} offered thanks to God, and nam'd the ^{Djediki}
prince Mehemed Djidiki: the emperess, Mir-
za, and great Emirs congratulated his highness
and the Mirza Charoe on this happy birth, and
the prince's Cimile was appointed his gover-
nors. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had
pass'd the river of Cyrus, pillag'd the inhabitants
of the mountain Albarzoush, and then return'd
to the camp at Tabadar.

Book V. When the army was on their march, Timur order'd the emperresses, and the Mirza's wives, to return home with the young princes; and they were conducted by Chhugadgi. They staid at Tauris the rest of the summer, and towards autumn they went to Sultania. Timur at his arrival at Mencoul, not being willing to do any thing against the rules of policy, sent a second ambassador to Bajazet, with a letter in these terms

Timur's
letter to
Bajazet.

" After the usual compliments, we give you
" advice, that tho' we are on our march to meet
" you, yet our word is the same as we have be-
" fore declar'd: if you consent to what we de-
" sire, and put into the hands of our lieutenants
" the fortresses of Keric, which has been al-
" ways subject to the country's under our obedi-
" ence, we will let you peaceably enjoy the king-
" dom of Natolia, that you may continue the
" war against the enemys of the Mussulmans;
" and we will not refuse the succour which you
" may expect on that account. Do what you
" think best for your good."

C H A P. XLII.

Taking of the castle of Tartoum

TIMUR having been inform'd that there was a strong place in those quarters nam'd Tartoum, in which were two hundred Georgians who refus'd to pay tribute, and infested the Mussulmans and passengers; and that the prince who commanded 'em was absent, and had left in his place a lieutenant nam'd Ghurdgibet: his highness command'd the Emirs Chumchik, Cheik Noureddin, and others, to attack the place, and take it at any rate. They accord-

ingly

ingly came before it; and sent to acquaint the ^{Chap. 41.} enemy, that if they wou'd willingly surrender, ~~they~~ and pay the tribute, they shou'd have quarter: but they refus'd so to do, and trusting in the strength of the castle, prepar'd to defend themselves. Our soldiers made the great cry, Alla Ecber, and Sall Alla Mehammed'; and having invested the place, they gave several assaults, discharging infinite showers of arrows. The besieg'd vigorously defended themselves for five days: and the sixth the place was taken: our men put all the Georgians to the sword, and having overthrown the walls, they raz'd the place, even to the very foundations. The governor, who escap'd, came to the foot of the throne to beg pardon; and obtain'd quarter for his life.

Timur staid at Avenic till the return of the ambassadors he had sent to Bajazet. When two months beyond the time agreed on were past, and he had no news from the ambassadors, he grew impatient. " In truth, said he, extraction is a strange thing. Whatever mildness we use with regard to Bajazet, in order to preserve Natolia, as being the frontiers of the Musulman country, and hinder as far as we are able its being destroy'd by our troops; yet the Turcoman blood of this ignoble person won't permit him to deal civilly with us, and preserve peace and friendship between us. He does not send back our ambassadors, but carries his hatred and hostility so far, that we are constrain'd to enter his country with an army, tho' we have no desire to seize by force on his dominions and effects. But this is the

* This is to say, God is the most great, and God Most Magnificent.

" result

Book V. " result of providence, whose depths we are not
 able to fathom: and we know not whether
 the effects are design'd for good or evil till
 they happen."

Timur sent back to Sillania the second em-
 press Totman Agha, with the Mirza Sadvaccas,
 son of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan; and he after-
 wards continu'd his march towards Anatolia.
 When he was arriv'd at Erzerom, he was join'd
 by the Mirzas and Emirs who had pass'd the
 winter in Coudistan and Chaldea, where they
 had pillag'd and extirminated tho encinys, as we
 said before, and had departed thence in the
 spring, with great quantity of booty, by the
 road of Coulighi, and tho mountain of Sou-
 matai.

CHAP. XLIII.

*Taking of the castle of Kmes. Arrival of
 ambassadors from Bajazet.*

THE castle of Kmes is one of the most
 noted in Asia; it is situat'd upon a high
 steep rock, and is surround'd with a defile in
 form of a labyrinth. At the bottom of its
 walls are gardens and parterres of flowers on the
 bank of the Euphrates: and no prince has ever
 taken it by force. Several poets have compar'd
 it to the terrestrial paradise, because yearly
 for three days together, little birds, as big as
 sparrows, and unsledg'd, fall out of the air: the
 inhabitants gather 'em up, salt 'em, and pre-
 serve 'em in pots. If they don't take 'em in
 three days, their wings grow large enough to
 fly away.

The Mirza Mohamed Sultan besought the ~~Chapar-~~
 emperor to honor him with a commission to
 besiege this place; which having obtain'd, he
 departed with the Emirs of Tornans and Hora-
 ras, with all the arms and machines necessary
 for a siege. Timur being arriv'd at Arzadigan,
 sent the Mirza Aboubecre, Gell Sultan, Sultan
 Husein, and Eszender, with the Emirs Gelen
 Chali, Cheik Nourreddin, and Berendic, to
 join the Mirza Mohamed Sultan; which they
 had no sooner done, than they besieg'd the place
 in form. The siege continu'd ten whole days,
 during which our soldiers stopp'd the water which
 flow'd into the place. The eleventh night they
 made rope-ladders, on which the Meccit sol-
 diers, who run upon the steepish mountains like
 roo-bucks, got to the top of the mountain; and
 when they were there, they fix'd cords, which
 they let down in the bottom. The Mirza Mo-
 hamed Sultan ordain'd a number of brave men,
 whose names he wrote down, to mount by these
 cords; which they did, arm'd with their curial-
 fes, during the darkness of the night. The be-
 sieg'd perceiving 'em defend'd themselves, and
 cast down great stones upon 'em. Alibor, ne-
 phew of the Emir Abas, and others, mis'd
 the steps, and fell. The next morning our
 soldiers mounted to the assault, at the sound of
 drums and kettle-drums; and the wild-fire in
 pots were cast with machines from both sides; our
 men also attack'd 'em with arrows and stones;
 and every one gave marks of the greatest valor.
 The Mirza Mohamed Sultan us'd all his endeav-
 ours to encourage his soldiers. The Mirza
 Aboubecre did wonders; and his officers first
 scal'd the walls, and erected their horse-tail.
 At the same time the others mounted on all

Book V. sides, and cover'd the place, of which they
 made themselves masters.

Timur having advice of the taking of this place, departed from the meadow of Arsendgian, and came before the castle of Kemac, the government of which he gave to prince Tashkerten, because it was no more than seven leagues from Arsendgian.

From thence he began his march in earnest for the conquest of the Ottoman empire: and as several peasants and laborers were retreated into caverns and steep places, he sent Emirs to attack 'em. But these men having at a distance perceiv'd the number of his troops, were sett'd with fear: so they came up to 'em, and with submission beg'd quarter, which was granted 'em. The army being encamp'd at Sebasto, Bayazid Tchempai Eltchib arriv'd there from the Ottoman Porte, accompani'd by fresh ambassadors from the emperor Hajaxet; he gave an account to the emperor of his negotiation, and presented the answer to the letter he had writ to the Ottoman. This answer, which was very haughty and arrogant, made appear that fate had resolv'd the ruin of this monarchy: and Hajazet, to excuse his not surrendering up the castle of Kemac, alledg'd reasons very unsatisfactory to Timur's council.

The Ottoman ambassadors being admitted to audience thru the intercession of the princes of the blood, they kiss'd the imperial carpet; offer'd their presents, which consisted of ten horses of great price, several animals proper for the chace, and divers other rarities; and on their knees declar'd the subject of their embassy. The emperor having heard 'em, fell into a great passion, refus'd their presents, and thus address'd him-

himself to the person who had been the speaker : Chap. 43.
 " If it were not an infamous action for prince ~~~~~~
 " to put to death an ambassador, I would this
 " hour separate your head from your body." Yet having a little moderated his fury, he said :
 " When fortune causes to be propitious, counsel
 " becomes silent, for tho' we had no intention
 " to hurt your country, yet we are constrain'd
 " by that faithless prince's manner of acting, to
 " make war upon him. Had he sent Cara Soufet
 " to me, and deliver'd up the castle of Kermac
 " to my lieutenants, he might have remain'd
 " quiet in his kingdom. God be thank'd, this
 " castle has been receiv'd so obediency by the
 " valor of our soldiers. Tell him from me, that
 " since he has refus'd to attend to my counsel,
 " and has carry'd his obstinacy so far, he must
 " prepare himself like a brave man to sustain the
 " attack of our ever-victorious army."

C H A P. XLIV.

Timur reviews his army.

TI M U R having resolv'd to attack Bajazet in his own dominions, order'd the troops to rendezvous in the plain of Sebasie to pass in review : he posted himself upon an eminence to examine their ranks, arms, and countenance. When any squadron pass'd before him, the captain advanc'd, fell on his knees, and holding his horse by the bridle, made his compliment to his highness generally in these terms : " Our
 " lives shall always be employ'd in the service of
 " our great emperor : we will not leave a plant
 " or shrub in the enemy's lands ; but we'll lack

Book No. 1. Nasilia, and destroy the Ottoman." Timur answer'd those compliments, by encouraging 'em always to behave themselves like brave men, rather to acquire honor, than in hopes of a reward.

Thus all the army march'd one after the other by Toman, Hezares and Conchras, with great ceremony. But when the troops of the Mirza Mehemed Soltan, which came fresh from Samarcand, pass'd by, Timur admir'd their beauty, order and magnificence: for as good order in an army is the sole and primary cause of victory, this Mirza had divided his into several bodys, which had each a Standard of a particular color, that they might rally when at a distance from each other, and be known in the heat of a battle. A certain number of squadrons had their standards and ensigns red; as likewise their cuirasses, saffries, quivers, belts, lances, bucklers, clubs, and other arms, of the same color. Another body of the army was yellow, and another white: there were likewise violet and other colors in the same order. One regiment had all coats of mail; and another cuirasses. The Mirza having made his troops pass in this pompous manner, paid his compliments to the emperor.

The review lasted from break of day till afternoon, when Timur went to prayer. He order'd the Ottoman ambassadors to be conducted thro all the ranks: they admir'd the arms and beauty of the equipages; and were fill'd with fear at the sight of this great multitude of soldiers, having never seen any thing like it. Next day Timur gave presents to the ambassadors, and at the audience of leave made the following speech to 'em: " Tell Rajzat, that before I employ the whole strength of his

empire-

"empire to make war on the infidels, we are Chap. 45.
"sorry we must be constrain'd to conduct our
"army into his country; that notwithstanding all
"our reasons to make war with him, we
"are yet willing to adjust matters with him,
"and pardon him. He need only resore to us
"the officers belonging to prince Tabartzen,
"whom he hath slay'd, and send to us one of
"his sons, whom we will regard as our own
"child, and treat with more clemency than he
"has ever receiv'd from his father. On these
"conditions the empire of Nataha shall re-
"main immolested; the war shall cease, and
"the inhabitants of his country shall continue
"in peace and tranquillity, and have reason to
"praise their prince's clemency, on whom the
"merit of this action shall fall."

C H A P. XLV.

Taking of the castle of Harout.

AFTER the Ottoman ambassadors re-
turn, the spys who had orders to give
advice of every thing which pass'd, inform'd the
emperor that in those quarters there was a
castle nam'd Harout, into which a great number
of peasants were retreat'd, having horrid'd the
place, with design to make an oblique defence.
The Emirs Cheib Noursaddin and Berendac
were order'd to run this fort: they departed
at the same time, and being arriv'd before Ha-
rout, they cast into it so great a quantity of
wild-fire, that they made the inhabitants re-
treat from their walls, and no one dur'd toew
their heads. In the mean while the sappers
work'd

Book V. work'd with a great deal of briskness, and soon pull'd down the walls. A general assault was immediately given, and all the peasants put to the sword.

C H A P. XLVI

Timur marches to Cesarea in Cappadocia, and to Amora.

WHEN the army was encamp'd in the neighborhood of Schalle, the guides brought advice that the road to Tocat was full of forests, the passages of which are extremely narrow; that Bajazet was arriv'd at Tocat with a numerous army, and had seiz'd on the passage of the river¹. This oblig'd Timur to turn towards the southern side of Anatolia: He took the road to Cesarea in Cappadocia, and sent before Ali Sultan Tavachis to hinder the troops going into the city. Timur was six days in his march from Schalle to Cesarea, where he staid some time, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, as well the criminal as the innocent. Some fled for refuge into caverns and caves; whom the soldiers perceiving, pillag'd their effects, because of their being so suspicious. As it was the season for reaping the corn and pulse in that country, the soldiers had orders to gather enough for the ammunition appointed to 'em. Timur nam'd the Mirza Abouhetre, and the Emir Cheik Noureddin for leaders of the

¹ The river of Cisl-Tomur, which falls into the Tigris at Nekker, and passes by Amora.

Scouts: and he departed for Ancora, arm'd with his cuirass and helmet. He march'd three days on the bank of the river nam'd Yalguar-Soul: and the fourth he encamp'd at Kicheker¹; where he had advice that Bajaret's army had been seen.

Hereupon he gave orders for the army to march that way and encamp: and round the camp to dig a trench, which shou'd be fortify'd with bucklers and palisadoes: Timur sent the Emir Chamelic with a thousand horse to gain intelligence. This Emir being favor'd by the night, advance'd about two leagues towards the enemy's cavalry: and at break of day he discover'd he was near Bajaret's camp: so he hid himself in an ambuscade to wait a good opportunity. As soon as the enemy's scouts appear'd, he fell upon 'em: and a bloody skirmish ensu'd. Bajaret was very much surpris'd, to hear that a handful of Tartars had dur'd attack his scouts so near his camp: and cou'd not refrain from expressing his sorrow at it to his Emirs: whereupon he decamp'd at sun-rise, and took the road to Kicheker. Chamelic sent a courier to Timur to give him an account of the skirmish, and of Bajaret's march. Then Timur sent Elisa Coja, Sainte Maure, Mourad, and others, to the number of sixty, to gain intelligence of Bajaret: and the Emir Chamelic return'd in the evening to the imperial camp.

At break of day, Timur deliver'd his sentiments to the Miras and Emirs in the following manner. "There are, says he, two different opinions with relation to our conduct in the present conjuncture: one is, that

¹ A city between Caffra and Ancora, long. 44. 30. lat. 39.
Q. 4

" we wait the enemy here, to give time to our
 soldiers and horses to repose themselves from
 " the fatigues of a long journey; the other,
 " that we march into the midle of his country,
 " and ravage it, which will oblige him to put-
 " us with expedition; and so we shall de-
 " stroy his army, which see the most part con-
 " sists of infantry. He resolv'd upon the last,
 and order'd his army to march. He left in the
 camp the Mirza Sultan Husein with two thou-
 sand horse: and he sent before in Ancora ¹ the
 Emirs Berendac, Belleri, and other captains of
 companyes, with orders to shut up the passage
 against the enemy's they shou'd meet: some in-
 fantry were order'd to march with 'em, to dig
 wells in those places where they were to encamp
 at night. These Emirs march'd according to
 order, and were follow'd by Abderrahman Pa-
 vacchi at the head of the infantry. Those who
 had been sent out the preceeding day to gain
 intelligence, met a party of the enemy, whom
 they put to flight, cut off the head of one,
 and took another prisoner.

In the mean while the Emperor Rajer's son
 advanc'd at the head of a thousand horse to-
 wards our camp, to observe our motions. He
 pass'd the night near our army, without being
 perceiv'd, and laid in ambuscade in a thicket. In
 the morning, when our men return'd from ma-
 king inroads, he attack'd 'em; and as they were
 but sixty in number, he had certainly defeated
 'em, tho' they fought bravely, and always ad-
 vanc'd towards our camp, had he not perceiv'd
 the squadron of the Mirza Sultan Husein, who

¹ A great city in Novia, the same as Argam, long

lived.

were come to their assistance: so he was constrain'd to abandon 'em, and retreat.

The Emirs and infantry, who had taken the road to Ancora, acquitted themselves exactly of their orders. The cavalry march'd as far as the city, pillaging all the country; and the infantry who follow'd 'em, dug wells in the road, to get water for the rest. Timur finding the way so good, went in three days to Ancora, and encamp'd near it with all his army. An Emir, named Yacub, was governor of the fortress for the Ottoman emperor: and the garrison consisted of several of the bravest men in that country, who were resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. Next day Timur took horse, and rode round the city to view it. Then he gave orders for the water of a rivulet which runs into the city to be cut off, and the walls to be sap'd, while the sappers shou'd be back'd as usual. Some of our brave men even, seal'd a bastion which looks upon the rivulet, and almost made themselves masters of the town; but advice was brought from our scouts, that Bajazet was advancing with design to fall upon our army in the rear, and was but at four leagues distance. On this Timur forthwith order'd the siege to be rais'd, and that those who were mounted on the bastion shou'd come down fighting: and they forthwith decamp'd.

The army march'd not far that day, but encamp'd, leaving the river behind 'em. Then a trench was dug round about the camp, and fortify'd with bucklers and paliadoes, fires being made all the night. There was a little fountain at the foot of a hill near the passage of the enemy's army: and as the Ottomans had no other water than this, Timur sent a great body of soldiers to destroy this fountain, and corrupt the water.

When

When night came, Timur enter'd his closet as usual, to humble himself before God, and beseech him to give him the victory. When in the most devout manner he offer'd up the following prayer: "O Lord, who art the great creator of the universe, and my particular benefactor, it is of thy grace alone that I hold the victory I have obtain'd during the whole course of my life: for what am I? Does not the union betwixt my soul and body depend on thy will? And thus, Lord, what thou hast done for me, redounds to thy glory; and thou art the conqueror and the triumph. On this occasion therefore I beg the continuation of thy favor, which thou hast never yet refrain'd me: why then shou'd I despair?"

C H A P. XLVII.

Timur ranges his army in order of battle, to fight Bajazet.

TIMUR having spent the night in prayer, at break of day gave orders that the drums shou'd be beat, and that every one shou'd march out of the entrenchments with their arms, to prepare for battle. Then he rang'd his army in order. The left wing was commanded by the Mirza Charoe and Calil Sultan, who had for their lieutenant-general the Emir Solyman Chah; and the vanguard of this left wing was led by the Mirza Sultan Hussein, who had under him Ali Sultan. The right wing was under the command of the Mirza Mitan Chah, who had for his lieutenant-general the Emir Cheik Noureddin; the vanguard of this wing was given to

the Mirza Aboubecr, whose lieutenant was the Chapay,
Emir Oelan Chz.

The main-body consisted of a vast number of the greatest lords in Asia; forty colonels at the head of their regiments were on the right, and as many on the left. The Mirza Achemed Sultan was general of the whole body; and before him was carry'd the great staff, on whose top was a red horse-tail, and upon that a half-moon: he had for his lieutenants-general the Mirzes Pir Mehemed, Omar Cheik, Eslender, and other princes his brothers; with the Emirs Chamzeddin Abbas, Chamelic, Elias Cojz, and others. Timur commanded the body of reserve, compos'd of forty compleat companies well arm'd, with which he design'd to intercept that part of the army which shou'd have most need of assistance. He order'd several ranks of elephants to be posted at the head of the whole army, as well to intimidate the enemy, as to serve for trophies of the spoils of India. They were cover'd with the most splendid trappings, and as usual arm'd with towers on their backs, in which were plac'd archers and casters of wild-fire, to spread terror and disorder wherever they shou'd go.

Bajazet also took care to range his army in order of battle. The right wing was commanded by Pcsir Lun an Europain, his wife's brother, with twenty thousand cavalry of Europe, all arm'd in steel from head to foot, so that nothing cou'd be seen but their eyes. Their armor is fasten'd below the foot by a padlock, which except they open, their gauntlets and helmet can't be taken off.

The left was led by Mussulman Chelebi son of Bajazet, and compos'd of the troops of Narsia. The main-body was under the command

Book V. command of Bejazet himself, having for his lieutenants-general his three sons Moussa, Asfa, and Melissa. The most skilful of his five sons, named Mohamed Chelebi, and known as Krichatish, was at the head of the rear, and had for his lieutenants Balliush Pacha, Ali Pacha, Hissar Pacha, Mourad Pacha, Aideb, and Pichadigie, with a great number of brave captains.

Thus the Ottoman advanced in good order, and well equip'd, full of spirit to come to blows with our Tartars, who were not less desirous of that than himself.

About ten in the morning, the infantry with their bucklers before 'em polled themselves on the neighbouring hills. The drum was beat for the battle to begin, and the great cry Soudoun made, at the sound of the large trumpet Kerrenz.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Timur gives Bejazet battle, and gains the victory.

THE two armys rang'd in order of battle came in view of each other, being resolv'd either to conquer or die. The drums and little-drums were beat, and Timur got on his horse to go to prayers; following the counsel of the Sulton Abdalla Esfarij: then he remounted, and gave orders for attacking the enemy.

The Murs Aboobere, at the head of the vanguard of the right wing, began the battle by a discharge of arrows on the enemy's left wing, commanded by Meshulman Chelebi, Bejazet's eldest son. The Emirs Geban, Och-

and Kara Osman did wonder, breaking thro' the left wing. Kiricheki, the most valiant of Djanjet's children, 'person'd very noble features, but when he had prov'd the strength and intrepidity of our soldiers, he found it impossible to rank 'em, and so took up a resolution to fly with his troops. The Sultan Hessem, who commanded the vanguard of our left wing, advanc'd vigorously upon the enemy's right, of whom he made a cruel slaughter. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, on his knees besought Timur to give him leave to enter the field of battle, and our monarch perceiving our left wing had advanc'd too far, sent this Mirza to back it. He accordingly march'd thither at the head of all the Beladars whom he commanded ; and rushing full speed into the midst of the Ottoman army, he brake their ranks, and put 'em into great disorder. The Europeans on the other hand, falling upon our men, gave marks of a prodigious valor and invincible courage. Each party sometimes repul'd its adversary, and were as often repul'd by him : but at length our soldiers had the advantage by the death of prince Peter Lam, as also by the slaughter of the infantry in the enemy's right wing. The Mirzas Pir Mehemed, Omat Cheik and Esliender, with the Emirs Oumcic, Cheik Noureddin and Berendae, clear'd the enemy's infantry from the hills where it was posted. Timur perceiving the enemy begin to give way, ordered the Mirzas and Emirs to fall upon the Ottoman with all the army. These generals accordingly advanc'd sword in hand, and quickly made so terrible a slaughter, that the great

* The Beladars are the several men of the army, or the soldiers who are among us.

Book V. battel between those of Iran and those of Togrul, commanded by Roussem and Esfendiar, was nothing in comparison to it. Part of the Ottoman army was put to the sword, and the rest fled.

While the Mirza Mehemed Soltan routed the enemy's right wing, six companies belonging to this Mirza ascended a hill, which properly was their post. Bajazet, observing their small number, attack'd 'em at the head of his main-body, and having driv'd 'em from that post, drew up his own men there. Our soldiers having join'd the Mirza, rally'd; and being strengthen'd with several regiments, return'd with design to attack Bajazet's main-body. The Ottoman emperor having carefully examin'd from the hill the disposition of his army, and perceiving the disorder, or rather desert, of his two wings, was seiz'd with fear. And as several of his soldiers came to him, who had fled out of both his right and left wing, Timur advanc'd thither himself with the Mirza Charrue, and enter'd into the midst of the enemy. The Mirza Miran Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and the Mirza Sultan Husein, with the Emir Soliman Chah, and others of the left wing, hasten'd thither likewise; and at the same time all the troops, falling upon Bajazet, surrounded him with his army, like beasts in the circle of a chace. The Ottoman defended himself like a brave hero, and skilful warrior: he maintained his ground all the day, notwithstanding the miserable state he was reduc'd to; and when night was come, he descended from the hill, and fled. Our soldiers discharg'd a shower of arrows upon him, and slew several of his men, while himself escap'd from that danger. Several of our brave warriors pursu'd him sword in hand, kill-

ing every one they met ; and as the sun was in the fifth degree of Leo, it was so hot, that most of those who fled dy'd of thirst, there being no water in the place where they went to rest themselves.

After the battle Timur return'd to his camp, and gave thanks to God for this glorious victory. The Muzz and Emirs on their knees congratulated him, and sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones. This victory happen'd on Friday the 19th of Zilzade 804, which answers to the 1402.

July 1.

CHAP. XLIX.

The taking of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.

BAJAZET could not fly so swiftly, but that he was overtaken by our brave men, who went in pursuit of him. The Sultan Mahmoud Can seiz'd him, bound him as a prisoner, and sent him under a good guard to Timur, to one of whom he was presented at the hour of sun-set, Zagan, with his hands bound, by the great Emirs. Timur perceiving him in this condition, cou'd not stin the tenderness of his heart ; but was mov'd with compassion, and taking pity on the misfortune of so great a prince, order'd his hands to be unbound, and he to be brought before him with respect. When Bajazet was admitted to the chamber of audience, Timur went to receive him at the door of his tent, with great ceremony ; and causing him to sit down by him, he deliver'd himself to him after this manner.

" The

Book V
 Timur's
 speech to
 Bajazet.

" The accidents in this world happen thro
 " the will of God, and no one, how powerful
 " soever, can conduct 'em as he pleases, yet it
 " may be justly said, that you are the sole cause
 " of the misfortunes which have befallen you.
 " They are thorns which you -self have planted,
 " and a net which you have wove. You have let
 " your feet stray beyond their bounds, and have
 " constrain'd me to march against you, to re-
 " venge my self for your insults. I cou'd not
 " resolve upon any thing, because I knew that
 " your troops were always at war with the infi-
 " dels. I have us'd all possible ways of mildness;
 " and my intention was, if you had hearken'd
 " to my counsels, and concenter'd to a peace, to
 " have given you powerful succours, both of
 " men and troops, to carry on the war for you
 " with greater vigor, and to exterminate
 " the enemys of Mahomet. To prove your
 " friendship, I entreated you to deliver up the
 " forces of Kemse, and to send back the family
 " and officers of Tabarzen; as also to drive
 " out of your country Cara Yousef Turcoman,
 " and lend to my court an ambassador who
 " might be confisced in, to confirm the treaty's
 " of peace between us; but you haughtily re-
 " fus'd to grant these small trifles, and conti-
 " nu'd in your stubborness till affairs were drove
 " to an extremity. Every one knows, if God
 " had favor'd you with the victory, as he has
 " me, in what manner you design'd to have
 " treated me and my army. Notwithstanding
 " all this, to return thanks to God for my good
 " fortune in this battel, I will neither treat you
 " nor your friends ill; and you may rest satisfy'd
 " as to that point."

Bajazet's
 answer to
 Timur.

Bajazet, full of confusion, confess'd his fault
 in these terms: " I have indeed done ill in not
 " follow-

following the counsels of so great an emperor, Chap. 42,
and have likewise receiv'd the punishment I ~~deserv'd~~
merited. If your majesty is willing to pardon
me, I swear that neither my self nor children
shall turn aside from the paths of obedience to
your orders."

Timur then gave him a splendid vest, and comforted him by kind promises, and by treating him as a great emperor. Bajazet perceiving Timur's generosity, remonstrated to him, that his children Mourid and Muslisa were with him in the battle, that his heart being tenderly affected to 'em, he besought him to order that grace might be made after 'em; and if living, that they might be brought to him: adding, that this wou'd be an addition to the obligations he shou'd be under to him during the remainder of his life.

Then the emperor order'd the Tavatchis to search every where for Bajazet's children: they found only Mourid, whom they brought to Timur, who gave him a vest, and sent him to his father, Timur, for whom he had order'd a royal pavilion to be ^{soonest ready} erected near his own, commanding Hasan Ber-^{the wife} las and Sayyazid Tchempai to keep guard at the ^{house} gate, and furnish Bajazet with every thing he ^{and re-} shou'd want. Timur, in using Bajazet after this generous manner, imitated the great prophet Mahomet, who, after the conquest of Mecca, return'd thanks to God, and thus address'd the inhabitants: "How do you think I shall use you at this time?" They answer'd in the proverb: "You are a generous brother, and the son of a generous brother: and the generous man per-
" dons when it lies in his power." Mahomet said to 'em, "I tell you the same that Joseph
" told his brothers, who had misus'd him, I
" have

Book V. " have nothing to reproach you with ; may God
 ~~~~~ " pardon you, for he is infinitely merciful."

## C H A P. L.

*Timur orders troops to make inroads in divers parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory to the cities of Iran and Tauran, with orders to make public rejoicings.*

**T**IMUR then decamp'd, and went down to the meadow of Ancora, the governor of which place, nam'd Jacob, came out to cast himself at his feet, and beg his pardon, after having deliver'd up the castle to the officers of the court, who resign'd it to Ali Sultan Tarachi. Then the communarys of the Divan began to receive the tribute impos'd on the inhabitants of conquer'd places, as a ransom for their lives.

Timur sent the Mirra Mehemed Sultan northwards to the city of Presa<sup>1</sup> in Bithynia, the seat of the Ottoman empire ; and he was accompani-y'd by the Mirra Aboubeckr, and the Emirs Ghan Chah, Cheik Noureddin, Sevindgie, and others, with their Tatars. The emperor order'd the Emir Cheik Noureddin to stay at Presa, and seize to all the treasures of Rajazet, and the riches of that city. He likewise commanded the Mirras and Emirs to ravage all the country as far as to the banks of Ilara Yaca<sup>2</sup>, otherwise

<sup>1</sup> Call'd Bithynia by the Turks ; it is situate at the foot of mount Olympus, and was the seat of the Grecian empire, before the Turks took Adrianople.

<sup>2</sup> A shore towards Europe.

nam'd the defile of Alexander. He also sent the Chap. 5.  
Mirza Esekender with several Emirs towards ~~the~~  
Iconium<sup>1</sup>, Alobcher<sup>2</sup>, Caraifer<sup>3</sup>, Olaya<sup>4</sup>, and  
Satalia<sup>5</sup>.

Afterwards Timur order'd an account of his  
victory, and the conquest of the Ottoman em-  
pire, to be drawn up by Moulana Chamziddin  
Munchi, and sent into all the kingdoms of his  
empire, that public rejoicings might be made.  
One letter was dispatch'd to the emperors at  
Sultania; another to the Mirza Omar at Samar-  
cand; another to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Ge-  
hanghir at Cabul and Zabul in India; another to  
the Mirza Roustem at Chiraz, the seat of the  
kingdom of Persia; and others into Turkistan,  
Cachgar, Cotan, Bedilechan, Corassana, Care-  
zem, Mazendram, Tabarestan, Ghilan, Azer-  
bijana, Irac-Arabi, Irac-Agemi, Kirman, Kid-  
get-Meran, and the mazikim country<sup>6</sup>. The  
messengers who carry'd these letters had each of  
them a guide. On the arrival of one of them at  
Yerd, the Coja Cayaseddin Selar Senuani, who  
had resided there to receive Timur's revenues,  
built a magnificent chappel in the middle of the  
great square, which he nam'd the chappel of  
victory.

The Mirza Calil Sultan had orders to go with  
his troops to Samarcand, and from thence to the  
frontiers of Turkistan, and to take care of the  
limits of the kingdom; he was accompany'd by  
the Emir Mabacher and Dolat Timur Tavachi.  
As the Emir Aebouga, governor of Herat, was  
dead, the Emir Mearab had orders to repair to  
that place, and accompany the Mirza as far as  
Corassana, where he shou'd stop.

<sup>1</sup> Famous city of Roum.

<sup>2</sup> A town of Corassana.

B.C. Timur departed from Ankara, and in six days arriv'd at the fortress of Sennibisar, the walls of which place he ascended, and observ'd the neighbourhood with circumspection. He sent the Mire Charac to Ghulhissar<sup>1</sup>, Estanous<sup>2</sup>, and Keric<sup>3</sup>, with ten Tomans of the left wing. The emperor afterwards went in two days to Khiourahia<sup>4</sup>, a delightful town, as well for the pureness of the air, and the charming taste of the fruits, as for the beauty of its pleasure-houses, and the number of its fountains. As this place exceedingly pleas'd him, he staid here a month, and granted quarter to the inhabitants, on paying the accustom'd ransom to his commissaries, who at the same time laid on the goods which Timur Tach had laid up for a long time in this place. As soon as Timur was arriv'd there, he sent the Erairs Chamolic, Abdichenim, and Hadiji Seifeddin, with several captains of company, to Kiaradz<sup>5</sup>, Coja Eili<sup>6</sup>, and Mentecha<sup>7</sup>.

Timur, being highly pleas'd with the conquest of Natachia, and the taking of the Ottoman emperor prisoner, resolv'd to make solemn feasts and rejoicings, to recreate himself after the fatigues of war. The most beautiful ladies of the court were at these diversions, where the best wines of Asia were drank, and the musicians perform'd extraordinarily. In the mean while the troops sent out to make inroads,

<sup>1</sup> Town of Roum towards the north.

<sup>2</sup> A town of Roum northwards, long. 62. lat. 41.

<sup>3</sup> Or Chibisar, a noted city of Roum, long. 61. lat. 41.

<sup>4</sup> A town of Roum near Rhodes.

<sup>5</sup> A province of Roum near Ilbodes.

<sup>6</sup> A province near Satala, which has a town of the same name.

plunder'd and ravag'd all Narolia. The meanest soldier became in a manner a great lord by the booty he had gain'd; and he who before had not a single horse, was now master of several stables throng'd with 'em. The whole army return'd thanks to their Creator, who had so enrich'd 'em. Timur distributed the treasures of Timur-Pach among the Evans, which were in the custody of the commissaries; and he reserv'd nothing for his own use, to shew 'em that he fought rather for them, than for himself.

## C H A P. LI.

*The continuation of the history of the Mirza  
Melemed Sultan, who had been sent to  
Prusa in Bithynia.*

THE Mirza Melemed Sultan being departed from Ancora for Prusa, according to the emperor's order, made so much halfe in the five dayes he was marching, that of the thirty thousand horse he had, but four thousand arriv'd with him at Prusa. Yet he cou'd not get there soon enough to execute the design he had in hand; for Musulman Chetebi had got there before him, and fled with all the treasures belonging to his father, which he cou'd take along with him. The principall inhabitants of the city also fled with their effects and families, some to mount Olympos, otherwise nam'd Kechich Dagni, at the foot of whicke the city of Prusa is situat, and others to the sea-shore. Our soldiers pursu'd 'em, pillag'd and brought 'em away bound. The grand Czark Charsalkhan Melemed Jazari, with the chief men of Prusa,

Book V. was met in the plains of Kurya, by the Charsis Mehemed Bozari, and Chamseddin Fanari, and others, who were gone out to make inroads; they pillag'd the Cheik, and brought him with his son to the Emir Cheik Noureddin. Bozzer's wife and two daughters, who had hid themselves in a house in the town of Yenicheher<sup>1</sup>, were taken; as was likewise the daughter of the Sultan Ahmed Gelzir, king of Bagdad, whom Hajzir had demanded in marriage for his son Mustafa, and who staid at Prusa with her attendants, while her father return'd to Bagdad from the country of the Ottomans, to which he had fled for refuge from our troops.

As for Cara Yousef; as soon as our army arriv'd in the neighborhood of Cesarea in Cappadocia, he fled from Prusa to Hilli, and from thence to the desert of Arbia.

After Prusa was reduc'd under the emperor's obedience with very little resistance, the Emir Cheik Noureddin enter'd the castle, and seiz'd on what was left of Bozzer's riches, among which were a great deal of silver-money, vessels and furniture of gold and silver, pearls and precious stones, rich stuffs, splendid habits, and other curiosities which had been laying up together a long time. Ali Semami and Seifeddin Touni, Bitikchis or secretarys to the imperial council, wrote an inventory of these riches.

When they had carry'd away the wealth of the place, the city and castle were pillag'd by dozens of the soldiers; and afterwards the houses were set on fire, which being built of wood, were soon consum'd.

<sup>1</sup> Four leagues from Prusa, and six days journey from Constantinople; the same as Yenichear.

As soon as the troops which had been left behind were arriv'd, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan march'd to the sea-shore, and sent to Nice<sup>1</sup> the Mirza Aboubeire with ten thousand men: which is one of the most famous citys of Anatolia, the air and water being very wholesome. Near it is a lake two days journey in circumference, whose water is exceeding sweet and agreeable. This city is situat<sup>e</sup> near the Thracian Bosphorus.

Timur sent the Emir Serindgic with a great body of the army to Kianende<sup>2</sup>, and along the sea-shore; and this Emir pillag'd all that country. The Mirza Aboubeire being come to Nice, march'd as far as the sea, slaying and plundering all he met. Mussulman Chelebi was there with several peasants: but having again perceiv'd the fury of our soldiers, he found it was impossible for the Ottomans, in ever so great numbers, to resist 'em: so he embark'd, and cross'd the sea. *A seafarable river, says the proverb, is sometimes as good as a way.* Having pass'd the Bosphorus, he went to Sarz Yaca<sup>3</sup>, and his wife and effects fell into the hands of our soldiers. After the pillage of Nice, our soldiers ruin'd that town, and went as far as Yositche, ravaging every thing, and making the people slaves. The Mirza Aboubeire sent advice of the taking of Nice to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, assuring him that all the country was reduc'd under the emperor's obedience, and that Mussulman Chelebi was fled with great difficulty into Europe. The Mirza receiv'd this

<sup>1</sup> A city of Bithynia, famous for the last general council held in it: long. 38° 35'. lat. 43°.

<sup>2</sup> A town on the gulf of Nice.

Book V. news at his camp in his meadow of Micalidge, of which he sent word to the emperor, as also of the state of other affairs, by a hundred men, who immediately departed. He also sent by the same persons a Choncar, which is a very large bird of prey, besides several other presents of great price. The Mirza Aboubecre also sent a Choncar by Ac Sultan.

Between Peisa and Kiondchia, which are two days journey from each other, is a mountain full of very close trees, about four leagues in length, into which several peasants had fled for refuge: they attack'd the Mirza's messengers in a desultory affray. Our men, tho' far inferior to em, stood their ground; and thro' Timur's good fortune, Mohamed Gousmireh, Yelouri, Ibrahim Ahmed, Farzadli, Mehemed Caledar, and Kesar, defended themselves with so much bravery, that a great slaughter ensued: and the enemy were constrain'd to retreat, and let 'em pass by. They had the honor to salute the emperor at Kiondchia, and offer their presents, after having given him an account of all that had happen'd.

The Emir Choih Nourreddin having separated the gold and precious stones from the other riches of Bajzer's treasury, of which he had taken possession, deliver'd 'em to Chamfeddin Almalighi, whom he sent to Timur under a convoy of several brave men. Chamfeddin carry'd all to his highness at Kiondchia. The Mirza Mehemed Sultan being return'd from Micalidge, took up his quarters at Prosa, where he was join'd by the Mirza Aboubecre, who was come from making inroads. The Emir Sevindgic also came thither, after having pillag'd the villages on the sea-shore, and ruin'd Kuanende. Then the Mirza Mehemed Sultan decamp'd with all his troops,

troops, and went down to the meadow of Ye-Chap. 13.  
nisher, contiguous to that of Prafa, where ~~the~~ ~~the~~ the Mirza Abobecere, with the emperor's per-  
mission, marry'd Bajazet's eldest daughter.

## C H A P. LII.

*Account of the Mirza Sultan Hasselin, and  
the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out  
to make inroads.*

THE Mirza Sultan Hasselin, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make inroads in the southern parts of Anatolia, plunder'd Kepes a Turcoman prince, and took the towns of Akcheker and Caraifer, in which places the Emir Solyman Chah establish'd governors to defend the inhabitants from insults. He plac'd Tcherkes Soutchi in Akcheker, impo'd a ~~tax~~<sup>1</sup> on the towns for the ransom of the inhabitants' lives, and plunder'd every one who oppos'd him. He pillag'd the town of Tchaker Baplagh, and the herd of Caoumi Hamid: and left ~~on~~ so many horses, camels and sheep, that the soldiers were not able to bring 'em away. After having taken the town of Chehermata, he stop'd at Iespium: he took the tribute of Gane<sup>2</sup> from the soldiers he had made prisoners, which he sent to Timur. The Seid Coja, son of Cheik Ali Behader, went to the country of Atila, which he ravag'd, killing all the enemy: he met as far as the sea-shore. Bajazet's treasure was carry'd upon mules and camels to Kicurahis, where it was presented to Timur by the

<sup>1</sup> The tribute due to a prince from subjects.

Emir

Book V. Emir Cheik Noureddin, with Bajazet's family, and his beautiful slaves, who were good dancers, cou'd sing well, and play finely upon music. The generous emperor sent to Bajazet his wife, nam'd Dellina\*, daughter of Lanz an European, with his daughter and all his domestics; but he was desirous that that princess, who till then had been tolerat'd in the Christian religion, even in Bajazet's seraglio, shou'd embrace Mahometanism. The Cheik Chamseddin Mehemed Jazari, who had been carry'd away prisoner of war, was likewise presented to the emperor. They brought to court the Emir Mehemed, son of Caraman, who had for twelve years been kept in chains by Bajazet; Timur honor'd him with a vest and belt, and gave him the government of all the province of Caramaniz, with Iconium, Latenda, Acesazi, Anzaryz, Alaya', and their dependencies; and thro' the protection of our monarch, all these provinces remain'd without opposition in the hands of this Emir, and after him in his children.

## C H A P. LIII.

*Timur departs from Kioutchia.*

AFTER Timur had staid a month at Kioutchia in the delights of banquets and play, he departed from thence, and was join'd

\* The European immortals call her Roxana, and say that Timur kept her for his own use; the truth of which the author denies.

\* City of Nicolia.

in his way by the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who Ch. p. 21, had left the Emir Chamseddin Abbas with the baggage at Chelerno \*, and was set out with O. T. the Mirza Aboubeere, the Emir Gehan Cosh, &c. &c. and Sevindgic Behader, to return to court, where he kiss'd the ground before the emperor, and offer'd his presents.

Timur, who as emperor was oblig'd to take care both of church and state, issu'd out a severe order that the brave Sainre Maire and his brother Moutad shou'd be put to death, for several crimes they had committed: and that even his son and other brothers shou'd be sought for, and treated in the same manner: which order was immediately put in execution.

The Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with the Mirza Aboubeere, and the Emirs of his court, return'd to join the baggage, which had been left at Prust and Chelerno. Timur march'd towards Tangualiq, pass'd the mountain of Alecountach, and encamp'd in an agreeable meadow near it. He then gave orders that the Coja Firouz, prince of Ura Yace, shou'd be put to death: and he afterwards made preparations for feasts and banquets, with music and dancing; and the wine was serv'd about by the most beautiful damsels of the country. Timur invited Bajaret to these entertainments: that as he had tasted the bitterness of his wrath, he might also partake of the sweetness of his friendship. Bajaret was conducted into the assembly with great honors, and Timur did every thing he cou'd to please him: he spar'd neither carelessness, nor exprestions of kindness and affection; and in fine, he even granted him the investiture of the kingdom of Natolia, which he had possest'd before his disgrace: then the crown was plac'd on his head, and the scepter put into his hand, with

Book V. the patents usually given to princes for their  
 governments. After this feast Timur departed,  
 and continu'd his road towards Langaristan.

## C H A P. LIV.

*Timur dispatches couriers into divers countries. The arrival of several ambassadors.*

**T**IMUR sent the doctor Bedreddin Ahmed, son of the Cheik Chamieddin Mehearediari, into Egypt, in quality of ambassador to the Sultan Farrouh son of Barroc: the subject of whose embassy was compred in the letter.

Timur's  
letter to  
the Sultan  
of Egypt.

" By the grace of the Almighty, the empire of Natolia is now reduc'd under our authority, and join'd to our dominions. Our will at present is, that the mony which is coin'd at Grand-Cairo, and throughout all Egypt, have our inscription; and likewise that the prayer of the Corbbe be made in our august name, and with our titles. We will also that without delay you send Atilmisch to our coast: and if, inspir'd by your evil genius, you don't readily execute these orders, we let you know, that at our return from the Ottoman country, which will be shortly, we shall march to Grand-Cairo at the head of our ever-victorious army. And that you may not pretend ignorance, we send you this ambassador, whose merit you are sufficiently acquainted with."

Bedreddin departed with full instructions the 1st of Rabia-level 853, accompany'd by several couriers, who carry'd relations of the conquest of Natolia into Syria, with orders to make publick

public rejoicings. Moulana Omar conducted Chap. 14.  
the ambassador as far as Sicilia, where he embarked for Alexandria, from whence he was to go to Cairo; and Omar return'd after they had set sail.

Timur likewise sent two ambassadors to Con-  
stantinople, vulgarly nam'd Istanbul, to the  
Emperor, or Greek emperor, to summon him to  
pay the tribute and customs. He afterwards  
sent two messengers to find out Mullahan Che-  
lebi, Bajazet's son, who had fled to Ista Yaca,  
and resided at Ghazelhisar<sup>1</sup>, which his father  
had built over-against Constantinople. These  
messengers had orders to tell him that he must  
repair to court forthwith, or at least send some  
money to Timur; otherwise the army wou'd im-  
mediately cross the sea to seek him, which he  
wou'd have cause to repent. Some time after,  
the ambassador who had been sent to the Greek  
emperor return'd, accompany'd with two others,  
who came to make their master's submission to  
Timur. They had the honor of an audience;  
and having notify'd the Viceroy their master's  
respects and obedience to his highness<sup>2</sup>, they  
declar'd his consent to pay an annual tribute,  
and the customs, and to do every thing he cou'd  
desire of him. At length the ambassadors offer'd  
their presents, which consisted of gold dollars,  
and several curiosities. Timur impos'd on 'em  
the tribute he thought reasonable; and they con-  
firmed it by a solemn treaty. Afterwards he  
gave 'em rest, and permitted 'em to return  
home.

<sup>1</sup> A town in Europe, built by Bajazet. There is another  
of the same name in Armenia, near Tigris, on the river Me-  
dogas.

When Timur was arriv'd at Boulook\*, he was join'd by the messengers he had sent to Musuliman Chelebi ; and with them came the Cheik Ramadan in quality of ambassador, with several presents of animals, horses and horses. This ambassador, who was a very illustrious person, having been prime minister to Bajazet, and grand Cadi of the empire, brought a letter from his master to Timur in these terms. " I have the honor to call my self your highness's servant. If you have had the goodness to pardon my father, and have done him the honor to grant him a place in our imperial assembly, according to his rank ; I have all the reason in the world to confide in your highness's bounty : and whenever you shall order it, I will come to the foot of your imperial throne, and perform the dutys of a faithful servant in whatever you shall please to command me."

Timur receiv'd the letter and the ambassador's speech very graciously, and return'd the following answer. " All that ought to have happen'd in this affair has happen'd : fate has executed its project. — We have pardon'd all that is pass'd : and so your master need only come here without any fear, that there may remain no more animosity between us, but that I may give him some marks of my favor." Then Timur presented a belt and a cap of gold to the ambassador, and dismiss'd him.

Advice was afterwards brought that the Sultan Mahmoud Can, titular emperor of Zagatz, who by Timur's order was gone to make inroads in the Ottoman country, had been seiz'd with a violent distemper at Kotchic Bourlough,

\* A town of Nodia, long. 61. lat. 40.

and had pass'd from this world into the other: Chap. 11. at which news Timur was very much affliv'd.

In the mean while the Emirs ravag'd the maturm countrys of Namlia. The Emir Chamele pillaug'd Ketchic Bourlough, Acyaca, and Satalia, tinate on the sea-shore. The Cheiks Ali Schhai and Hadji Schler were slain. The provinces of Mentecha and Teke Eili were afterwards ruin'd, and the Emirs return'd to court laden with booty. During autumn Timur lay encamp'd at Tengouzliq, to which place the Seid Coja return'd, after having pillaug'd Aidin. As it was exceeding hot, and the air infected at Tengouzliq, several soldiers fell sick and died; and even Seid Coja was near the point of death, but the joy he conceiv'd at the good reception his highness gave him, restor'd him to his health.

In this place is a fountain, whose water purifi- A purifi- fys when it stagnates; and some soldiers, who <sup>ing water</sup> being ignorant of its effects, had drank of it, lost their lives.

---

## CHAP. LV.

\* *Timur regulates the winter-quarters.*

TI M U R held a council with the Mirzas and great Emirs touching the distribution of the winter-quarters: he appointed a town to each colonel, and sent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan to pass the winter at the town of Magni Siah <sup>in the province of Serhan Eili</sup> \*. Of so This Mirza departed from Prafa to Micaludge, <sup>town</sup> Eili.

\* Long. 60. lat. 40.

where

Book V. where he staid several days; from whence he march'd to Balikista, which he pillag'd, and encamp'd in a meadow. In the night he was attack'd by Elias Soobachi at the head of a number of peasants, of which Velador had given advice, tho' too late; for the enemy came to surprise our camp, while part of the soldiers were gone to make incursions, and the others were asleep in the camp without any precaution. The Mirza immediately took horse, and sally'd out of the camp; and the Emir Gehan Chah with the other Emirs having join'd him, they fell upon the enemy, and having slain several, and constrain'd the rest to fly, they encamp'd in that meadow, till the Mirza's equipage arriv'd there. Two Emirs Gehan Chah and Scindigie were sent from this place to the town of Bilara to pillage it. The Mirza after that went to Magni Shah, where he pass'd the winter: this town is situate at the foot of a mountain, wash'd by many rivulets, the waters of which are wonderfully good, and the air is sweet, even in winter.

The Mirza Churc, with the troops of the left wing, had the province of Gherman-Kill for his winter-quarters: and he encamp'd between Olow-Bourlough and Kerchie-Bourlough.

Timur departed from Targouzliq, and march'd to Dougoulic, a town full of goods and all sorts of delicious fruits, to the inhabitants of which he granted quarter on the payment of the tribute for their ransom. Then he cross'd the river of Mendouras \* on a brig which Tengere-tach had built, and encamp'd on the other side.

\* Or Mardas, a river which passes by Tiss in Naulic, and Nilm, and falls into the Archipelago.

where he gave audience to the Emir Mehemed Chap. 11.  
and Esfendiar, sons of the Emir Mohamed prince  
of Mentecha, who made him a present of a  
thousand horses. Timur, after giving 'em an  
honorable reception, presented 'em with a vest,  
a belt and a crown. Esfendiar follow'd the court,  
and Mehemed consented to pay the tax, and  
return'd to the place of his residence, with  
the receivers Elias Couteau, Firouz Chah, and  
Mirouz Chah Cherbetdar. Timur being arriv'd  
at Ghurelhillar, staid there some days till the  
entire payment of the ransom was made. Near  
this place was a mountain, in which two hun-  
dred peasants had fortify'd themselves: these  
rash fellows slew and pillag'd our soldiers, who  
were gone out to fetch in wood and forage.  
Timur being inform'd of this, resolv'd to attack  
'em in the night. Several of our soldiers who  
were curag'd, invested the mountain, and at  
break of day fell upon these villains, whom they  
cut in pieces, and afterwards return'd to the  
camp. The doctor Abdalgebbas Cazimi fell  
sick, and died in this place.

Timur departed some days ~~after~~ from Ghur-  
zelhillar, and went to encamp at Ayazlic, where  
he staid several days: he order'd 'em to pay the  
tribute for their ransom, and establish'd a go-  
vernor, and a comptroller of the finances. From  
hence he went to encamp before Tire, one of  
the most noted cities of Natolia, the inhabitants  
of which he oblig'd to pay the ransom for their  
lives: and those who were gone with the Emir  
Mehemed prince of Mentecha, to receive the  
sums these people were tax'd at, return'd loaded  
with ready money, jewel's and divers curiosities,  
and bringing with 'em several horses and other  
beasts, from this Emir; all which they presented  
to Timur.

Book V. In the mean while the emperor was inform'd that there was an exceeding strong place on the sea-shore, built of free-stone, surrounded with the sea on three sides, and on the other with a deep ditch, entirely built with lime and mortar, from the foundation to the top; that it was inhabited by Europeans, and nam'd Ezmir or Smyrna; that the Greeks esteem it a holy place, and go in pilgrimage thither with great devotion; that near it is another fortress on the ridge of a mountain, also nam'd Ezmir, but inhabited by Mussulmans, who incessantly wage war with the others, because of the difference of their religion; and as the Smyrna of the Christians is surrounded by the sea on three sides, the Europeans supply 'em with ammunition and all necessarys, looking upon this place as of great importance, seeing it is at the extremity of Asia and of the Mussulman country; that it had never been taken by any Mahometan prince, nor paid tribute to any; that Amurat, Bajazet's father, had several times appear'd before it at the head of a formidable army, but to no purpose; and that Bajazet had laid siege to it seven years in vain; that this place, as strong as that of Caibar<sup>1</sup>, very much molested the Mussulmans, whose blood was always flowing into the sea like torrents.

<sup>1</sup> A place celebrated in the oriental romances.

## C H A P. LVI.

*Timur besieges Smyrna, and takes it.*

WHEN Timur was inform'd of the state of Smyrna, his zeal for religion inspir'd him with the thoughts that it was his duty to deliver the Mussulmans from troubles, by exterminating their enemys. Whereupon he sent thither the Mirza Pir Mchemed, son of Omar Cheik, the Emir Cheik Noureddin, and others, to summon 'em forthwith to embrace the Mussulman religion, according to Mahomet's order; which if they shou'd be so fortunate as to do, they shou'd be well treated, and partake of his favors; and if they wou'd leave their obstinacy, tho' they still remain'd Christians, and pay the tribute, he wou'd fix the sum, and order that to be paid; but if they undertook to defend themselves, he wou'd order 'em all to be put to the sword.

The Mirzes and Emirs being arriv'd before Smyrna, sent an ambassador to invite the inhabitants to turn Mussulmans, as well by menaces as promises: but as they were predestin'd to perish, it all prov'd in vain. Mahmeus, the governor, had sent to demand succours of all the European princes, so that there was assembled a great number of the bravest Christian captains, or rather a band of desperate wretches, who had laid up ammunitions in the place. Our generals sent advice of all this to Timur, who resolv'd to march thither in person. He left the baggage at the foot of the mountain of Tiro; and tho' it was winter, and great rains had fallen,

Book V. yet he took horse that he might acquire the merit of this religious war. He arriv'd at Smyrna on saturday the sixth of Junrigevel 805, and sent orders to the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who was in his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, to repair to him. The same order was sent to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubeere, as also to the Emir Gehan Chah and others.

At Timur's arrival before Smyrna, the drums and kettle-drums were beat, and the great cry made by the whole army. The place was immediately attack'd on the land-side; and each general order'd the sappers to work, and the machines and battering-rams to be got ready over-against his re-pesitive post; while arrows were flit, and pots of wild-fire thrown upon the gates of the castle. The Emir Chamfeddin built in the midst of the water, great scaffolds with three feet, near one another, on which they laid planks: and from the two sides of the castle, to the place where the feet of the scaffolds touch'd the ground, they made an even way, which they setur'd on each side, so that the soldiers might fight upon it with safety, as if they were on land. The Musselmanns, arm'd with their bucklers, mounted the scaffolds, from whence they gave assaults upon the castle: and as the way was shut up to the sea-side, it was impossible to bring any succour to the besieg'd.

In the mean while the Mirzas Mehemed Sultan and Miran Chah arriv'd, having left the baggage at Magni-Siah under the conduct of the Emir Chamfeddin Abbas: which re-inforcement did not a little serve to forward the siege. Then Timur order'd a general assault. The Emirs of Somans, and the colonels of Hezares, advanc'd with their troops, against their

their respective posts; and the assault lasted from Chap. 16.  
morning till evening, and from evening till morning, wherein the bravest men of both  
sides perform'd actions of the greatest value.  
If the attack was carry'd on with resolution,  
the defence was equally so. The battering-  
rams and other machines beat down the walls  
and towers; and the dauntless besieg'd never  
ceas'd throwing pots of naphtha and wild-fire,  
arrows and stones. In the mean while it rain'd  
in such abundance, that a second deluge seem'd  
approaching; notwithstanding which, the in-  
detatigable Timur was always giving orders to  
his generals, and exciting his soldiers. After the  
sappers had done undermining, and prop'd up the  
bastions and courtines with stakes, they put in  
a great number of fascines done over with  
naphtha; which having set on fire, the walls on  
a ladder fell down, and with 'em several of the  
besieg'd, who were thereby destroy'd. The  
Muhammads forc'd the enemy to quit the breaches,  
and then enter'd the place, returning thanks to  
God, and crying out, *Kisfey!* A few escap'd  
slaughter by casting themselves into the sea, and  
swimming to the vessels; while others were  
drown'd. After our soldiers had put the inhab-  
itants of Smyrna to the sword, they rai'd the  
houses, as well of the city as of the castle, call-  
ing their arm and movable goods into the sea.  
There were come from certain parts of Europe  
great ships nam'd Caraca, with transports, and  
some with more, which brought over soldiers  
and arms to succour the inhabitants. When  
they were come near the place, and beheld the  
town and castle in ruins, they were struck with  
fear, and anchord. Timur order'd that some  
of the Christians heads shord be thrown into  
the sea ships, which the slingers of wild-fire ac-  
cordingly

Book V. cordingly did. The mariners seeing their companions heads, return'd in fear, and frustrated of their hopes. From the beginning of the siege to the ruin of the place there pass'd but two weeks; which very much astonish'd the men of that country, who were acquainted with the strength of the place; and especially Bajazet. Every one acknowledg'd that Timur was the greatest and most formidable monarch that ever appear'd in Asia. The author of this history in his travels afterwards pass'd by the walls of Smyrna, which then belong'd to the Mussulmans; and one of his companions having related to him the history of this place, the author express'd himself in these words: " Smyrna hath been ruin'd by Timur in less than two weeks, tho' the Ottoman emperor in vain believ'd it seven years, judge from hence the power and conduct of each of 'em."

## C H A P. LVII.

*Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's sons.*

DURING these transactions the Cheik Ramadan, who came once before in quality of ambassador to Timur from Muslim Chelebi, arriv'd here again; and being admitted to an audience, offer'd large presents of horses and other animals, curious stuffs, and staves of gold; and with abundance of submission made the following speech: " I take the liberty to represent to your highness, that since you have been pleas'd to pardon the emperor Bajazet, and load him with honors and favors, every

“ one is freed from the fears he was in, and Chap. 57.  
 “ even hopes for advancement thro your high-  
 “ ness's benevolence. The prince Mousulman  
 “ my master, who lookes upon himself as one of  
 “ the meanest servants of your court, and is re-  
 “ solv'd to obey the orders with which you  
 “ shall honor him, with all imaginable sincerity,  
 “ waits with impatience for an opportunity to  
 “ give you the true marks of his respect, and  
 “ his desire to expose his life in your highness's  
 “ service, to whom may God continue ever-  
 “ lasting glory and prosperity.”

The ambassador having ended his speech, Timur was touch'd with compassion for the deplorable condition to which Mousulman was reduc'd: he confirm'd him in the principality of all the country of Ista Yaca<sup>1</sup>, for which he issu'd out patent, which he seal'd as usual with his red hand; he honor'd the ambassador with a magnificent velt, and a horse richly caparison'd, with a saddle of gold; and having given him a velt wove with gold, a crown, and a belt for Mousulman Chelbi, he dismiss'd him.

About the same time arriv'd an ambassador, nam'd Catoboddin, from Ista Chelbi, another of Bajazet's sons: being admitted to an audience, he kiss'd the earth, and made his presents; which Timur having accepted, the ambassador deliver'd his message, declaring his master's respect, and obedience to whatever his highness shou'd order. Then he return'd, after having receiv'd the usual honors, and the testimonys of friendship for his master.

Timur afterwards gave orders to the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to besiege the castle of Fodzia<sup>2</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> Ista Yaca is Turkey in Europe.

<sup>2</sup> A town on the side of Savona.

Book V. situate on the sea-shore, a day's journey from Smyrna, because several European Christians had retreated thither. The Mirza immediately departed, and encamp'd before it; and was about to besiege it in form, when the governors of the place struck with terror at the name of Timur, came out to call themselves at the Mirza's feet; and with submission and obedience gave consent to pay the tribute, provided quarter was granted the inhabitants. The Mirza agreed to their proposal, impos'd a tribute on 'em, and nam'd commissioners to receive it; after which he return'd with his Emirs and troops to Magni Sith, where he had left his baggage.

---

## C H A P. LVIII.

### *Timur departs from Smyrna.*

AFTER the destruction of Smyrna, and the extirpation of the enemy's of the law, Timur took care to restore peace and quiet to the Mussulmans who inhabited the other castle, giving 'em scuts, bucklers, curasses, bows and arrows, sabres, lances, and all sorts of arms, to enable 'em to carry on the war of religion in these frontiers, against the Europeans, and hinder the Grecian Christians ever passing into Asia this way; and he order'd 'em to build a strong citadel near the place where Smyrna stood.

After Timur had deliver'd the Mussulmans from the continual insults they receiv'd from the Christians of Smyrna, loaded 'em with favors, and succor'd 'em with arms and meat, he departed from this country, and went to encamp

at Ayazlic, where he was join'd by the Emir Chap. 18. Solymen Cah, who had departed from Ancora ~~to make inroads~~ to return'd by Esenac, and join'd the Mirza Chirac at Caraigadge: but he came alone to court, and after his audience went back to join the said Mirza.

An European name'd Soba, prince of the island <sup>Embassy</sup> ~~from the~~ <sup>of</sup> Chio<sup>1</sup>, in which mastic grows, having ~~heard~~ <sup>from the</sup> prince of heard by credible persons of the great valor and power of Timur, sent him several presents by an ambassador, whom he order'd to acquaint him that he was one of his meanest servants, willingly consented to pay the tribute, and was ready to obey his highness's orders, hoping Timur wou'd design to give him some marks of his clemency. The ambassador being arriv'd at the imperial camp, was admitted to an audience, where he made an harangue in the form his master had instructed him. Timur handsomely receiv'd the king of Chio's offer of service, promis'd protection to him and his subjects; and after having fix'd the sum for a tribute, made a peace with him: he gave a visit to the ambassador, whom he honor'd, and permitted to return home.

Timur then sent the Mirza Eskender, son of Omar Cheik, and Ali Sultan Tavachi, to plander the country of Perzem; they enter'd the capital of it, and having taken the ransom for the inhabitants lives, return'd to the imperial camp.

After this Timur decamp'd from Ayazlic, and being arriv'd at Tang-uzilq, he was join'd by the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who had left his winter-quarters at Magni-Siah, and having taken the road of Alicheher before the rest, came

<sup>1</sup> An island in the Archipelago.

Book V. to court with a small number of his domestics. Timur order'd him to march at the head of the troops of the right wing by the road of Ankara, and rejoin the imperial camp at Cesarea. This Mirza staid at Tanguzliq till all his troops had join'd him. Timur departed from thence for Sultanhisar; he order'd a great number of peasants, who were got together in the neighboring mountains, to be put to the sword; and he gave the towns of Chontabia, Tanguzliq, and Catacheber, as well as the demesne of the province of Ghemiyon-Eli, to Yacoub Chelebi, to whom the principality of these provinces fell by right of succession. This Yacoub had formerly fled from Bajazet into Syria, after the conquest of which kingdom he follow'd Timur's court. The emperor issu'd out his patents to this purpose; and honoring him with a vest and belt, left him in this place, the principality of which remains in the hands of his children to this day.

The court took the road of Olor-Bourjough, where it was join'd by the Mirza Charac, who was come from his winter-quarters. As this place had not yet surrender'd, Timur gave orders that it shou'd be attack'd. It was taken in a very short time: and as the Emir Gelselisam had been slain by an arrow, all the men were put to the sword, and the women carry'd away captives, after the razing of the place.

## C H A P. LIX.

*Taking of the towns of Egridur and Nasibine.*

**I**N the province of Hamid-Elii is a lake of sweet water, five leagues in length, and four in breadth, into which several rivers fall, and go out again by other passages; and round it are kitchen-gardens, orchards, and cultivated lands. On the bank of the lake stands a town nam'd Egridur, built of free-stone; three of its sides are surrounded by the lake, and the fourth by the mountain. This lake is nam'd Falac Abad by some historians. Near the town, in the midst of the lake, are two isles; one nam'd Ghulistan, and the other Nasibine: in the latter, which is exceeding large, is built a fortress with houses and gardens. The people of the neighboring places had convey'd thither their mony and best effects; and abundance of soldiers were got into it, who had laid up stores of all sorts of ammunition, believing themselves safe, because of the lake which surrounds the place. Timur being inform'd of all this, conceiv'd it wou'd redound to his honor to conquer this place: whereupon he order'd the baggage to be conducted by the road of Akcheher.

About this time Bajazet falling sick, Timur order'd several skilful physicians of his court, as Moulana Azeddin, Melaoud Chirzzi, and Moulana Gelaleddin Arab, to attend him with the same care as they wou'd use towards himself: and Bajazet was conducted with the baggage.

Book V.

Feb. 23.

1402.

Timur departed from Olone-Bourlough, and in two days and one night arriv'd at Egriat the 17th of Regeb 802; in the morning. Next day the Mirzas and Emirs march'd towards the walls of the town: some ascended the mountain, while others attack'd the gate by the foot of the mountain; they gave assaults on all sides, and soon made themselves masters of the town, which they enter'd in a furious manner, and put most of the inhabitants to the sword, a few only escaping to Nasibine in boats.

Then Timur caus'd floats to be made of the skins of oxen and horses, on which the Mirzas and Emirs cross over to attack Nasibine, which they surrounded, ordering the drums to be beat, and the great cry made. The inhabitants were surpriz'd, not imagining they cou'd have been believ'd by water. The governor Cheik Baba, perceiving he was unable to defend himself, went out, and besought the Mirzas to intercede for him. They brought him to Timur, before whom he kiss'd the ground, submissively begging pardon and quarter. Timur order'd that he and his family shou'd follow the army. Thus Nasibine was taken by our troops, who brought to the camp all the riches they cou'd find, which Timur distributed among 'em.

Then Mobacher's son arriv'd from the Mirza Mehometu Sultan, to give notice that this prince was fallen sick. Timur was exceedingly grieved, and sent a skilful physician to him immediately, to discover the true state of his illness, and bring him back certain advice of it.

The court at length decamp'd, and march'd toward Alchelier, they met the troops of the left wing, and the Mirza Charoc's camp. This prince made a feast for Timur, and offer'd his presents; as did likewise the Sultan Hussein and the

the Emir Solyman Chah, who strove to exact Chap. 62.  
each other in entertaining the emperor. At this time the Emir Mehemed Caraman came to court from Iconium; and under the name of a ransom, he presented such vast sums of silver money, curious jewels, and great numbers of horses and camels, that it was believ'd he did more than he was able, considering the small extent and power of his country: upon which Timur distinguish'd him by several honours, and confirm'd him in his principality. As the emperor had before deliver'd him from prison, where he was detain'd by Bajazet, and had restor'd to him his father's estates, so he again join'd other countries to his dominions, and dismiss'd him: after which the court departed, and continu'd its march.

---

## C H A P. LX.

*The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet,  
and of the Mirza Mehemed Salias, Timur's grandson.*

THE world is so inconstant, that we may rather look upon it as a continual destruction, than an agreeable habitation, since there is nothing of a certain duration but God: a melancholy instance of which we find in Bajazet, who died of an apoplexy at Alchicher on Thursday the 14th of Chabin 805: at whose death Timur March 1473, was so extremely affected, that he bewail'd the misfortune of that great prince with tears. He began to reflect how providence often baffles human projects: for he had resolv'd, as soon as he had finish'd the conquest of Anatolia, to raise the

Book V. dejected spirit of Bajazet, by re-establishing him on the throne with greater power and magnificence than he had before been posseſſ'd of: but fate had otherwise order'd it.

Timur being got to the frontier of Akcheher, Dame Coja arriv'd from the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, with advice that doctor Farridge had given some medicine to the prince, which had had an ill effect; and that the vapors having got into his brain, he was fallen into a delirium. This news very much afflicted the emperor, who dispatch'd away Dame Coja post, to acquaint the Mirza that he wou'd soon be with him.

Timur encamp'd at Akcheher, where he comforted Bajazet's officers by several largesses he bellow'd upon 'em. He made a present to his son Moussa Chetebi of a royal vest, a belt, a sword, and a quiver enrich'd with precious stones, a load of gold, and thirty horses: he likewise gave him his letters-patent seal'd with the impression of his red hand; and then dismiss'd him, telling him that the coffin of the deceas'd emperor his father was laid by his orders in the tomb of the Cheik Mahmood Hairan at Akcheher; and that it shou'd be convey'd to Prusa with all the pomp and magnificence us'd to the greatest kings, to be inter'd in the mausoleum, which he had built there himself.

Timur then left the baggage, and departed from Akcheher, for the place where the Mirza his grandson lay sick. On his way thither he learnt that the horde of Turcomans nam'd Durgot, whose chiefs were Kezerbei and Ibrahim, had revolted, and were entrench'd in a mountain near the great road, hoping to defend themselves there. Some troops being order'd against 'em, they block'd up all the avenues, and invested the mountain; and then attacking the Durgots with their

their arrows, they fled. Our soldiers parb'd Chapas' em sword in hand, slew several on the spot, ~~and~~ pillag'd their horses, camels, oxen and sheep; and made their wives and children slaves, to serve as an example to maitineers.

The sixteenth of Chaban, Timur met Dolet <sup>March 25.</sup> Coja son of Eltehi Bouza, who gave advice that the Mirza's sickness increasing, his life was despaire'd of. This oblig'd Timur to halfe his march; and being come to the place where he was, he went up to his bed-side, where finding him very ill, having lost his speech, he became very disconsolate. Timur order'd the Mirza to be put in a litter, and departed the same day. When they had march'd three days journey, and were come near Cataluissat<sup>1</sup>, they encamp'd; and here the great and mighty prince, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, who was but nineteen years old, pass'd from this life into the other, on the 18th of Chaban 805, which answers to the <sup>March 19.</sup> year of the Sheep, the sun being in the last degree of Pisces. Thus died this great prince, who tho but a child in a manner, had already obtain'd more victories, and perform'd greater actions of valor, than many famous heroes record'd in history.

---

<sup>1</sup>A city long. 70. lat. 52.

## C H A P. LXI.

*Mourning for the death of the Mirza Muhamed Sultan: and the translation of his coffin.*

THE natural love which fathers bear towards their children, was not the only motive that afflicted Timur for the death of the Mirza; but the great things which this young prince's virtue promis'd, were the principal cause of his excessive grief: he flung his crown aside, and quitted his throne, rent his clothes, and cast himself upon the ground in the most surprizing transports of grief. This caus'd a great change in his temper: and in this delightful season of the spring, instead of being cheerful, the princes and lords of the court cloth'd themselves with hair-sicks, and black and blue habits, with sols about their necks. The ladys did the same; and they sprinkled earth upon their heads, and fill'd their bosoms with stones: they wou'd take no rest but upon char and ashes, instead of bedding: and nothing cou'd be heard in the court but groans and lamentations, especially from the princess Canike, wife of the deceas'd, who was so overcome with sorrow, that she often fell into swoons, and lost her senses.

Such is the stated course of affairs in this world; we shou'd not place our confidence in it, for those who do, will at last repent: but we belong to God, and must return to him. Timur order'd the Mirza's coffin to be convey'd in a litter to Avenic by two hundred horsemen, commanded by seven Emirs; and that

that when they arriv'd there, Quasid and Carpas Ordinencia shoo'd lay the corps in a new coffin, and carry it to the tomb of the prophet Cedar in the town of Salmi, from whence it was afterwards to be translated to Samareland: and he likewise gave order that the other five Emirs shoo'd lay at Avenir with a litter and an empty coffin, whose carrying shoo'd be call'd off.

After their departure Timur return'd to the camp, and then set out from the meadows of Alchcher to continue his journey. The grief was beyond comparison: and not only the officers, but even the soldiers of the army, never ceas'd from weeping. When they had march'd some days journey in this condition, the principal Emirs and ministers of state came to the emperor, and falling on their faces, remonstrated to him, that all the soldiers of the army continuall in such excessive grief, that nothing was ever like it; that the continuall of this grief did not become the majesty of so august a court; that it was better he shoo'd arm himself with patience, and endeavor to comfort his royal heart. *This* at last persuad'd Timur, tho' with great difficulty, to compose his mind, and live after his usual manner: so he gave orders for every one to leave off their mourning-habits, as being of no advantage to the deceas'd.

---

## CHAP. LXII.

### *Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.*

WHEN Timur's ambassadors, whom we before mention'd, were arriv'd at Grand-Cairo, they found a handsome reception. Far-  
VOL. II. Tudge,

Book V. judge, son of Barcoe, surnam'd Elmalekennas king of Egypt and Syria, having been inform'd all that had pass'd between Timur and Bajazet whom he had esteem'd the most powerful prince in the universe, was now convinc'd that it wou'd be wrong to think of dealing with Timur upon any other foot than that of an entire submission and perfect obedience; and he repented of the difficulty his father and himself had made of sending back Atilmich. He hereupon held a council with the principal persons of state; and with their approbation releas'd Atilmich out of prison, admitted him to an audience, treated him in an honorable manner, and made divers apologies for what he had done. He caus'd the money to be coin'd, and the prayers read in the angust name and titles of Timur; and sent back Atilmich, with two ambassadors, Ahmed and Aza, beseeching Atilmich to be his intercessor at the court. Farrudge order'd his ambassadors to make known to Timur his repentance for his former faults, his consent to pay the annual tribute, and what he had done in relation to the money and the public prayers. He sent as a present, by the same persons, abundance of gold and silver money, precious stones, belts, Alexandrian stufis, swords of Cairo, horses of a fine breed, and other curiosities.

As soon as they enter'd the frontiers of the Ottoman country, Atilmich set out before 'em for the court; and having the honor to salute the emperor, he inform'd his highness of the affairs of Egypt, and of the Sultan and people's fears. The ambassadors soon arriv'd at court; and being admitted to an audience, declar'd to the emperor the intentions of the Sultan their master, and offer'd their presents.

Timur was again pleas'd to shew his clemency <sup>Chap. 63.</sup> to the king of Egypt, and spoke to 'em as follows. "I know that Farrudge lost his father when very young : which will make it my glory to take care of this young prince, and be to him as a father. If he continues firm in his obediences, which is the only way of securing himself, we will give him testimonys of our benevolence, and grant him succours, with which he may preserve his kingdom, provided he zealously continues in the service of the two holy citys of Mecca and Medina." He afterwards presented vests, belts, and crowns to the ambassadors, and permitted 'em to return home ; giving 'em a crown, a royal mantle, and a belt curich'd with precious stones, for the Sultan Farrudge their master, to whom he promis'd his protection.

---

## C H A P. LXIII.

---

*Timur marches against the Caratatarz, or black Tartari.*

CARATATAR is a nation of Turks, which Hulacou Can<sup>1</sup> listed into his army when he was sent into Iran by Mangou Can, emperor of the Moguls. Hulacou being establish'd on the throne at Tauris, and having experience'd the malice of this wicked people, oblig'd 'em to reside with their family's in the frontiers of the two citys of Mecca and Medina.

A. D.  
1356

<sup>1</sup> All Mahometan princes take upon 'em the title of the servants of the two citys of Mecca and Medina.

<sup>2</sup> Brother of Mangou Can, and grandson of Genghis Can the great.

Book V. tiers of Anatolia and Syria. When by the death  
 of the grand Can Abouabdile<sup>1</sup>, there remain'd no  
 longer in Iran any absolute emperor of the race  
 of Genghis Can, this people revolted, and  
 divided themselves into fifty-two hords, every  
 hundred chusing a particular residence, being all  
 resolute to live independent. When Bojaret, af-  
 ter the reign of Cadi Burhaneddio at Sebaste,  
 was become master of this kingdom, he enroil'd  
 'em in the Ottoman army, and gave 'em a resi-  
 dence in his empire: and as there were no great  
 taxes or tribute to pay in these parts, these Tatars  
 enrich'd themselves, and became exceeding  
 powerful. But Timur, who design'd to make  
 'em change the place of their residence, and to  
 fix 'em in the colony's of Gere, that they might  
 repeople that country, treated their chiefs in an  
 honorable manner when they came to salute  
 him: he gave 'em robes wove with gold, belts  
 and swords of gold, with several largesses. As  
 no one insulted 'em in the least manner during  
 the whole course of this war, but suffer'd 'em to  
 continue quiet in their hords; this sufficiently  
 denoted that they were in obedience and subjec-  
 tion, or at least ought to have been so.

When the ambassadors of Egypt arriv'd at  
 court, Timur staid three days among the Ger-  
 tatars: and after having held a council, and ma-  
 turely deliberated about the ways of bringing his  
 enterprize to perfection, he resolv'd to remore  
 'em out of that country, and conduct 'em into  
 Transoxiana. But as there were between thirty  
 and forty family's of 'em, he order'd the Mirzas  
 and Emirs to surround 'em, each on their respec-

\* Son of Colabende king of Persia, and of the race of Genghis Can.

tye sides, so that none of 'em might get away, ~~but~~ but not to do 'em the least damage. Accordingly the Emir Géhab Chah, with the Emirs of the right wing, and the troops of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, took the road to Tocat and Amalia. The Emir Solyman Cinh, with those of the left wing, march'd by Cesarea and Sebasie: Timur went by the plains of Amalia and Cesarea, the residence of the Caratzars, and he sent the Mirza Charee, with the Sultan Husein, to cut off their passage, and hinder any one's flight.

The emperor having pass'd the bridge of Kitelisher, after several days march, arriv'd at the country of the Caratzars, whose chiefs he order'd to be call'd before him. There came two of 'em, Alhi Tebzree and Murvet: they kiss'd the ground before the emperor, who gave 'em a handsome reception, presented 'em with vests and belts wrought with gold, and swore he wou'd never do 'em the least harm. "It is a long while," says he, since your ancestors came out of the country of T'ourza, which was their ancient residence, into these foreign lands, by the orders of the emperors our predecessors. As all that vast country is at present govern'd by one master, God having brought it under my obedience, you ought to look upon this opportunity as very fortunate to you; and return from hence, with your wives, children, slaves, cattle, and other riches, under the convoy of our soldiers, to the country of your ancestors, where you may pass your life as nobly under the shadow of our protection."

<sup>1</sup> I believe it shou'd rather be *Acara*.

The chiefs return'd thanks to Timur, and assur'd him that they were ready to obey his orders with pleasure; that they look'd upon it as a piece of good fortune to be under his protection; and that they were resolv'd to spend their lives in his service. Timur order'd they shou'd be divided into companies and regiments, and distributed among the Emirs of the Tomans. Being thus made to decamp with their cattle, they began their march; they were prohibic peace, any sheep or horses, that they might be less embras'd in the roads, and that if they shou'd endeavor to fly, they might the better be prevented.

## C H A P. LXIV.

*Timur returns from Natolia.*

**T**IMUR was highly pleas'd with his conquest of Natolia, of which he was become the sole and sole monarch, without any opposition, and with the love of all the people; which great affair he had brought about by the strength of his arms and the valor of his soldiers, at the same time that he won the hearts of the people by his good conduct. This last conquest, by the divine assistance, was finish'd in less than a year; and thro' out all Asia Timur's name was stamp'd on their coins, and the prayers were read with his august titles.

For these reasons his majesty resolv'd to return to the seat of his empire: he caus'd the great standard to be display'd, and begin his march with all the army. He sent orders to the emperors Serai Mule Camum, Touman Aga, Tchel-

pan

pan Male Aga, and Caraide, mother of the Chapas-decess'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, to come and meet him as far as the borders of Avenic. This new emperor of the lesser Asia, being arriv'd at Cesarea in Cappadocia, the inhabitants fill'd with fear, conceal'd themselves in caverns: whereupon he sent Ali Sultan Tavachi, with a good troop of soldiers, in search of 'em; who having found 'em, they defended themselves against him, and shot him with an arrow in the Vena-cava, of which he dy'd upon the spot. Yet these rebels being vanquish'd and taken, Mehemed, brother of Ali Sultan, cou'd 'em all to be put to the sword, to revenge his death.

Afterwards Timur departed for Sebaste, where he confer'd several honors upon Cara Osman<sup>4</sup>, and sent him back into his principality. From thence he went to Arzendgian, where Tabarten, like a faithful servant, offer'd his presents to the emperor, of horses, cattel, and other things, nine of each sort. Tabarten follow'd the court two days journey: and then Timur, honoring him with a royal vest, permitted him to return home. He sent back the messenger who had brought advice of the emperiss departure from Sultavia, with orders that the princes shou'd hasten, that so they might arrive at Avenic before the ladys. Timur being come to Erzecom, was join'd by the Mirzas O-luc-Bec, Ibratum Sultan, Mehemed Gehanghir, Aidgei, and Sadvacca, his grand-children: he tenderly embrac'd 'em, and was over-joy'd to see 'em; but he cou'd not refrain from tears at the sight of the Mirzas Mehemed Gehanghir

\* Made governor of Sebaste by Timur when a Mahometan, he was son of the Oadi-Barhanettin, prince of Sebaste.

Book V. and Sadyacca, because of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan in their father's death.

## C H A P. LXV.

*The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, son of Ghanghur, was made known to Ganzade his mother.*

THE empresses who were set out from Sultanie, made preparations at Tauris for mourning for the Mirza Mehemed Sultan: they cloth'd themselves in black, and then came to Aseric, according to the emperor's orders. When they were inform'd that Timur was near the place, they acquainted the princess Ganzade with the death of her dear son: upon which she was so transported with grief, that she swoon'd away: and being a little recover'd, she rent her clothes, and twilling her hair about her fingers, began to pluck it off by degrees: she swoon'd, and tore her lovely cheeks with her nails: the swoon'd away the second time, observing all the ladies, whose heads were cover'd with black mantles, and who cou'd utter nothing but crys and lamentations.

Timur being encamp'd, they began their crys afresh; and nothing was to be seen more dismal than this court, which at other times was the gayest and most magnificent of all Asia. He order'd that to moderate the princess's affliction, the empty coffin, nail'd down very strongly, and fasten'd with a lock, shou'd be presented to her: she twisted her self round it, crying and groaning: " My eyes, said this disconsolate princess, were continually looking towards the public

public road, in expectation of some news of Chap 61.  
" my dear child, which wou'd have been the ~~~~~  
" delight of my soul. I did not expect this cru-  
" elty from fortune, this fatal dagger, which  
" thus breaks my heart at the sight of this cof-  
" fin. O deplorable condition! O wretched  
" Comrade! O unfortunate prince! thou wast  
" design'd for the throne of the empire of Iran;  
" but merciless fate has snatch'd the scepter from  
" thy hands. It is not without cause that a tor-  
" rent of blood gushes from my eyes, and I make  
" the earth red with my tears; since, my dear  
" son, thou hast thus pierc'd my heart in thy  
" tenderest age."

After this excess of mourning, Timur judg'd it proper to do something for the spiritual good of his soul, which lives as well in the other world as it did in this: he gave alms among the poor, and provided a funeral banquet. The Clerks, doctors, grandees and nobles of all Asia assem- bled together for this ceremony: they sat down according to their rank at the emperor's table; and a Hafiz, with a Nazir, the lecturers, read over the Alcoran several times. The banquet was serv'd up by the emperor's stewards: and the Mirza's bras-drum was beat, at which the ladies, the Emirs, and soldiers, as well masters as servants, on a sudden made a great cry, and wept bitterly; and then the drum was broke to pieces, according to the custom of the Moguls.

The doctors and Imams, who came from Tauris, Salcania, Cazuin, and other places, to salute the emperor at his return, and pay their compliments of condolence, endeavor'd in several conferences to comfort him and the princess: they forgot not any of Mahomet's counsels on this occasion, and strove to incite 'em to pa- tience, assuring 'em that the deceas'd were tor- manted

Book V. mented by the lamentations of their living relatives, and that it was hurtful to their souls. By the force of their eloquence, they perswaded the emperor to arm himself with patience against the assaults of affliction caus'd by so sad a misfortune. Timur then permitted in order to be issed out for leaving off the mourning-habits, black scarfs, hair-sacks, and other marks of grief. He loaded the doctors with favors and honors; and after having given 'em vestts, sent 'em back to their respective residencies.

*The end of the fifti book.*

---

BOOK

## BOOK VI.

*A war in Georgia. Timur's return from a campaign of seven years. The defeat and pursuit of Eskender Cheiki, prince of the race of the antient Persians. Timur's departure for the conquest of China. His death at Otrar near the river Jaxartes, and his interment at Samarcand. The strange revolutions which happen'd after his death. The Mirza Calil Sultan his grandson, son of Miran Chab, usurps the crown ; and the ruin of that prince occasion'd by his prodigality, and passion for a woman.*

## C H A P. L

*Timur marches into Georgia.*

**T**IMUR-BECK's greatest ambition being to merit the happiness promis'd to those who wage war with the infidels for the advancement of religion ; and Ghourghin king of Georgia, having fail'd in the prin-

Book VI. principal article of the treaty made the preceding year, which was to have come at a fixed time to call himself at the emperor's feet, and beg pardon : his highness took up a resolution to march again into his country. To this end, he departed towards Mencoul, where he receiv'd the submissions of Malek Ila prince of Merdin<sup>1</sup>, who repenting of his fault in not coming before to pay his homage, and knowing he shou'd be mur'd if he lost Timur's favor, confidently set out to come to court : where he presently address'd himself to the Mirza Chzroe, whose protection he besought. This Mirza brought him to the throne, where with his head uncover'd, like a criminal, he beg'd pardon on his knees. Timur having reprimanded him, forgave his fault, and consoled him by his usual promises. This prince brought the tribute for several years past, which he paid exactly, and made abundance of handsome presents. The emperor gave him a crown, a royal vest, and a belt set with precious stones ; and as an addition to the former dignities confer'd on him, his daughter was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboubeire, and so he had the honor to be ally'd to Timur.

At the same time Youam grandson of Achouga, a Georgian prince, came to pay his homage to the emperor, and made several presents of curious animals and fine horses ; being introduce'd by the great Emirs, with Custendil, brother of Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia, who was at war with him. There came also the lords and princes of all the neighboring places, to pay their respects, and offer their pre-

<sup>1</sup> A strong city and a principality, near the Tigris, in Mesopotamia.

sent. Timur receiv'd 'em with all manner of civility according to their birth and quality: he call'd 'em at his favor, and presenting 'em with veils, sent 'em back to their respective countries.

---

## C H A P. II.

*The government of Chiraz a second time given to the Mirza Pir Mohamed, son of Omar Cheik; and that of Ispahan to his brother the Mirza Rouslem.*

**I**N the neighborhood of Mençoul, Timur again invested the Mirza Pir Mohamed, son of Omar Cheik, in the government of the royal city of Chiraz, capital of Persia, for which he issu'd out his letter-patent; and made the Mirza set out for that country, after having given him a vest and a belt, and arm'd for his ministers Lutfallah, son of Beyan Temour, son of Aebouga, and Tchel Banchat Berlus<sup>1</sup>.

Then he dispatch'd orders to the Mirza Rouslem at Chiraz to come to court. The messenger found him in the summer-quarters of the palace of Cazirer, and deliver'd his commission. The Mirza immediately set out, and being arriv'd at Cansar, a place dependent on Gierbadecan, he receiv'd a paquet from court, by which he learnt that the emperor had given him the government of Ispahan<sup>2</sup>, ordering

---

<sup>1</sup> Two old men of great experience and worth.

<sup>2</sup> Capital of Hircania or Ilio-Agaz, where the king of Persia at present resides.

Book VI. him to send his baggage thither, and go to Ouroudgerd to rebuild the fortres of Ormyan. The Mirza Pir Mehemed, who was sent to Chiraz, also arriv'd at Canar. These two brothers tenderly embrac'd each other, and entertain'd themselves with conversation on the present state of affairs; and afterwards they separated, and took their respective roads. The Mirza Pir Mehemed departed for Chiraz; and Rouslem, having sent a lieutenant to govern Ispahan in his absence, went with expedition to Ouroudgerd, the fortres of which he rebuilt, and repeopled the city.

---

### C H A P. III.

*Timur sends the Mirza Aboubeccre to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Irac-Arabi and Diarbekir.*

WHEN the court was arriv'd in the neighbourhood of Cars<sup>1</sup>, Timur order'd the princes his children, and the great lords of the state to come before him; and then made the following speech to 'em. "The war which the inhabitants of Bagdad have heretofore undertaken against us, having been obstinately continu'd by them, has been the cause of the desolation of their state, our vengeance having drawn upon 'em a total ruin. Nevertheless, if we consider that this is one of the principal cities in the Mahometan world, that the knowledg of the law deduces its origin

---

\* A city of Armenia near Georgia.

“ from thence, and that the doctors of other Chapp. 3  
“ country’s have drawn from this source the  
“ most sacred parts of religion, and the most  
“ useful learning; it won’d be a crime utterly  
“ to destroy this famous city: wh: before we  
“ design to re-instate it in its former flourish-  
“ ing condition, that it may ag:in become the  
“ seat of justice, and the tribunal both of rel-  
“ gion and law.”

The emperor’s speech being universally ap-  
plauded, he exulted the execution of this com-  
mendable project with the Mirza Aboubecre,  
giving him the government of the provinces of  
Irak-Arabi, as far as Vafet, Bafis, Candras,  
Hieridit, Diarbekir, Oirat, with all their de-  
pendences; and appointing for the great officers  
of his court the Emirs Payende Sultan, Pir Hul-  
sem Beris, Sevjudje, Sultan Sendger, Hadgi  
Sevreddin, Dole: Coja Einac, and others, with  
a great body of the army. Timur order’d the  
lords of Irak-Arabi to obey him, and mark’d  
out his road by the province of Diarbekir: he  
strictly enjoin’d him to extirpate all the  
disturbers of the publick peace, who remain’d in  
that country, and to be in Irak-Arabi in the  
autumn, when the equinox renders the air more  
temperate. The emperor likewise instructed  
him to begin with subduing Cara Yonief Tur-  
coman, who had made himself master of Irak-  
Arabi, and afterwards to encourage and com-  
fort the inhabitants of the country, that they  
might rebuild their houses, and cultivate the  
lands; and in fine to employ all his care in  
restoring Bagdad in its former splendor, that  
the following year there might depart people  
enough out of that city, to form a caravan for  
Mecca.

With regard to Cara Yousef Turcoman, and his usurpation, we must know that that prince, for fear of our troops, fled into the country of Roum or Anatolia; but when our army arriv'd at Cusarea, he again fled from thence into Iraq-Arabi, where having assembled all the Turcoman hords, he stop'd at Payen-Hit. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair at that time went out of Bagdad, and retir'd to the Sultan 'Taher his son; but the Aga Firooz, in whom the Sultan Taher repos'd the care of his affairs, excited a jealousy in his master: whereupon he held a council with his father's Emirs, Mohamed Bel governor of Orm, the Emir Ali Calander, Micyl, and Fazae Chah, who likewise forswore the Sultan Ahmed, and unanimously agreed to revolt; and having pass'd the bridge during night, they encamp'd on this side the river. When the Sultan Ahmed was inform'd of it, he broke down the bridge, and marching along the bank of the river, hop'd in presence of his son and the Emirs: he sent an express to Cara Yousef to come and join him; which Yousef having done, they pass'd the river together. The two army's being rang'd in order, a battel ensu'd, in which the Sultan Taher was vanquish'd: he endeavour'd to fly; but coming to a brook, and striving to make his horse leap over it, he fell in with his horse and armor, and perish'd.

The Sultan Taher having been thus punish'd for his revolt against his father, his Emirs and troops dispers'd; and the Sultan Ahmed, growing jealous of Cara Yousef, went to Bagdad. Cara Yousef came out of Hille with his army to the gates of Bagdad, and took the city. The Sultan Ahmed hid himself to save his life, but was perceiv'd by one nam'd Cara Hassao, who assisted him in making his escape during the night;

night; and taking him upon his shoulders <sup>Chap. 3.</sup> brought him to a place near five leagues distance. On their way they met a man who had an ox, which the Sultan mounted, and went to Teeric with Cara Hissar. Sarec Omar Oirat, governor of that place, made a present of forty horses to the Sultan Ahmed, with what money, arms, stuffs, and belts he was able. The Sultan was join'd in this city by several of his officers, as the Cheik Marlood, Dolat Yar, Adol, and others. From Teeric he went to Damacus, while Cara Youcef became the peaceable possessor of Irac-Arabi. This digression was necessary for the better understanding of the history.

When Timur therefore made the Mirza Abou-beere depart for Bagdad, he sent orders to the Mirza Roustem at Ouroudgerd, to join Abou-beere before Bagdad, and march with him against Cara Youcef. The Emirs Troukel Arus Bouza of Hamadan, Tamun-Soutch of Nchavend, Cich Roustem of Sendgjar and of Dina-ver, had likewise orders to march to Bagdad with the Mirza Roustem. The Mirza Abou-beere arriv'd at Arbelic, and caus'd the governor Adol, and the other chiefs of the rebels, to be sent and sent bound to court, with a present of Arabian horses, the care of which he gave to A Sultan. At this place died Payen-de Sultan Berlas, and the Mirza Abou-beere having left the baggage, march'd with expedition against Cara Youcef. The Mirza Roustem departed from Ouroudgerd, according to orders; and having taken the road to the dome of Ibrahim-Lic, he pass'd to Bagdad, and join'd the Mirza Abou-beere in the neighborhood of Hille.

## C H A P. IV.

*Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.*

TIMUR having decamp'd from the neighborhood of Cars, entered Georgia. After having pass'd thro Armenia, the Cheik Ibrahim prince of Churvan, as a faithful servant, was gone before to make inroads into the enemy's country, and had already seiz'd on some passages and defiles. Malek Ghourghin, king of Georgia, heard with a great deal of surprise of the march of the imperial standard. Fearing excited him to send ambassadors to court with several presents; and the subject of the embassy was compris'd in this speech.

" There is no comparison, great Sir, between  
 " you and me, who am your slave; and it is  
 " very astonishing that you shou'd have pro-  
 " pos'd to march against so mean a subject as  
 " I am, who am absolutely resolv'd to be-  
 " have my self as your faithful servant; and  
 " on the first order I shall receive from your of-  
 " ficer, whether to send in money, or to march  
 " at the head of my troops in your service, I  
 " will not fail of acquitting my self faithfully  
 " and readily. I have not the confidence to  
 " come down directly to cast my self at the foot  
 " of your throne, for fear has too far seiz'd my  
 " heart; but if your highness shall please to grant  
 " me a short reprieve, till my fear is blown over,  
 " I will run to kiss your feet, as the prince of  
 " Mardin, and other governors have done; and  
 " I shall have the honor to prostrate my self be-  
 " fore you, and receive your orders as a slave, ac-  
 " knowledging this favor as an excess of your  
 " bounty."

Timur

Timur would not hearken to what the amba<sup>4</sup>  
assadors said, nor receive their presents; he  
told 'em, that their master's cause was no way  
like that of the other princes, who were Moha-  
madians, because the interest of religion pleaded  
for them, and render'd their cause more pardon-  
able; but he being a Christian, ought not to ex-  
pect the same favor; that if he was a demon of  
lie, he must come directly to court by it the  
grace of God, should not give him sufficient  
assistance to enable him to embray the Moha-  
madian religion, he wou'd impale the tributaries  
of the Cadiq<sup>5</sup> on him, leave him once more  
the principality of his country, send him back  
contented, and suffer his subjects to live in  
peace, without fear of being either murder'd,  
pillag'd, or made slaves; and thus his honor  
and reputation wou'd remain unblam'd. He  
likewise told 'em, that the empereor of Constan-  
tinople, as a Christian, was on the same footing  
with him; that if Ghourghis had come to court,  
he wou'd have learnt how that prince had been  
treated, and what favors he had receiv'd, and  
that he ought to judge of his own case by the  
other; but if their master wou'd make the least diffi-  
culty of coming, none of his excuses shd be  
accepted. At length the ambassadors  
dismiss'd.

About this time Ezen Cogdun, governor  
of Tauris, came to court with the comptroller  
and great officers of Azerbijan: they offered  
their presents consisting of a great number of  
horses, animals, and other things. Ali-Cha-  
chuk, chief of the Dervs of Cossiana, for the  
Caja Ali Semtani, came also to offer his pres-

\* A sume which the Mohammedan princes exact from the  
Christians or Jews who inhabit their dominions.

Book VI. sents, which were distributed among the officers.

The season for the corn-harvest in Georgia approaching, it was requisite that the Georgians shou'd be hinder'd from reaping and carrying it in; whereupon Timur order'd the Emir Cheik Nourreddin, and other Emirs, to enter the enemy's country forthwith: in effect, they chas'd out all the inhabitants, and destroy'd every thing with fire and sword; they reap'd all the corn and pulse, which they ground into meal, and so return'd laden with spoils to the imperial camp.

## C H A P. V.

### *The taking of the famous castle of Cartese in Georgia.*

THERE is a steep mountain in Georgia, a hundred and fifty cubits high, situate between two very deep defiles: on the south of it is a rock, which surpasses it in height, and which they ascend with ladders and cords. There is but one way to this mountain, and that very narrow and crooked; besides, the precipices which surround it hinder an army from encamping and besieging it. The Georgians had fortify'd this mountain on all sides, having built houses upon it, and a gate at the very extremity, with cisterns to preserve rain-water. It was commanded by a Georgian prince name'd Tral, who had under him thirty great Olsours, and a strong garrison; they were not apprehensive of any scarcity, their cisterns being fill'd with water, their cellars furnish'd with delicious

cleous wines, and the place stor'd with swine and sheep.

Timur being appri'd of the importance of this place, resolv'd to take it, notwithstanding the great difficultys which wou'd attend the siege, as it was in the midst of the enemy's country, and wou'd require a great number of soldiers to carry it on, who wou'd not be able to find victuals and even water enough for 'em. Every one was surpriz'd at this undertaking, and believ'd it impossible to take the place: unless the sole intent of Timur, who design'd to go thero in person, shou'd seize the hearts of the besieg'd, and make 'em surrender: but God had otherwise order'd it.

The imperial standard arriv'd before the castle of Corteno on the 14th of Muharrem 806. The inhabitants immediately sent to salute the emperor, offer him their presents, and assure him of their submision; but seeing their fortess cou'd not hinder the place being attack'd, they confid in the strength of their walls, and declar'd war by a discharge of arrows and stones. Timur at the same time order'd the Emirs to take their posts round about the place: the Emir Chamelic was fix'd on the side of the gate, having orders to build sconces over-against it: two other Emirs had likewise orders to erect two sconces in different places. This was done, that if the siege shou'd last too long, a garrison might be put in 'em, to incommodate the place. Chamelic finish'd in three days one of these sconces capable to contain three thousand men; which excited the admiration of the whole army.

Timur encamp'd behind the fortess in a place proper to build battering-rams and other machines, and order'd a platform of stone and wood, which he call'd *Meljour*, to be built betwixt his

Book VI. camp and the castles, & high that is shou'd command the place, tho' the Georgians had imagin'd that the height of their mountain wou'd have preserv'd 'em from all manner of insults. This work was not finish'd in less than a week, and on the 21<sup>st</sup> of May Muzzenem, a Mecite, nam'd Bokidek, who was skilful in marching over mountains, found means during night to get upon 'em upon a rough, smooth of the castle; there he caught a goat, and攀'd up to the very top of the rock, where having kill'd it, he plac'd it for a signal, and then descended without being discover'd by the Georgians. Next day Bokidek told his brethren to the superiour who applaud'd him, and gave orders for some very long cords to be made of raw silk & coir thread, & long ladders to be made of the cords; and then he left Muzzenem immediately & accompanied this took, and hiev'd up the ladders with long staves. On the 22<sup>nd</sup> of May Muzzenem, and his design was executed; they mounted by an arch, which a goat cou'd scarcely pass, on a tree having grown out of the very ridge of this rock, they rais'd the ladders to it, where they had drawn 'em up. The Turk Cimelic is at the bottom of the hill-side, and in the first of the brazen Tents of Corrasim, stand, where primo he took down in writing: Argoudar was 400 fms. The Georgians were all asleep whil'st these things were passing. At break of day a Corallian came out with a loud voice, Allah Leber, and bles'd Mahomet. Malamond, an officer of the Kissa Castle, at the same time sound'd his trumpet; and the Georgians surpris'd at the alarm given 'em by the watch, ran to their arms to defend themselves. Timur took horse, pass'd the defile, and stopp'd over-against the rock, which our brave men had mount'd; he

order'd the beate drum to be beat, and the Chap. 5.  
great cry Sonqut made thro'out the whole army.

In the mean while, the way to the place by the rock being very narrow and dangerous, no more than three persons being able to march in front, one of our brave warriors march'd foremost, holding his buckler before him; he was surround'd by two others, who advanc'd with him, but an arrow struck him in the mouth, which made him fall backwards, and the enemy seiz'd on his buckler. Abillah Seluanari advanc'd sword in hand, and slew some Georgians, till being mortally wounded in ten or twelve places, he fell down thus a captive. The Turk Mahomed fell upon the enemy with a heavy club, with which he broke the leg of a very considerable Officer. In one of the fifty men who had march'd to the assault, several arm'd at the gate of the castle, where a bloody skirmish ensu'd. Some also contriv'd to attack the place from the ditch before mention'd. So that the gate was brake, and the troops enter'd the castle.

This conquest happen'd the 3d of Muharram, Aug. 22.  
after a siege of nine days. The besieg'd try'd to barter on their terms: but most of the Officers or officers were precipitated from the walls: the governor, Tsal, was bound and carry'd to the imperial camp with the whole garrison, of whom not one escap'd. At the same time the Tenge<sup>1</sup> and standard of Mahomet was errected upon the walls; and the Moslem repeated the prayers of the Alcoran on the top of the church, and made the cry Yran, which is

<sup>1</sup> A Standard on whose top is a boar's head.

Book VI. us'd to call the Mahometans to prayer. This conquest deserves to be recorded in history; and it is reported that the great Mahmoud Subestekin never gain'd so considerable victory over the infidels of India, as our conqueror did over those of Georgia. Timur order'd Tral and all the garrison to be beheaded, and their wives and children carry'd away captive; and he gave Tral's wife as a present to tho Cheik Ibrahim, prince of Chirvan.

Timur afterwards order'd the machines, and Metjour, which had been erected against the place, to be burnt; and he return'd to his camp, where he heap'd honors and favors on Bilkidgek and the other brave men who had first mounted the rock; he order'd many out of his treasury to be distributed among 'em, and gave 'em robes, sabres, belts, horses, mules, tents, umbrellas, young women, camels, furniture, and even gardens and villages in their respective countrys. He invested Mehemed Touran, surnam'd the king of Bouran, who was one of the principal lords of Corassians, in the government of the place, assigning him a good garrison of Corassians: he gave him the revenue of the neighboring countrys, and enjoin'd him to preserv'e these frontiers for the Mussulmans, and not permit the Georgians to gain any more footing in the country; he order'd him to convert the church into a mosque, and build a niche in it instead of the altar, and in lieu of bells and crosses, to establish Muzeins and readers of the Alcoran, according to the Mussulman law.

## C H A P. VI.

*Relation of what pass'd without during this siege.*

DURING these transactions, the doctor Cotobeddin Carini came to court with all the great officers of Chiraz: he offer'd several presents of the finest stuffs, Arabian horses, mules for riding, and furniture, as pavilions, tents, umbrellas, and other curious things. Afterwards Hadgi Muzaffer arriv'd from the Mirza Ronstein, and made his presents. The Coja Muzaffer Nehenzi also came from Ispahan, and presented a great quantity of money, pearls, precious stones, horses, saddled mules, stuffs, tents and pavilions, as likewise droves of horses and mules of carriage, with arms, and vessels and boxes of gold and silver. Timur distributed all these presents among the princes and lords of his court.

About the same time Idecon Berlar and Ahmed Daood, who had been sent to Kirman, to receive and take care of the imperial treasures, as also Seifal Mulouk Hadgi Abdalla, receiver-general, return'd to the imperial camp: they had an audience of the emperor, who gave 'em a handsom reception, and to whom they offer'd their presents after the usual manner: they were accompany'd by the principal inhabitants of Kirman, and among others by Moulana Zeyaddin Serradge, the Cheik Sedreddin, who were both Cadi, the Seid Hamza, and the Cheik Mahmoud Zendghi Adgem, author of the book call'd Dgiouch or Khourouch, which treat's of

the

Book VI. the exploits of the glorious Timur; but this learned author has the misfortune to fall from off the bridge of Tolis, which is built over the river Cyrus, and be drown'd: his son, who contyn'd that work after his father's death, paid his respects to the emperor, who receiv'd him with a great deal of kindness, and countenanc'd him by his favors for his father's death.

Yousuf Géil, Detoga of the city of Acul, and Cayaseddin Salar Senniul, remaing'r-general of the revenues of the same city, as well as the commissaries of the Divan of Yerd, came up to court; as did all the great officers, and governors of the several provinces and cities of Corellia and the two Ircs, who paid their homage at the foot of the imperial throne, and offer'd their presents, which consisted of the greatest curiosities of all Asia.

---

## CHAP. VII.

### Timur marches to Abkhaze.

AFTER the taking of Corene, Timur summon'd the lords to a diet, where he made a magnificent banquett, and distributed his favors among the officers, according to their ranks. He then too up a resolution to march to Abkhaze: he order'd the Emirs Cheik Noureddin, Chaneelik, and others, to set out before with several squadrons, to ravage and lay waste Georgia, as far as Abkhaze, which is the northern frontier of that kingdom. They accordingly began their march; but as the ways were full of woogs, the soldiers were oblig'd to cut down the trees to open a passage; and they march'd

ruin'd every thing they met with in the country's Chap. 2.  
of the Armenians and Georgians. They were follow'd by the imperial standard; and Timur soon after enter'd into the middle of Georgia, where he plunder'd sever hundred towns and villages, laying waste the cultivated lands, ruin-ing the monasteries of the Christians, and raz-ing their churches to the very foundation, which were built of marble and fre-stone.

But the Georgians having abandon'd their houses, were retir'd into caverns situate among rocks and high mountains, which they had ascended by ladders, which they drew up after 'em; and had fortify'd themselves in these caverns. Timur order'd a sort of boxes to be tied with chains, in each of which he plac'd several persons arm'd; these boxes were let down from the top of the mountain with great cords to the level of the cavern, where our dauntless soldiers attack'd the enemy with their arrows, and advanc'd to the mouths of the caverns with their swords and lances. They made their way into 'em notwithstanding the number of the enemys, and the advantage of their post; and tho in some of those caverns there were near a hundred Georgians, yet they leap'd out of their boxes into them, where they put all to the sword, making themselves masters of their spoils, and acquiring the merit of the *Garre*. They punctually fulfill'd the Alcoran, which enjoins us to treat the enemy of the Moschman religion with rigor; and they rooted up and burnt the trees, making havock every where.

The 15th of Rabie-level 806, the Emirs and Oghob. 22. troops rejoin'd the imperial camp; next day they all pursued the chase, and took a great deal of game. Timur banish'd the day after, and continu'd to ruin the country, slaying all the Georgians he met,

## C H A P. VIII.

*Timur returns from Abkhaze. The cause of his return.*

SEVERAL Georgian lords, who were slaves in Timur's army, having sent advice to king Ghourghiu that this conqueror had render'd himself master of the country as far as Abkhaze, and that there remain'd no footholds either of Armeniæ, or of the Armenians; that prince was seiz'd with fear, because this advice came from men of his own nation: whereupon he immediately sent ambassadors with presents to Timur. The remonstrance the Georgian slaves made to Ghourghiu on this occasion, resembles the counsel the bishop of Nedgeran gave to his own people in the time of Mahomet. There goes a tradition that the inhabitants of Nedgeran being come to Medina, were so stubborn and proud as to dispute with Mahomet, and not receive the instructions he wou'd have taught 'em. Then the lord Ali, with Mahomet's daughter Fatima, and two grandsons Hassan and Hosslein, came to the assembly to dispute with the Christian bishop: but this doctor, being surpriz'd at what he saw, far from disputing, said, " The men I now behold have their faces irradiated: if they shou'd beseech God to remove the mountains of the place, he wou'd assuredly grant their request; and if they shou'd be suffer'd to offer up their prayers against the Christians, not one of 'em wou'd remain alive." These words of the bishop struck terror into the Christians, who consented

ed to pay the annual tribute; after which they return'd to Nedgeran, because their bishop had on this occasion seen the lords of Mahomet's family transform'd into angelical beautys. It seems as if some such vision had engag'd the Georgian slaves to write thus to Malek Ghourghin.

When the ambassadors of the king of Georgia were arriv'd at court, they address'd themselves to the generals of the army, and besough: 'em to intercede for them, humbly remonstrating that their master was perfectly submissive and obedient; beseeching 'em to employ their good offices to appease Timur's wrath, and obtain pardon for their master, who wou'd not fail of rendering immediately to court all his riches and curiosities, and likewise the annual tribute; and even promising that he shou'd send to the imperial camp, whenever he had orders so to do, the troops which shou'd be requir'd of him.

This discourse touch'd the Emirs, who introduc'd the ambassadors into Timur's presence, who gave an account of the subject of their embassy as usual: and the generals having found a favorable opportunity, on their knees related to Timur Malek Ghourghin's propositions, and spoke to him as follows.

" It is certain that your highness's intention in all your wars is only the increase and honor of the Mahometan religion: we see that God has bless'd your zeal in such a manner, that the Mussulman law has never before arriv'd at so high a pitch of glory in these countrys, for former emperors, and the most powerful Sultans of antiquity, accounted themselves happy when the Georgians gave only a few marks of their respect and obedience, either by sending a yearly present of horses,

Book VI. " or by furnishing a small number of troops, " when their occasions requir'd 'em in some " war : and on these conditions the Georgians " liv'd freely in Persia and the Musulman " kingdoms. But at present, thro' your high- " ness's great power, they esteem themselves " happy, even in being shut up within the far- "thest parts of their kingdom, as long as they " have quarter granted 'em for their lives. The " Musulmans have enter'd their capital cities, " and enjoy themselves there, as if they were " the masters of 'em. And thus, if your high- " ness will grant 'em quarter on paying the " tribute, and exactly obeying your orders, they " will become faithful servants, and acquit " themselves of their duty with entire submission " and sincerity."

All the Emirs cou'd say, was not able to abate the emperor's zeal for the continuance of the Gazzic ; which oblig'd these lords to propose the affair to the doctors of the law and to the Mufrik, who unanimously declar'd in the imperial council, that since the Georgians consented to pay the tribute, and not to injure the Musulmans, they were oblig'd by their law to grant 'em quarter, without doing 'em any further harm either by slaughter or pillaging. According to the conclusion of the doctors, and in condescension to the prayers of the Emirs, Timur granted this favor to the Cheik Ibrahim, one of the intercessors ; and nodded to him, in token that in respect to him he condescended to the request of king Ghourghiu. He sent back the Georgian ambassadors between hope and fear : and afterwards he spent several days in these quarters in the diversion of the chace, till the return of the ambassadors, which happen'd soon. When they came back, they brought with 'em

'em a thousand gold medals struck in the name Chingis,<sup>9</sup> and a thousand of Timur, with a thousand horsemen, and great quantitys of curious stuffs, as also vessels of gold, silver and chrystral, and a very fine balas ruby, of a beautiful color, weighing eighteen Medievalles, there being few which weigh so much. They presented the whole, and oideg'd themselves by an oath to pay the tribute.

Then Timur prepar'd to return home; he decamp'd, and after some days march arriv'd at Tefit, having ruin'd all the churches and monasterys in the neighboring parts. When he had gone twentys journey beyond the river of Cyrus, he resolv'd to march to Carabagh to rebuild the town of Bala-can: he set out before with some of his favorite lords, and having pass'd by Borda, encamp'd near Bala-can, where he was joind a fortnight after by the army and baggage, who also encamp'd there.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*Timur orders the town of Bala-can to be rebuilt.*

THE Alcoran remarks, that the rebuilding of places is one of the most glorious actions which princes can perform in this world, and which conduces most to the good of society. When the army decamp'd in autumn, Timur was invited to take up his winter-quarters at Carabagh, where, not to lose time, and to keep the troops in action, he resolv'd to rebuild the town of Bala-can, which had been a long time ruin'd, so that it was inhabited only by insects, leath-

Book VI. owls, serpents and scorpions. Tho' the season was very cold, and the rains continually molested our soldiers, yet Timur soon after his arrival gave orders to the engineers and architects to draw the plan of the town, which shou'd consist of a wall, a ditch, four market-places, and a great number of houses, baths, caravanseras, squares, gardens, and other commodious places. They laid the foundations, and having mark'd 'em with lines, the emperor divided the work among the soldiers, under the inspection of the Chahzades<sup>1</sup> and Emirs. They wrought with so much diligence, that the buildings which were of brick, were finish'd in a month: the circumference of the walls was two thousand four hundred cubits of large measure, the thickness eleven cubits, and the height fifteen: the ditch was thirty cubits broad, and twenty wide: at each corner of the place was a great bastion, and in the middle of each courtine was a gallery with battlements, and a machine to cast stones. In fine, this prodigious undertaking, which the greatest emperors of antiquity were never able to finish in a year, was compleated in a month, notwithstanding the excessive cold and rains: the readiness with which Timur's orders were obey'd, was abundantly more surprizing than the execution of so vast a project. Never prince carry'd a more majestic and terrible air in his wrath; nor yet a more sweet and agreeable one, when he was pleas'd to bellow his favors.

Timur gave the government of Balacon, Berdas, Ghendgeh, the country of Arzan, Armenia, Georgia, and Trebizond, to the Mirza Calif

<sup>1</sup> Chahzade, or Mirza, is the son or grandson of a king or emperor.

Sultan. He honor'd Gelselisland's brother, Olegznam'd Bohramsha, with the particular government of the town of Balaclan. And as water is what principally renders a country flourishing, insomuch as it makes the land fertile, and nourishes the animals and vegetables; Timur form'd a design of cutting a canal, thro' which to convey the water of the river Araxes into Balaclan. He issul'd out his orders to that effect, and the principal lords prepar'd themselves to put 'em in execution; the Tatars divided the ground the canal was to take up among the soldiers, which was six leagues in length, and fifteen cubits in breadth. The whole was built in about a month: and it is one of the most magnificent monuments of Timur's grandeur and power.

---

## C H A P. X.

*Timur sends intendants and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favor among the people.*

DURING Timur's stay at Balaclan, the principal lords of Iran and Fouran came to court with all possible magnificence, where an assembly of the most learned men was held. The emperor, who was very curious in having the chief questions of the law explain'd, and the distinction between positive command and that which contain only matter of advice, propos'd the most subtle and profitable controversy.

Book VI. One day the conversation fell very a-propos upon Mahomet's advice, wherein he tells us that God orders the princes of this world to practise justice and beneficence: the pious Timur attended to what was said, and seriously reflecting on it, wou'd not suffer this question to be ended by discourse only, but resolv'd to acquire the merits of it by practising good works: and then he spake to 'em as follows.

" Kings have always taken the counsel of doctors, when they excite 'em to do good, and strive to turn 'em from evil; how comes it then that you are silent, and neglect to tell me what I ought to do, and what I ought to omit the performance of?"

Then all the learned men modestly made answer, that his highness did not stand in need of the counsels of persons of their condition; but that on the contrary, others ought to learn how to conduct themselves by imitating his example.

Timur told 'em, he did not approve this sort of compliments, by which they might expect to gain his favor; and that what he had said was neither throwain-glory or interest: " For thro' the protection of God, says he, I am too great a lord in this world, to stand in need of such trifles; but my design in this results from the reflection I have made, that each of you coming from a different kingdom, must without doubt be inform'd of the affairs which pass there, and of the good or bad conduct of the Derogas, and commissarys of the Divan. Communicate therefore to me what you know, and tell me whether the governors and officers observe justice and the commands of the law as they ought; that being inform'd of the evils they commit, I may remedy 'em, and deliver the weak from oppression."

Immediately all the doctors freely declar'd Chap. 10.  
their sentiments, applauding the emperor's in- ~~the~~  
tention: and they represented to his highness  
the condition the affairs of their respective pro-  
vinces were in. Whereupon this just emperor  
made choice of the most learned among 'em, and  
those who were most vers'd in the laws of their  
country; and he nam'd an intendant to go with  
each of 'em, to whom he gave a full power to  
make laws or to dispense with 'em, always ap-  
proving whatever he shou'd do in relation to jus-  
tice and the observation of the laws; so that  
right might be administer'd to those who were  
oppress'd thro-out all the kingdoms and pro-  
vinces of his empire: likewise permitting these  
intendants to take out of the revenues of the impe-  
rial treasury of each country, what sums had been  
extorted from poor persons by violence against  
the ordinary rules, and to restore the same to 'em;  
and also to punish the tyrants in an exemplary  
manner: moreover they were order'd to register  
exactly every thing that shou'd pass during their  
commission, and at their return to give an ac-  
count of it; that by this means the causes of  
vexation being entirely rooted out of the em-  
pire, the people may live in quiet and tran-  
quillity. Then Timur made this memorable  
speech.

" My heart hath always been set upon the  
" enlarging the limits of my vast empire: but  
" now I take up a resolution to use all my care  
" in procuring quiet and security to my subjects,  
" and to render my kingdoms flourishing. I  
" will that private persons address their re-  
" quests and complaints immediately to my  
" self; that they give me their advice for the  
" good of the Mussulman, the glory of the  
" faith, and the extirpation of the wicked dis-  
" turbers

¶¶¶¶¶ VI. " members of the public quiet. I am unwilling  
 " that at the day of judgment my poor op-  
 " press'd subjects shou'd cry out for vengeance  
 " against me: I am not desirous that any of  
 " my brave soldiers, who have so often expos'd  
 " their lives in my service, shou'd complain a-  
 " gainst me of fortune; for their afflictions  
 " touch me more than they do them. Let  
 " none of my subjects fear to come before me  
 " with his complaints; for my design is that  
 " the world shou'd become a paradise under my  
 " reign, knowing that when a prince is just and  
 " merciful, his kingdom is crown'd with blessings  
 " and honors. In fine, I desire to lay up a  
 " treasure of justice, that my soul may be happy  
 " after my death."

This speech of Timur, in which his piety  
 is much to be admir'd, was taken down by a  
 lord who was present at the assembly, and who  
 wrote at the bottom of it these words of the Al-  
 coran, *We give testimony only to what we have seen.*  
 After this the whole assembly lifted up their  
 hands to heaven, and offer'd the following  
 prayer: " O God, who art the lord both of  
 " this world and of the next, grant an ever-  
 " lasting reign to this just prince; hearken to  
 " his righteous petitions: and as thou hast sub-  
 " jected the universe to him, after a long and  
 " prosperous reign in this world, let him reign  
 " with thee in glory in the other."

CHAP. XI.

*Continuation of the history of the princes who  
were gone into Irac-Arabi.*

THE Mirza Roustem having join'd the Mirza Aboubecre near Hille, as already mention'd, these two princes, who were the Roustem and Esfendiar<sup>1</sup> of the age, pass'd the river together, and met Cara Yousef Tucumani<sup>2</sup> over-against the town of Sîr, on the bank of the river Nahr-e-ganî, below Hille. They had then but three thousand men, while Cara Yousef had entrench'd himself on the other side of the river with a numerous army, ready to give battle: and as the Mirza Roustem, being chief, ought to have had the first rank, the Mirza Aboubecre prudently advise'd him to take his post in the main-body; but the Mirza Roustem answer'd him, that he was only come to bring succours according to the orders given him; that it was better to separate the army into two bodies, that they might each command one, and so attack the enemy on both sides. In effect, the Mirza Roustem cross'd the water, and attack'd Cara Yousef with all imaginable resolution; and the Mirza Aboubecre did the same on his part: the attack was brave on our side, and as vigorously sustain'd on the other. In the battle, Yar Ali, brother of Cara Yousef, was shot off his horse with an arrow, and our men immediately

<sup>1</sup> Two famous heroes mention'd in the oriental romances.  
<sup>2</sup> Prince of the Accopulus, or white lily.

Book VI. cut off his head. The Emir Sevindigie distingh'd himself bravely on this occasion, and contributed very much to the defeat of the enemy. Cara Yousef fled into Syria with some of his domestics; but his subjects, who consisted of between ten and fifteen thousand families, his oxen, sheep, and camels were pillag'd by our soldiers. Some of the Mirza Rouslem's men broughte Cara Yousef's wife, the queen of the Turcomans, to him in chains: she was the mother of Eskiender and Espende, and was attended by the lady's of her court, and her relations.

Our princes also vanquish'd Noayr, who was absolute commander of all the Arabian tribes of the desert: and they likewise defeated several other princes of these quarters, who till that time had never submitted to any conqueror.

During the rebuilding of Balaican, Sarek and Cotoe Coja, sons of the Dervich Buke, Aboubeere and Aebirdi Urbee, officers of the Mirza Rouslem, carry'd the happy news of these victories to court, where they presented to Timur the head of Cara Yousef's brother.

After the causes of the disorders which Cara Yousef and other rebels had occasion'd, were remov'd, the Mirza Aboubeere employ'd himself particularly in reordering this country as fowling as ever: he encourag'd the people, and oblig'd 'em to cultivate the lands: and he caus'd the city of Bagdad, which was almost ruin'd, to be rebuilt.

## C H A P. XII.

*Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand.  
Continuation of what happen'd during the  
building of Balkan.*

**T**HE first of Juny 1406, the Mirza <sup>Nov. 23.</sup> ~~1405.~~ Omar, son of the Mirza Miran Chah, whom Timur had recall'd from Samarcand to take upon him the government of Azerbijana, arriv'd at the imperial camp before Balkan, where he had the honour to pay his respects to his highness. At the same time came likewise to court a Circassian officer, the son of Toumen, with the head of Malek Azeddin king of Lox Couthieet, who had revolted: this officer brought advice that Malek had been kill'd, and his skin, stipp'd with straw, hang'd up in publick view, to serve as an example to all future disturbers of the common tranquillity.

Timur about this time resolv'd to perform an act of justice on the person of the famous doctor Moulana Cocobeddaia Carmi, who was come to court with the other officers of the Divan of Chiraz, because of his having tax'd the inhabitants of Fars at his departure from that place, at the sum of three hundred thousand Dinars Copeghi, under pretence of a present to the emperor. Moulana Saad, a doctor of the same country, who accompany'd him, accus'd him to Timur in a private audience, where the emperor had order'd him to give him what light he was able in relation to the affairs of Fars. This tyranny having highly offend'd his majesty, he immediately pass'd judg-

Book VI. ment upon Cotobeddin, and it's d'out an order to the Cheik Dervich Allahi to bind his hands, and placing the fork'd branch about his neck, to lead him in that manner to Chiraz, with the sum he had extorted from the inhabitants, to be reserved to those who had paid it. Argoun, insatiable to Cotobeddin, was condemn'd to be hang'd because of the tribbles he had brought on the people at his master's order. A declaration was also published to inform the people of the destruction of their tyrants, in revenge of the wrong they had receiv'd: after which the intendance of the finances of Chiraz was given to Coje Maick Begmuni. The emperor order'd Moulana Saed to return to Chiraz, to declare to the inhabitants of Fars, that what Moulana Cotobeddin had done was not by his order, in proof of which Argoun was hang'd as soon as they arriv'd at Chiraz.

The following Friday, the inhabitants of the city and neighbouring villages being assembled in great multitudes in the old mosque, Moulana Cotobeddin w<sup>t</sup> expell'd with his hands in figgers, and the fork'd branch about his neck, at the foot of the preaching-chair, which w<sup>t</sup> of execration. Moulana Saed mounting the chair, told the people what the great Timur had order'd him, in addition to the words of Coje Maick and Fakih. " If this kingdom, says he, has been ruin'd, don't impute it to the emperor; for Cotobeddin is only in fault." All the people applauded what he said, and praised Timur, so that the mosque echo'd out their exclamations. The sum of three hundred thousand Timars Coeghi, which Cotobeddin had extorck'd in the space of two months, was entirely remburs'd, according to the registers of the

Cadiz, notary's, and Lairs of the kingdom, to Chapter, those from whom it had been taken.

They suffice to prove in the verisim of one of the greatest lords of the kingdom, which ought to eternalize the memory of Timur's equity. After this the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Omar Cheik, took on Cateboudjin's letters, and sur'd branch, and sent him back to Samarcand.

### C H A P. XHL

*Timur passes the winter at Carabagh-derian.  
Relation of what happen'd there.*

WHEN Bailecan was entirely rebuilt, Timur march'd towards Carabagh, where he had already given orders for Cizla, or the cold houses, to be built, to pass the winter in. Being come to this place, he went down into the imperial Cizla, and the Mirzas and Nevirs quarter'd in those appointed for them, as did also the officers and domestics in theirs. Never was there seen before so magnificence a camp of such vast extent. The Mirza Roulem came by the road of Coulakai and Senatai, according to the orders he had receiv'd to repair to the Coulakai or diet, which was to be held at Carabagh, to invest the Mirza Omar in the government of the kingdom of Hutson Can.

In the mean while, on advice of the revolt of Ebender Cheik, who with Timur's permission was return'd to his principality of Demayend and Firouz Coni, Solyman Chah had orders to go to Rei to observe Ebender's motions. The Mirza Roulem was sent to assist Solyman in this affair, and they had orders, that if Ebender shou'd

Book VI. shou'd be so happy as to return forthwith to his obedience, to give him a handsom reception; but on the contrary, if he continu'd obstinate in his revolt, they shou'd draw together all the infantry of Com, Cachan and Dergurin, and pursue and exterminate him wherever they cou'd find him. The Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah immediately departed to execute this order.

Then the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, king of Chirvan, prepar'd a great banquet to regale the whole court: he made a present to Timur of several pearls, beautiful women slaves, handsome boys, cuirasses, belts, arms, and a thousand led-horses: he also made fine presents to the empecces, princes, and chief persons of the state, and evill what he cou'd to discover some marks of his affection to all the lords.

About this time Nour Elouerd, son of the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, about eighteen years of age, having been born during the war, was brought from Irac-Arabi. The venerable Cherif Seid Bereke then also arriv'd at court: the proue Timur went out of his tent to meet him. The Santon having perceiv'd him, flung off his turban, and paid his compliments of condolence on the death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. Timur embrac'd him, and wept a long time with him.

The doctors, Imams, and lawyers of Transoxiana, Kech, Samarcand, Bocca, Terned, and other places, as the sons of the Can of Temmed, Coja Abdolevel, Coja Asmeddin, Coja Asdal Kecki, Abdellahmid and Abdellahman, sons of the Cheik Elifam of Kech, and other great lords of these kingdoms, came to court, where they were admitted to an audience: they paid their compliments of condolence on the death

death of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and en- Chap. 13.  
deavor'd to comfort the emperor by good coun-  
sels taken out of the Alcoran and the sayings of  
Mahomet. In effect, after they had somewhat  
moderated his affliction, he was pleas'd to have  
'em dispute before him on some questions of learn-  
ing and religion, which they did every evening,  
after Timur had done with the affairs of state.

One of the most considerable events which happen'd during Timur's stay at Carabagh, was that the secretaries of the Divan of Kirman had taken Idecon's account, in which they had set down in his name an excessive sum. Timur being inform'd of it during the building of Bialucan, apply'd himself to find out the truth of it in the Divan: but the princess Booyan Aga, daughter of Timur's uncle <sup>\*</sup>, presented her self big with child by Idecon, with her daughter Agatche; and compounded for it, by promising he shou'd pay a hundred Tomanis Copeghi, and to which Idecon consented, obliging himself to pay that sum to the imperial treasury. Then he was confirm'd in the government of Kirman, and permitted to return home, with orders at his arrival at Kirman to send back from thence to court the Sultan Bayazid, his brother's son, who had been dispatch'd thither in his place, at Idecon's departure for court.

Timur sent Anoucherouan, son of Beyan Aga, to Tauris, to receive the revenues of Acerbijana; and he gave the government of Sari to Pir Mehemed Ponlad, one of the Emirs of the Mirza Charoc. At the same time Bic Mule Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Ghanghir, set out from Gaznin and Candahar for court, with her three sons Caled, Buzandger and Sultan Meluli, who were then very young: she paid her respects to the emperor, and presented him with

several

Book VI. several precious stuns of India, and other curiosities.

## C H A P. XIV.

*The emperor sends the Mirza Charoe to Ghilan.*

As the princes of Ghilan were not come to court, but had only sent a few small presents, Timur resolv'd to march against them; he sent thither the Catapul, or vanguard, commanded by Derjaz Couthun, Doul, Mohamed brother of Ali Sultan, Dazchi, Bayazid, Rorouldai, and Behloul Berls, whom he order'd to pass the winter in the forest on the frontiers of Ghilan: and he likewise sent the Mirza Charoe to Kaelgadge at the head of his troops. This prince immediatly set out, accompanied by his son the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with his body of ten thousand men, the Emir Gehan Chah, the Cheik Ibrahim, Roussem Tagi Bouja, the Seid Coja son of the Cheik Ali Beldar, and other generals of Timur with their troops: and they stop'd at Kaelgadge, receiving other orders.

As soon as the princes of Ghilan had receiv'd advice of the army's marching into their country, they were disquieted, abandon'd their former resolution, and consented to pay a great sum under the name of Corage. Charoe sent an express to inform his court of this; and made several persons set out to receive the tribute.

The Seid Rezi Kya, one of the princes of Deylem, who was of Malome's race, and distinguish'd

tinguished by his knowledge of the better-letters, Chap. 14.  
and the Emir Mehemed Kecht, also a prince  
of the country, departed together for court  
with magnificent presents: and each of the  
commanders of Gilian sent presents and con-  
siderable <sup>sums</sup> of mony. Being arriv'd at court,  
they lift <sup>up</sup> their foot at the throne, and humbly  
offer'd their presents, saying that they were and  
had always been obedient to his highness; that  
they had us'd all their endeavours to collect the  
sums of the Garage; and that they had re-  
solv'd to live and die in perfect submision to the  
emperor's orders.

Timur gave 'em respite, and highly honor'd 'em;  
and as the Seid Razi Rya was of Mahomet's  
race, he was pleas'd to treat him in a very  
handsom manner, and gratify'd him with ten  
thousand Mans of silk; that is, with fifteen thou-  
sand Mans of legal weight, with seven thou-  
sand horses and three thousand oxen, to be ta-  
ken out of what the people had promis'd to pay  
for the Garage impos'd on their country: he  
gave the half of it to the Emir Mehemed, with  
a third of what remaynd did: and he issu'd out  
in order for the receivers to pay 'em the same sum.

Timur likewise gave the Seid Razi the go-  
vernment of the castle of Kemic, on the frontiers  
of Nicolia, whitch Ghams, a relation of  
the Emir Abbas, formerly possess'd; and he sent  
him thither with troops.

During the winter-quarters at Cambagh, the  
Cherif Sall Berde fell sick: and tho' his phy-  
sician employ'd all their skill, and minister'd  
the most excellent remedies, they cou'd do him  
no good: so that this great person fild from  
this world into the other with an entire resigna-  
tion to the will of God. Timur was sensibly  
afflicted, and wept bitterly at the death of his  
best

Book VI. best friend; and afterwards he caus'd his coffin to be carry'd to Andecoud, to be there bury'd. Then he gave the governments of Hamadan, Nehavend, Ouroudgerd, Lircoutchek, and their dependences, to the Mirza Eskender.

## C H A P. XV.

*Arrival of some princes from Mardin and Vastan. A famous funeral banquet made for the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan.*

WINTER being past, Malek Issa, prince of Mardin, came to court with several presents, bringing with him his daughter, who was betroth'd to the Mirza Aboabecre. Malek Azeddin Chir came also from Vastan with presents of abundance of horses to Timur, who gave him a handsome reception.

About this time the emperor issu'd out a general order to all the greater and lesser officers of the kingdom of Holacou Can, residing in Azerbijana and Irac-Arabi, to send each a brother, or one of their relations, to reside at Samarcand: and that this project might be executed without delay, he order'd several officers to repair to the respective places, to bring 'em away forthwith.

In the month of Ramadan, Timur made a funeral banquet for the prince Mehemed Sultan, in which the poor were principally regal'd. The Cherifs, doctors, and Imams of all parts, were at the banquet, and took their places according to their ranks and dignitys. The entire Alcoran was read over, and the feast concluded with prayers for the repose of the Mirza's soul. Afterwards

rewards the princess Camade went to Saltanis, and transported from thence to Samarcand the Mirza's coffin, which had lain in the tomb of the prophet Caidar.

Timur after this order'd a famous chace in the plains of Actam, beyond the Araxes, in which the utmost magnificence appear'd. The dogs had coverings of sattin imbroider'd with gold, and the hunting-leopards had chains of gold set with precious stones about their necks; there was an infinite number of Grecian grey-hounds, so esteem'd for their swiftness, as also a very uncommon and excellent kind of beagles; but what were most remarkable, were huge European mastiffs, as strong as the lions of Africa, as terrible as tigers rou'd up to the fight, and as swift as arrows. After three days the circle began to close, and the slaughter, which is call'd Camarmichi, was made upon an infinite number of wild beasts, as lions, antelopes, roe-bucks, as well of the mountains as of the plains, and also stags.

After the hunting was over, Timur return'd to the camp, where he distributed among the Cherifs, doctors and Imams of Samarcand, Kech, Bocara, and other citys of Transoxiana, an innumerable quantity of uncommon curiosities, which he had taken from the kingdom of Natolia, among which were several handsome stuns, belts of gold, beautiful horses, mules, women-slaves and boys; after which he permitted 'em to return home, which they did, loading his highness with their praises and thanks.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Timur's return from a campaign of seven years.*

**T**IMUR having made himself master, during his campaign of seven years, of the kingdoms of Anatolia and Syria with their dependences; and having oblig'd the inhabitants of Grand-Cairo, the capital of Egypt, to omit the morn, and read the Combe, which is the Friday-prayer for the reigning prince, in his name and titles; the Egyptian having also submitted to pay an annual tribute; and Timur having likewise fulfill'd the precept of the Al-eoran in making war on the Christians of Georgia, whose pride and power he allug'd: he found that to crown the triumphs of his happy life, he had no more to conquer in all Asia than the empire of China, the inhabitants of which were infidels. Whereupon he immediately resolved on that conquest, and departed from Garabagh the 14th of Ramadan 836, which answers to the year of the Monkey, for Samarcand. He cross'd the Araxes on a bridge, and encamp'd on the other side in a meadow near Nimen-Abad, one of the towns on the canal of Beriaz, which canal he had dug himself, as we said before: and he was join'd here by the Mirza Charec, who according to order had taken the road to Kzelygadje.

April 8.  
1704.

C H A P.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Timur invests the Mirza Omar in the empire of Halacou Can.*

**A**BOU'T this time a great seal was made at court on occasion of the emperor's giving the Mirza Omar the government of the empire of Halacou Can, for which he issu'd out his letters-patent sign'd with the imperial seal, which was the impression of his red hand. This empire contain'd the counteys of Acerbijana, the kingdom of Ross or Natolia as far as Constantinople; and Syria as far as Egypt. The princes who govern'd the kingdoms of Fars and the two Iracs, were commanded to obey his orders, and assist at his diets. Timur gave him the troops and officers of the Mirza Miran Chah, and permitted him to depart at the same time: he nam'd for his principal officers, who were to have pensions, the Emirs Gehan Chah, Roussem son of the Emir Moussa, Teyekkul Berlas, Juncid Bourculdai, and others; and gave him ten thousand horse, recommending to him to do nothing contrary to the sentiments of the Emir Gehan Chah. Then Timur presented to this new king of the Medes a crown, a vest, a belt set with precious stones, and a horse with a saddle of gold, and to each of his Emirs a robe and a belt.

The prince then took leave, and paid his respects to the emperor, who tenderly entreated him as well as the Emirs, and then dismiss'd them. The Emir Gehan Chah cou'd not refrain from tears at parting from the emperor and court, because of his long affection to his highness. Timur

Book VI. mur afterwards gave veils and bolts to the Emir Cheik Ibrahim, Malek Issa the Sultan of Mardin, Malek Azeddin Chir, Kustendil a Georgian, Tizec, Dialek, and Bestam, whom he order'd to attend on the Mirza Omar, who took his road thro the delightful country of Alatac.

Timur departed from this place, and hunted in his march. After a day's journy he encamp'd in a meadow on the bank of the river Abaglio, otherwise nam'd Tchaybelaroud, where he staid to the end of Ramadan.

Timur celebrated the feast of the grand Bairam with great devotion and pomp. Moulana Nermoddin Chanabi, one of the most eloquent doctors of the age, who had wrote part of the history of Timur, preach'd that day, read the Coutre, and perform'd the ceremonys of prayer. Several alms and pious gifts were distributed; and the feast was finisht by a magnificent banquet, in which were serv'd up abundance of the most excellent dishes and wines.

### C H A P. XVIII.

*Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were sent towards Rei.* -

**T**H E Mirza Roustem and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone to Rei to gain intelligence of what Eskender Cheiki was doing, being arriv'd at that country, found that Eskender had revolted, and having fortify'd the citadel of Firouz Couh, and plac'd in it his son and family, had fled to the mountains in the forests of Tchelacum and Roustemdar. Our generall laid twenty days at Tahran in the province

vince of Rei: and having got together the in-<sup>Chap. 15.</sup>fantry of Rei, Com, Cachan, Sare and Derg-<sup>1404</sup>huzin, to the number of two thousand, they departed in pursuit of Eskender, enter'd the forest of Roulemdar, and besieg'd the fortress of Nour, which they took and raz'd. Malek Keyoumertes came to find 'em in this place; and as he was at variance with Eskender, they sent him, and sent him to Eskender: "Be-  
"hold, say they, we send you your enemy,  
"that you may see we are willing to accommo-  
"date matters with you: therefore suspect no-  
"thing, but come without delay to meet us.  
"If you return to your obedience, we'll make a  
"treaty with you in the name of Timur: you  
"have spent part of your life in his service, don't  
"root up the tree which you have planted.

Eskender stay'd not come to 'em because of his revolt, but endeavour'd to strike up an accommodation with Keyoumertes, and as well by threats as promises, engag'd him to be of his party. These having sworn a reciprocal friend-  
ship, they join'd against us, and committed acts of hostility. Whil'st the camp was encamp'd on the bank of the river Agluc, a courier came from the Emir Solymann Chah, who gave advice to the emperor of what had happen'd. Where-  
upon Timur immediately resolv'd to march thither in person, and sent orders to the Emir Mersib, lieutenant-general of Corasana, to march with his troops by the road of Siri and Ancol, to revenge him on Eskender.

The 7th of Chawal 806, an officer of the  
Mirza Cabil Sultan arriv'd from Transoxiana,  
who assur'd the emperor from that prince that  
the affairs of those parts were in a very good  
condition, and that the people enjoy'd perfect  
peace and tranquillity.

## C H A P. XIX.

*Timur sends the Mirza Eskender and the Emir Chamelie before the rest towards Rei.*

THE emperor being arriv'd at Ardebil, sent the Emir Chamelie and Pir Ali Scidur, with a thousand men, to Rei before the others, with orders to get together the soldiers of the Arabian tribes and the hords of Caladje, Turks who dwell about Save, Com, Cachan, Tchara and Perahan, as far as Kerehroud, and to form 'em into a body to join the army: and he order'd the Mirza Eskender to join the Mirza Rouslem and the Emir Solyman Chah.

Timur having pass'd by Ardebil and Myzz, went down to Scetchem, where he found Dou-ladi governor of Arenic, who was come thither to pay his respects to him. Timur tenderly embrac'd him because of his former services, and having given him a vest and belt, said to him, " We are not certain we shall ever be able to see each other again; but don't neglect informing your self of what shall pass at my court. The Sultan Ahmed Gelair is at present retir'd, and in a low condition, so there's nothing to be fear'd from him: but be upon your guard against the Turcooman prince Caza Yousel." Then Timur dismiss'd his old friend.

Timur departed from Scetchem, and arriv'd at May 13. Sultania the 20th of Chawal 806, to which place came the persons who had been sent into Ghilan to receive the money we mention'd before; they brought thence a great quantity of money, horses, sculls,

sluſſis, and curioſity. The emperor departed Chap. 12. next day but one from Soltania, and after ſome ~~~~~ day's journey arriv'd at Casbin, to which place the Mirza Aboubeere cam' poff in nine days from Ardebil by the road of Kelas, having for his attendance Fir Huliein Berlas and Sevindgis. He paid his respects to his higmoſs, and beſought him to permit the Mirza Miran Chah, his faſhion, to go to Bagdad, to reſide there with him: which requell was granted. Miran Chah receiv'd a gratification of four hundred thouſand Dinars Copeghi<sup>1</sup>, 2 hundred horſes, and ſeveral toys, and then return'd to Soltania.

Timur being gone from Casbin to Samac-Boulac, gave the Mirza Aboubeere two hundred horſes, 2 hundred pair of cuirasses, and a thouſand Dinars Copeghi: he order'd him to meet the Emir Solyman Chah, and march with him againſt Eſkender Cheiki. The emperor alſo made a present to Chahumale, wife of Aboubeere, and daughter of the Emir Hadgi Selſeddin, of the lordſhip of Dodgrail, depen-dent on Bagdad; and this princess then return'd to Soltania.

Aboubeere having cau'd the ſnow to be remov'd, ascended the mountain of Acabay Tala-goum, and join'd the Mirza Roustem at Kad-ryour, the Mirza Eſkender, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were all encamp'd there with a good trench round 'em, fortify'd with branches of trees: and they ſtaid here twenty days, till the arrival of the army. Having receiv'd fresh orders to fall upon Eſkender, they departed to that end; and as the country was entirely cover'd with wood, they cut down the trees to

<sup>1</sup> A Dinar Copeghi is a ducat of gold, in value ſeven pounds.

Book VI. open a way cross, and mended the passages which had been ruin'd with planks; and thus they pursued Erekendor, killing all the enemies they met.

May 22. 1404. Timur enter'd the meadow of Rei the first of Zilezade 806, and encamp'd in the plain of Sari Camich: he order'd the superfluous equipages to be conducted by the road of Rei and Khouvar. Bic Mule Aga, wife of the Mirza Pir Mehomed, had leave to return with her sons to Gazzin and Candahar. The Emir Chamiseddin Abbas and others, who had the care of transporting the Caravans and colenys, which had remov'd from Azerbijanz, had orders to take the road of Khourar and Semnan. Then the Emir Chamelic, who had set out before, arriv'd at Rei.

Timur being come to the castle of Ghuiken-dan, which lay in ruins, situate at the foot of mount Demavend, examin'd it, and gave orders for its being rebuilt of stone and mortar, and render'd as flourishing as before. From thence having pass'd by Demavend at the head of his army rang'd in order of battle, he arriv'd at Firouz-coub.

---

## CHAP. XX.

### *The taking of the citadel of Firouz-coub.*

May 31. 1404.

**A**MONG the strongest places mention'd in history, none deserves more notice than the citadel of Firouz-coub, situate on the ridge of a mountain, with walls of the utmost strength. On the 9th of Zilezade 806, the imperial standard arriv'd there, and the troops form'd the siege, encamping at all the avenues round about it. Every one having taken his post, the machines

and arms necessary were got ready: the throwers Chap. 11  
of wild-fire began the assault, and were seconded by the bravest men of the army, who expos'd their lives with the greatest intrepidity. And as one of the towers of the place was built at the foot of the mountain, on the bank of the river, and the walls of this tower were rais'd as high as the level of the mountain, the besieg'd made use of it to draw up water out of the river; but our men turn'd the course of the river from the foot of the mountain, and spoil'd the water which was left. This oblig'd the besieg'd to fall out to hinder 'em, being resolv'd rather to die than suffer this.

During night an officer of the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, accompany'd by Mehemed Azad, Cheik Behloul, Beyantencour, Acbopga, and other brave men, got up one after another to the foot of the walls. They were perceiv'd by the besieg'd, who ran thither in great numbers, fought with all their strength, and wounded several of our men: but day being come, all the soldiers ascended the mountain by different places, and gave a general assault. The son of Elkender Cheiki, governor of the castle, and all the others, perceiving the intrepidity with which they were attack'd, were seiz'd with fear, tho' the garrison consisted of three hundred men, or rather giants of Mazendran, or satyrs of the forest. Their inquietude oblig'd 'em to send several of their men to Timur, to beg quarter with submission. The emperor gave these messengers vells, and treated 'em with abundance of kindness: whereupon they were no sooner return'd to the place, than Elkender's son, and all the rest of the officers and soldiers, came to cast themselves at the emperor's feet, and deliver up the castle, which the troops enter'd, and made all the inhabitants

Book VI. go out, that they might be transported to another place. Thus this strong citadel, whose top seem'd to reach the heaven, was taken after two days siege: Timur left there, as governor, Zoughi-Tom, with a good garrison.

June 2.

Next day, the 21<sup>st</sup> of Zilzade, 806, Timur took his le, and went to incamp in a meadow, half a league from thence. He left back to Samarcand the emperors Serai Male, Canum, and Togman Aga, with the Mirza, Oly-Bec, Ibrahim Sadr, Judge, and Salzicus, who departed by the road of Sultan Meldan: and after-wards the emperor march'd against Eskeuder Cheiki.

The advice was brought that the Caravans, being arriv'd near the town of Dangian, had wounded their Det. gr, and were revolted; the Det. gr of another band, which march'd after 'em, discover'd Tangiiburnich, who lay upon the earth naked and wounded, and scarce alive, and carry'd him into the town to dress his wounds. The other bands hearing this, refolly'd to fly, upon which the Emir Chamseddin Abbes, Atilmich, Chaveli son of Sevindigic, and the other captains of companies who had the conduct of the bands, fell sword in hand upon these mischievous wretches, of whom they destroy'd a great number; and either within the town of Dangian, or near it, flew about three thousand upon the spot, so that the dead body's stopp'd up the passage of the streets. Several fled into the forests of Estar-Abad, and the Emir Chamseddin brought away the rest.

Timur, on advice of this immediately sent away Bozan-Coutchan, Fezel, son of Seifel-moune, son of Hadij Seifeddin, Dane-Goja, Roultem Poniac, and Comari Behader, with three hundred horse, in pursuit of the fugitives. The

Mirza

Mirza Ahmed, Omar Chik, and the Emir Beren-<sup>Chapte-</sup>  
rde were likewise sent after 'em on the same account, and went as far as Darigian: but they soon return'd to join the emperor, because they found that some of the Caratares had been slain, others fled, and others brought away by the Emir Chamseddin and the Detegas. Beyan Couochin, and the others who went out first in pursuit of the fugitives, pass'd by Bokhara, cross'd the mountain of Leughmout, enter'd the forest of Mzzenstan, and join'd the Caratares at Ciratugan, on the shore of the Caspian sea; and tho' the Tartars were far more nimble, yet they attack'd 'em immediately, and having happily defeated 'em, slew above a thousand, and took more than ten thousand family's prisoners. After this expedition Beyan Couochin return'd to court.

When the emperores, who had taken the road to Samarcand with the baggage, were arriv'd at Bokhara, the officers who conducted the Mirza Charoe's baggage, parted from the rest, and went to Herat by the way of Nichabour: and Mirz Moll Cannon and Tooman Aga went by the road of Jaderon and Ellerain with the greatest baggage.

## C H A P. XXI.

*Timur marches to Tchelso.*

**T**IMUR being accustom'd to execute the greatest part of his enterprizes himself, he march'd in person against Eskiender Chelki: and as the Mirza Charoe was fallen sick, he return'd to Herat with the officers of his household, while

Book VI. while his Emirs and troops follow'd the imperial army to Tchelao, at which place they arriv'd in a few days, altho the ways were over high mountains, and thro deep vallys. The troops being arriv'd at the mountain of Tchelao, the ungrateful Eshender was oblig'd to fly, and retire into the defile call'd hell.

June 11. The 20th of Zileade Timur arriv'd at Tchelao; from whence, not being able to find Eshender, he departed the same day. In this road is a very deep defile full of woods, always cover'd with mists and fogs, in the middle of which is a great and extremely rapid torrent, which can neither be forded nor swum over. The great difficulty there is in passing this defile is the reason of its being nam'd the devil's of hell: and as Eshender had broke the bridge over the torrent, after having pass'd it, Timur was oblig'd to build another. The soldiers shartly built one of wood, on which forty brave officers pass'd first, and were follow'd by five hundred men, whom they commanded. Yousef Berlas afterwards cross'd it with Couthin Touchcal, as did the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behader; and at length the Morza Sultan Hallein, follow'd by the Emir Cheik Noureddin, who got up to the ridge of the mountain of the defile, cutting down the trees to open a passage in search of Eshender. Timur also pass'd the bridge, and encamp'd on the top of a mountain where there were no trees, but continual rains and fogs. At this place Timur gave audience to the Seid Ismael of Kerscean, onz ei the lords of Temed.

Timur sent soldiers into all the forests to find Eshender, assigning 'em for guides the Cheiks of Marandran.

Among

Among those who went in search of Eshen-Chapender, the captains Deryay Coochin, Chadimule Berlas, the Cheik Mehemed Coutechin, Sic Timour Coutechin, Codadad Tchmura, and Vefadar, met him on the 26th of Zilcaide 806, in June 17. the middle of a wood near the Caspian sea. The Cheik Dervich Allahi was seiz'd with fear, and turn'd back on pretence of bringing Yousef Berlas with more expedition to back 'em, he being behind 'em with his troops.

In the mean while Eshender, at the head of two hundred foot and thirty horse of his acquaintance, sally'd out of his little camp, and prepar'd to attack our men, who were but twenty in number, and were not ignorant of Eshender's valor, having seen him several times in action; for intrepidity and courage were hereditary to him, being descended in a right line from Bigen son of Keyou, and Banou Kochaspe daughter of the great Roussem, as may be seen in the Shah Name or Fardacoufi, which makes Bigen speak these words, " My grandfather was a lion in battle, my father was the great Keyou: this day you shall behold my prodigious exploits." Our twenty men, notwithstanding this, fearing Timur's retributions, resolv'd rather to die than fly, reflecting that if the time destin'd for their death was come, they might as well die here as in another place: so they collected all their courage, and confiding in the ordinary good fortune of Timur's arms, discharg'd their arrows. Eshender, follow'd by his horsemen, attack'd 'em several times with their pikes; but our men so dexterously ply'd him, that he cou'd not only gain no ground, but smartly turn'd his back before a handful of men, with all his soldiers. Ingratitude is the source of all misfortunes. Eshender had preserv'd his honor, if he

Book V. had not abandon'd Timor, from whom he had receiv'd so many favors.

After Eskender was fled into the forest, our scouts quarter'd in his camp, not knowing what road he had taken. Then Youtef Berlus arriv'd with Seifemulah and Hadji Abdalla, who also enter'd Eskender's camp, which they entirely pillag'd, carrying away abundan. c. of horses, mules, stuffs of gold, and other riches. They were join'd there by the Mirza Roustem and Aboubocet, accompany'd by the Emirs Seindigic and Solymar Chah, who came from the left. At break of day there appear'd in the mountain something glittering, which advanc'd towards 'em. The Emir Seindigic march'd to the left towards the mountain and forest in search of Eskender, taking with him his nephew Letherasp and all his men, and met the Fanir Ali, Eskender's son, with his daughter, wives and domestics, who were all made slaves.

---

## CHAP. XXII.

*Battel between the Mirza Sultan Hussein and Eskender Chiki. The flight of the latter.*

THE Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Seid Coja son of the Chah Ali Beluder, join'd our scouts with seventy men, and enter'd with 'em into the woody in search of Eskender. They met him about noon in the midst of this forest, having with him two hundred foot, and fifty horse, who prepar'd to defend themselves. The Mirza Sultan Hussein fell furiously upon Eskender, and immediately retreated as if he wou'd have fled. The enemy, who thought to im-

prove

prove this seeming advantage, fall'd out of the wood to fall upon our men; but they turn'd upon 'em suddenly in good order, and made a cruel slaughter of the foot. Vefadar perform'd whatever cou'd be expected from a great man; but was wounded with a lance in his face, which struck out his teeth: yet this did not hinder his fighting. Two horsemen of Tchelao were made prisoners by the officers of the Mirza Sultan Hussein: and Eskender perceiving himself vanquish'd, re-enter'd the woods, and went out by the side towards Ghilan. He was never heard of more; tho' some say that he took the habit of a monk, while others assure us that he died thro' grief in the woods.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein sent one of the men who were taken to Timur by Cizan Dervich. The emperor was then encamp'd in the mountain we spoke of before, and order'd the man to inform him what he knew of Eskender.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein at his return met on the shore of the Caspian sea the Murzas Roustem and Aboubecir, with the Emirs So-hynan Chah and Chesh Noureddin, who had been in search of Eskender; they march'd together along the sea-side near three leagues, advancing towards Ghilan. They encamp'd there, and were join'd by the Emir Mearab Yacon, who had likewise been seeking Eskender with the troops of Corassena by the road of Amol and Sari. Then all the Emirs departed together for the imperial camp. Timur, notwithstanding all the fatigues they had undergone, reprov'd 'em for not having continu'd to pursue Eskender, and sent 'em all back again on the same account with the Emir Chamelic. They fatigu'd themselves exceedingly in the woods, which were very miry, because of the continual rains, which hinder'd

Book VI. binder'd their encampment. On advice of this, Timur sent orders for 'em to return.

Then the emperor decamp'd from the mountain, and crossing the bridge over the torrent in the defile of hell, went to encamp before the castle of Nour in the province of Roustemdar. The soldiers brought before him Eskender's nephew, and others of his relations, with several of his officers: he gave 'em a handsom reception, and granted 'em quarter.

During night an express came from the Mirzas Aboubecro and Sultan Husein, and from the Emir Solyman Chah, with advice of their arrival at the torrent of the defile of hell, which they cou'd not pass by reason the bridge was broken. Timur immediately sent to 'em Mehomed Azad and Toukel Basurchi, with thirty watermen of the Gibon, having for their chief Ourdouchah, who with their usual dexterity built a bridge, on which the Mirzas cross'd the torrent with their troops, and return'd to join his highness.

The army pass'd the night in the same place, and next day march'd to the castle of Hari towards Ghilan: and Timur being arriv'd at Kelare Decht, encamp'd some days in that meadow, where the Emir Caysfeddin Ali, son of the Seid Kemaleddin, had a handsom reception from the emperor, who gave him the principality of Amol, because he had always carry'd on a war with Eskender Cheiki.

## C H A P. XXIII.

*Timur returns to the seat of his empire.*

AT FTER the flight of Eskender, the taking  
of his wives, children and domestics, the  
conquest of his fortresses, and the pillage of his  
effects, horses and cattle, the emperor resolv'd  
to return to Samarcand. He order'd the Mir-  
zas who had the government of the two Iracs to  
go thither; and likewise the Seid Azzedin He-  
zaregheri with his brothers, and the Seid Ali Ma-  
zendani, to return to their respective govern-  
ments; and he gave vests to each of 'em. The  
Mirza Rouslem, attended by the Emir <sup>\*</sup>Sahli Ber-  
las, departed for Ispahan, the Mirza Aboubecro  
for Bagdad, the Mirza Eskender for Hinadin,  
the Seid Azzedin for Hezaregheri, and the Seid  
Ali for Amol.

At length Timur departed from Kclare Decht,  
and in few days arriv'd at the country of Lar,  
at the foot of the mountain Demavend, where  
the emperor Argoun Chah had built a pavilion  
in form of a dome, which is yet nam'd the  
Kiochik of Argoun.

The 22d of Zilhidge 807, he decamp'd, and  
march'd with so great expedition with the Emir <sup>1494</sup> and his domestics, that on the 23d he en-  
camp'd at the mountain of Firuzzorob. He  
gave the Emir Solyman Chah a vest wrought

\* Emir signifies commander: as also a prince of Mahomet's race, iller, call'd Chers and Seid. But all Emirs are not Chers; for there are some Emirs who are not Mahometans, as among the Druses, Maronites and others.

Book VI. with gold, and a cap enrich'd with precious stones, leaving him in the government of the towns and provinces of Rei, Firouxcooh, and their dependences: and he permitted Beyan Chinchin, Deroga of Rei, to return to guard the cattle of Ghulé Khindan.

From thence Timur pass'd by Sultan Meidan, July 14. and the 24th of Zilhidge arriv'd at Beliam, where he visited Sultan Elaarefin, whose prayers he besought, distributing alms among the poor. Pir Padichah, prince of Esterabad, who had follow'd Timur in this expedition, and had been permitted to go before the rest to his own town, return'd to this place to meet the court, and offer his presents, among which were nine sets of horses, nine in each. Timur gave him a vest, and sent him back.

Dane Coja, who had been sent in pursuit of the Tartars, arriv'd at the same place, and gave an account of what he had done. Timur order'd that the Tartar chiefs he had taken shou'd be laid in irons, and conducted to Samarcand by the Derogas of the countrys they shou'd pass thro. The emperor departed from Beliam the same day; and being arriv'd at the town of Jagat, the lord Hasan Soufi Tercan came to him from the Mirza Charoe, to be inform'd where his highness wou'd appoint that prince to meet him. Hasan Soufi was sent back post, to let Charoe know he might meet the emperor on the bank of the river Joucoudgecan.

Then Timur march'd with expedition, and July 20. 1404. the first of Muharrem 807, departed from Nicha-  
bour, and went down to Achcabad. The 3d he encamp'd at the tomb of Dgyam, where he paid his devotions, imploring the prayers of that Santon. Afterwards he set out from thence, and went to encamp on the bank of the river Joucoud-

Joucudgean, where the Mirza Garoc had the chiefest honor to kiss his hands, and other his presents, which were generallly distributed among the lords who attended the court. Hendouchsh brought to this place Achoura, and Garabougai John Garan, whom he had made prisoners, because they had revolted during the emperor's absence, who order'd 'em to be hang'd in an hospital near that place.

About the same time Timur sent the Coja Ahmed Tarsi, to be treasurer-general of the revenues of Corassana, and comptroller of the regillers of the commissariys: this lord collected in forty days the sum of two hundred Toman Copeigh from the mounted-men and the commissariys.

Then Timur took leave of the Mirza Garoc, and departed. When he was arriv'd at Ossian, he encamp'd at the brink of a fountain near the hospital, to which place Temour Coja Aobars came from Samarcand to meet the emperor, to whom he presented nine race-horses. From thence Timur went to encamp at the bank of the river Morgab, where he receiv'd the complaints of the inhabitants of Chirhezon, against the oppressions of Apachip, their Derga, who was condemn'd on that account to have his feet boyl'd thro', and himself hang'd with his head downwards which was accordingly executed.

The emperor then departed, and on his road was met by the Dergas of the towns and the Kelantes of the tribes, who presented to him fresh horses, which the officers mounted, to make the more haste. Then he pass'd by Lengier Cheli Zade Bayzid, Andecood, Datea, the desse of Gher, and Ali Abed; and encamp'd near the town of Adua Mejdjid, where

Book VI. he receiv'd the principal inhabitants of Balkh, who came to meet him. From thence Timur went to Syahghur, and crossing the Gibon in a bark, quarter'd at Termed in the palace of the lord Acalmire, where this Cen's son made a magnificent banquet, and considerable presents. Afterwards he pass'd by the iron gate of Colaga, and by Chikevalis, and went to encamp at Doolburdgi. From this place he march'd to Kech, and lodg'd in Aserai : then he visited the tombs of the Santon Chamseddin Kato, whose prayers he implor'd, and of the prince his father, the Mirza Gehanghir his son, and all his children and relations. At length he took horse, cross'd the mountain of Kech, and lay in the garden of Tast Caratche : from whence he went down to the garden of Caratops, and quarter'd in the palace of Geharmoma, where he was complimented by the Mirza Laidur, son of the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gehanghir, being conducted by Coja Yousef, and A goon Chah governor of Samarcand, who kiss'd the ground, offer'd their presents, and sprinkled precious stones upon the emperor. The emperors Toukel Cantum, with all the ladies and Emirs, also paid their respects, and ent'rd their presents. As the emperor had made such halls, that no one cou'd know of his arrival, the Querib, Cadis, and principal persons of Samarcand, had not an opportunity of meeting and paying their respects to him at any other place than this.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.*

TIMUR departed from Gehannama in the month of Muharram 807, and went down to the garden of planes in Samarcand, from whence having made his entry into the city, he visited the college of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan, which he had not seen since it was built; and afterwards he return'd to the garden of planes, where preparations were made for the banquets. The emperresses and Mirzas, who had set out first with the baggage from Firouzchah by the way of Baverd, Nacan and Merzo, not being yet arriv'd, Timur dispatch'd couriers to halloo their coming. The empress Tounan Aga having cross'd the Gibon at Amanye, met the courier in the meadow of Borsara, who laid there three days to wait the great empress Serai Mule Canan. Then leaving the baggage there, they went with expedition to Vabirvanib, thence to Robatmule, and the meadow of Tchademoumar, thence to Sathent, and afterwards to Kutche Malek, where a scatt was ready prepar'd for 'em, while a second courier arriv'd to advertize 'em to halloo. Hereupon they instantly took horse, and in a short time came to Samarcand. Serai Mule Canan went down to Baghi Tchenar, and Tounan Aga to Baghi Hechir, whither Timur immediately repair'd. But God was not pleas'd to suffer him to attain to this utmost pitch of glory and power, without some mixture of bitterness; for

Part VI. this good success in the conquests of Syria, Egypt and Anatolia, was follow'd by a distemper which seiz'd him in Baghi Behacht, but did not last long. After his distemper was gone off, he went to Baghi Chemal to reside there for some days, where he gave a handsom banquet to all the Mirzas and lords of the court, on the birth of a son to Beghisi Sultan.

Timur afterwards enter'd Samarcand, and lodg'd in the palace of the late Mirza Mehemed Sultan, for whom he caus'd a magnificent sepulchre to be built in form of a dome, close to the college built by that prince: the cisture of the dome was of marble set off with gold and azurite; within it was dug a vault, to lay the prince's body in; and a charming garden was made round it on the ruins of some houses. Then the emperor apply'd himself to render justice to the oppress'd, and remedy the evils which had crept in among the inhabitants of Samarcand. When he pass'd by the great mosque, which himself had built, he thought the gallery, which had been erected during his absence, was too little: so he order'd another to be made, and reprimanded in the hall of audience the architect Coja Mahmood Daoud for his not having done it as it ought to have been. Timur lodg'd in the college of Serai Mule Cium square over-against the mosque; and to render his justice the more conspicuous, he order'd the commissarys and comptrollerrs to be arrested and bound, who being interrogated, those who were found culpable receiv'd the punishment they merited, according to the wrong they had done the people: and Masaoud Daoud and Mehemed Dgilde, who had been the principal secretarys, and during Timur's absence perform'd the function of

Visiers, were both hang'd at Camghoul, during <sup>Chap. 11.</sup> the banquet which we shall relate hereafter.

Afterwards Timur went to the garden of planes, where by the procurement of the Emirs he gave audience to an ambassador of Iscou emperor of Cappadocia, who presented to him a Choncar <sup>\*</sup> and other things, and made his last <sup>\*</sup> A bad tongue, which contain'd his master's submission of prop. and testimonials of obedience.

From hence the emperor went to the garden of Dileucha, where he staid several days, and receiv'd an ambassador from one of the greatest sovereigns of Europe <sup>1</sup>, who made him several curious and magnificent presents, among which were pieces of tapistry, which the Europeans had work'd with so much niceness, that if they were to be compar'd with the great performances of the painter Mani on the cloth of Artes, Mani wou'd be cover'd with shame, and his works appear deform'd.

Then Timur order'd the architectes, who had been brought from Damascus, to build a magnificent palace in the garden south of Bigh Chemal, which was square, each of its sides being a thousand five hundred cables. This palace was the largest and most magnificent of any Timur had built. The chief ornaments of the buildings in Syria are of marble: and running streams are common in their houses: the Syrian architectes are also very ingenious in mosaic work and sculpture, and in contriving curious fountains and perpetual jets-d'eau; and what is most remarkable is, that with stones of divers colors they do the same

<sup>\*</sup> From the King of Caille, of which we have an account written in Spanish, mention'd more particularly in the French editor's preface to this book.

Book VI. sorts of work, which the artificers in inlaid work  
 do with ebony and ivory, and that with equal  
 niceness and delicacy. They likewise made se-  
 veral fountains in the palace, the beauty of  
 which was augmented by an infinity of jets-  
 d'eau of divers forms, with a surprising and in-  
 imitable art. Afterwards the workmen of Per-  
 sia and Iraq enriched the out-parts of the walls  
 with porcelano of Cochin, which gave the  
 finishing stroke to the beauty of this palace.  
 Then Timur order'd a noble banquet to be pro-  
 p'ld, with all the delights which mortals can  
 devise, or by which the senses can be gratify'd.  
 He was there congratulated by the princes his  
 children, the emperors and princes, who  
 furnished upon him gold and precious stones.  
 \* See 2. The European \* ambassadors were also invited  
 to this great banquet, and partook of the divi-  
 sions, for the Cales \* have also their place in  
 the sea.

---

## CHAP. XXV.

*Timur holds a general diet. A great feast for  
 the marriage of the princes at Caughnol.*

TIMUR having long since form'd a de-  
 sign of conquering all Asia, cou'd not re-  
 strain from finishing what he had intended.  
 Neglectful the clore of the delights of repose, he

---

\* A little animal, about the size of a barley-corn, which are  
 seen upon the surface of the sea.

\* By this expression we perceive the great contempt the 24-  
 grain count had of the Spanish ambassadors.

took up a resolution to subdue the empire of Chagan-Chini, which was inhabited by infidels. But before he wou'd begin this great enterprise, he was willing to execute the command of the Alcoran by the marriage of his grandchildren. Hereupon he order'd a feast to be made; and sent out his circular letters to all the governors of provinces, generals of his army, and Clerks and nobles of his empire, to meet at a general diet, where they were to celebrate the nuptials. The princes Tzizi Aglen and Bachitencour Aglen, who were descended from Genghis Can, intreated Timur to summon the Mirza Pir Mehemed who was at Gazain, and the Mirza Charot who was in Corassane, to this famous Courtival: they obtain'd their request for Pir Mehemed; but as to Charot, Timur answer'd, that it was not proper he shou'd come, he being the main support of the kingdoms of Irac and Azerbijan.

Cinigbol was the place appointed for the marriage-feast; and the first of Rabhilevel 807. 1401. which answers to the year of the Mouky, Timur went to lodg there. This palace and the neighboring places were adorn'd with the greatest magnificence; so that this autumnal season render'd, in a manner, even the spring jealous. The tents were tied with silken cords, in which were abundance of carpets wrought with gold; the curtains were of velvet of Chorcher; and the ceilings of ebony and ivory exquisitely engrav'd. The emperor's apartment consisted of four great inclosures, which are call'd Seraperii, built on very regular plan: his Kherghish or imperial pavilion made two hundred tents, gilt and adorn'd with precious stones. Each tent had twelve columns of silver inlaid with gold; the out-side was scarlet and

Book VI. seven other colors, and the inside satin of all colors. The upholsterers, of whom there was a great number, had employ'd a whole week in covering and garnishing this magnificent apartment. The Muzzo and Emir had also each a Serape, a Bughish, tents, and a great pavilion name'd Kherghish.<sup>1</sup> The columns of the tents were of mally silver, and the floor was cover'd with the richest carpet.

The governors of the provinces, the generals of the army, the lords and principal commanders of the empire, assembled in this place, and pitch'd their tents in good order. The people also came there from all nations, as China, Mescovy, India, Greece, Zebul, Marendrau, Corisana, Fars, Bagdad, Syria, and in short from all the kingdoms of Iran and Touran, that is to say, from all Asia.

During these entertainments Mengheli Bou-gai Hagedeb, one of the principal lords of the court of Malek Ezraher Barcoo, king of Egypt, arriv'd in quality of ambassador from Malek Enniss Farridge, who had succeeded Barcoo his father. This Mengheli was endow'd with very rare qualities, cou'd repeat the whole Alcoran by heart, was master of a great deal of eloquence, and acquainted with several sciences, which render'd him the most agreeable person in conversation. He brought abundance of uncommon presents, ready money, precious stones, rich draps, and nice toys. Among other rarities was a Giraffa<sup>2</sup>, one of the strangest animals

<sup>1</sup> Serape is an Indian; Bughish a great hall of audience; and Kherghish a great pavilion. The two last are build'd by the Scorpions.

<sup>2</sup> A long neck'd creature about the length of a calf, breed in Africa, and, according to some, got by a mare upon a goat. It is call'd in Latin Camus, &c. &c.

upon the earth, and nine of the largest of Chapter,  
triches of Africa.

The Mirza Galil Sultan came from Turkistan to this assembly, where he saluted the emperor, the great Emir of State, as Birdi Bey, Yadghiar Perias, and others, who all made a very splendid appearance. The Mirza Pir Mehemed came from Ganzio, according to the orders he had receiv'd; he paid his respects to Timur, who embrac'd him, and by his tears testify'd his sorrow at the death of his brother the Mirza Mehemed Sultan. The Mirza made his presents, nine of a sort; and next morning Timur gave him a veil wove with gold, a crown and belt; and vestis to the officers of his household, who left off their mounting-habits.

Then Coja Ahmed Touli, receiver of the revenues of Corassan, arriv'd, and presented the sums belonging to the treasury of Corassan, with abundance of curious toys, nine of a sort. The emperor was not the only person who partook of the joys and diversions; for both high and low had their share. The most skilful artists prepar'd some master-pieces of their art, as trophies and cabinets of flowers to represent triumphs, which were adorn'd with garlands made up with perfect symmetry. There were in the jewelers shops necklaces of pearls and precious Stones, especially of granatin and balas rubys, with an infinite number of pieces of rock-crystal, coral and agat, and several rings, bracelets and ear-rings, all which render'd Canighui a mine of gold and precious Stones, instead of a mine of flowers, which its name implies.

An amphitheatre with four corners was built, call'd Tcharze, which was cover'd with pieces of brocade and Persian carpets. There were seats for both the vocal and instrumental music;

Book VI. and also places for the buffoons and jesters, who with their facetious sayings excited mirth and laughter. There was likewise another Tcha-tac for all sorts of tradesmen, and a hundred of a different manner, fill'd with those who sold fruit, each of whom had made a kind of garden of pistachios, pomegranates, citrons, pears and apples, in great order; which perfum'd the air, and made an agreeable sight. The butchers were particularly taken notice of for the neatness of their representations: they dress'd up a sheep in a man's shape, and other skins in divers other ridiculous figures. There were speaking goats which had horns of gold, and on after one another: they appear'd outwardly like goats, but were handsome young women design'd in this manner: some were dress'd like fairies and angels, with wings, while others took the figure of elephants and sheep.

The skimmers also appear'd in masquerades, some like leopards, others like lions, and others like other animals, with whose skins they were cover'd: there were those likewise who resembled horses, and tigers. The design of the masquerade was to represent gentl' who had transform'd themselves into these several figures. The upholisters likewise produc'd a master-piece of their trade, for they made a camel of wood, reeds, cords, and painted linen, which walk'd about as it were: and the man within it, drawing a curtain, discover'd the workman in his own piece. The manufacturer of cotton also made birds with cotton, which look'd as if they were alive: they also made a Minaret of the same material with the help of reeds, which every one imagin'd to be built with brick and mortar, and which was higher than the Minarets of the mosques; it was cover'd

ver'd with brocades and embroidery-work, car-  
ry'd it self about, and on its top was plac'd a  
litter. The soldiers were not behind the rest ;  
for they gave proofs of their skill by two litters  
for women, which open'd at the top, and after  
the usual manner were laid upon a camel, in  
which sat two of the most beautiful women of  
the city, each holding a skin in her hand ; and  
they made pleasant pastimes as well with their  
feet as hands, to divert the assembl. The mat-  
makers likewise shew'd their dexterity, having  
very neatly work'd with reeds two lines of wri-  
ting of *Crash*\*, and other large letters.

On the other side were the rope-dancers, who  
by their agility attracted every one's admiration ;  
their rope at the same time seeming to touch the  
heavens. Thus the whole company was employ'd  
either as actors or spectators, all endeavouring to  
contribute to the celebrating the marriage of the  
princes the emperor's children, that is, of the  
Mirs Olou-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, son of  
Charue, Aulgel son of Miran Shah, Ahmed,  
Seidi Ahmed, and Hizri, all three sons of the  
Mirza Omar Cheik.

The emperor order'd the astrologers to chuse  
a happy moment for an affair of such importance ;  
which being done, the first officer of the hou-  
sehold drew the curtain of the gate. The Cadis,  
Cherifs, Imams and doctors of the empire, met  
the emperor ; and having agreed on the articles  
of marriage, the great doctor Chuk Ch imeddin  
Mohemed Jazari was chosen to read 'em to the  
assembly. The grand Cadi of Samanid, Mon-  
lana Selaheddin, receiv'd the mutual consent  
of the partys, which he register'd ; and then,

\* The same character of the Archaic.

Book VI. according to the maxims of the Hamadan law; he join'd the princes and princesses together in marriage, on whom every one sprinkled gold and precious stones.

The emperor being seated on his throne, order'd a banquet of the utmost magnificence to be serv'd up to the brides and the other ladies of the court, by the most beautiful young women of his seraglio, who wore crowns compos'd of flowers. The princes of the blood, Emirs, Nevizes, Chiriks, and foreign ambassadours, took their place according to their rank and dignity, as well as the Emirs of Tomans and Hesires. These lords were seated under a canopy of twelve columns, distant from the nuptial hall about a horse's course.

The Yeshuds, or exempt, whom the Turks call Chouirs, were there backwards and forwards to perform the functions of their posts, mounted in a magnificent manner upon horses of great price, with saddles of gold, adorn'd with precious stones, and habited in veils of gold brocade, with an air of authority\* and command.

On another side there were elephants of a prodigious size, on whose backs were plac'd a kind of thrones, with abundance of ornaments. Under the canopy with twelve columns, were plac'd eastern cups, with strings of precious stones tied about 'em, fill'd with gold and silver possets; and on the tops were cups of gold, silver, and rock-chrysolite, adorn'd with pearls, and several sorts of jewels; all which were present'd on salvers of gold and silver. The drink was

\* The Yeshuds carry in their hands, 243 sign of their office, a silver-wood.

Cannice<sup>1</sup>, Oxyriet, Hippocras, brandy, wines, Chenat-Siria, and other liquors. It is reported that the wood of several large forets was cut down to dress the viands at this banquet. The head-flieward with his under-officers constantly attended to give all necessary orders as to the setting up of the dishes, before which an officer always walk'd. There were tables furnish'd in different places thin-out the whole plain, and flaggons of wine set near the tables, with an infinite number of baskets full of fruit. Besides the flaggons for the emperor's use, and for the lords of the court, there were several jars rang'd in all the plain for the people's drinking: and that the joy might be universal, the emperor order'd a proclamation shew'd be publish'd that all the people might enjoy what pleasures they pleas'd, and no one take cognizance of 'em. The crier read the proclamation as follows: "This is the time of feasting, pleasure and rejoicing. Let no one complain of or reprimand another. Let not the rich encroach upon the poor, or the powerful upon the weak. Let none ask another, 'Why have you done thus?' After this declaration every one gave himself up to those pleasures he was most fond of, during the feast: and whatever was done pass'd unnoticed.

At length the feast was finish'd; after which, according to custom, a vast quantity of curious movable goods was laid upon mules and camels for the new-marry'd princes: among which were all sorts of rich habits, crowns, and belts

<sup>1</sup> Cannice is a drink us'd among the Tartars. The way of making it is mention'd in the history of Georgia Cap. Book 5. chap. 19.

Book VI. set with precious stones. The mules had coverings of satin embray'd with gold; their little bells were gold, as well as those belonging to the camels: and both were handsomely adorn'd. This pompous equipage pass'd before the people, who were struck with admiration. The bridegrooms with their brides were cloth'd nine times in different habits, with crowns and belts set with precious stones; and each time they chang'd their clothes, they paid their respects as usual, while gold and precious stones, pearls, rubys, and balus rubys, were sprinkled upon 'em in great numbers, with which the ground was cover'd, and which became the dominies profit.

The following night there were every where illuminations with lanthorns, torches and lamps; and the new-marry'd princes enter'd the imperial chamber. The next day Timur did 'em the honor to pay 'em a visit at their own apartments, being accompany'd by the empresses, and great Emirs and Cherifs of his court. The rejoicings were so great thro-out the whole empire, that from Canighul as far as Tous in Corssiana, there was not one place, where the sound of drums and trumpets was not heard.

The ambassadors of Egypt, Spain, India, and Decht Capenae, Gete, and others, were witnesses of this magnificence, and particularly of the pleasures of the feast, which lasted two entire months. Timur distinguish'd 'em by particular favors, and gave veils to them, as well as to the Cherifs and other great lords, who were assembled from all parts of the empire; he did the same to the generals, the governors of the provinces, and all the officers.

After the marriage-feasts were over, Timur again betook himself to the administration of public

public affairs, ordering every one to return to Chapiz, his proper employment. The licence which had been granted during the feast was recall'd; and for the future no one was allow'd to drink wine, or commit any thing unlawful. Afterwards Timur sent to his master, to address himself to God by the following prayer.

" O Almighty-being, who art above whatever man can conceive, and whose essence is unknown to any but thy-self, being all in all; how can I recite thy praises, and how return thanks in proportion to the favors I have receiv'd, since they are infinite? Out of nothing hast thou created me; from poverty hast thou made me rich; and from a petty prince hast thou render'd me the most mighty emperor of the universe. To thy great bounty I owe the gaining of so many battles, and the conquest of so many kingdoms: for what am I, a poor and vile creature? I shou'd be incapable of every thing, were I not assisted by thy grace. In peace thou favor'st me with quiet and joy; and in war thou givest me victory, and maintain'st me in sovereign authority, fear'd by my enemys, and lov'd by my subjects. Continue then, O thou great Creator, thy goodness towards me: since thou hast chosen me in thy clemency, don't chase me away in thy wrath. I know that I am but dust; and that if thou dost not favor me with thy protection, all my glory and grandeur will be turn'd into vileness and disgrace. O Lord, put me not to shame because of my vices, who have been so long accusow'd to partake of thy favors: and then I shall rest contented."

## C H A P. XXVI.

*The causes which invited Timur to undertake the conquest of the kingdom of China.*

**I**N the beginning of Timur's rise Asia was in the possession of usurpers, who had rais'd themselves to sovereignty, either by the extinction of the race of former kings and emperors, or by intrigues and revolts: but as the world cou'd not be peaceably govern'd by so many sovereigns, there were continual wars amonst 'em, and the poor people were drove into great extremity. Virtue and tranquillity were banish'd the places which robbers only poss'd; security was no longer to be met with on the high-ways, which were full of thieves; and in fine, every thing was in confusion and disorder. The world might then be well compar'd to a human body, which being infected with some corrupt matter, necessarily falls sick, and can receive no benefit but from a strong medicine, which purges out the cause of the disease; and yet this purgation can't be undergone without some inconveniences which may arise from a deprav'd appetite. In the same manner, God, who was pleas'd to purge the world, made use of a medicine, which was both sweet and bitter, to wit, the clemency and the wrath of the incomparable Timur; and to that effect, inspir'd in him an ambition to conquer all Asia, and to expel the several tyrants thereto. He establish'd peace and security in this part of the world: so that a single man might carry a silver-bason fill'd with gold from the east of Asia

Asia to the well. But yet he cou'd not accomplish this great affair, without bringing in some measure upon the places he conquer'd, destruction, captivity, and plunder, which are the co-  
comitants of victory.

After this he w<sup>t</sup>z happily return'd from the conquests of Syria, Nacolia and Georgia, and of consequence found himself absolute master of all the empires of Iran and T<sup>o</sup>ur<sup>o</sup>stan, he generally took up a resolution to make preparations for the conquest of China, which was inhabited by infidels; that by this good work he might rectify what had been amis in other wars, wherein the blood of so many of the faithful had been spilt. Thus, after the marriage of the prince his grandchildren was consummated, he summon'd the Mirzae his children, and the great Emirs of his council to court, to whom he made the following speech.

" God hath farr'd us with such extraordinary good fortune, that we have conquer'd Asia, and overthrown the greatest kings of the earth, few soveraigns in past ages having acquir'd so great dominions, or attain'd to great authority, or had such numerous armies, or so absolute a command. And as these y<sup>t</sup>ll conquests have not been obtain'd without some violence, which has caus'd the destruction of a great number of God's creatures; I have resolv'd to perform some good action, which may atone for the crimes of my past life, and to accomplish that which all the world besides is not capable of, that is, to make war on the infidel, and extirpate the idolaters of China, which can't be done without very great strength and power. It is therefore fitting, my dear companions, that those very troops which have been the instr-

Book VI. " means whereby those faults were committed,  
 " shou'd also be the instruments of repentance ;  
 " and that they march into China, to acquire  
 " the merit of that holy war, in demolishing  
 " the temples of the idols of the fire, and erect-  
 " ing in their places mosques and chappels;  
 " By this means we shall obtain the pardon of  
 " our sins, as the Alcoran assures us, saying  
 " that *good works efface the sins of this world.*"

Timur having finish'd this speech, the princes  
 of the blood and Emirs besought God to bless  
 his good intentions, unanimously applauding  
 his sentiments, and loading him with praises :  
 " Let the emperor, say they, display his stan-  
 " dard; and wo his slaves will follow him, and  
 " sacrifice our lives in his service."

Then orders were given to the Tavachis to  
 take an exact number of all the soldiers by  
 thousands, and to augment and enroll the regi-  
 ments. Timur commanded all the Emirs of  
 Opolys<sup>1</sup>, and the governors of provinces, to  
 assemble their soldiers : they took copys of the  
 Touscal<sup>2</sup> from the great Tavachis, that they  
 might know in what order and with what arms  
 they shou'd come; and they departed, to get  
 together their troops in all the provinces.

Timur then went from Canighul, and enter'd the city of Samarcand, where he lodg'd  
 in the college of Sosai Mule Camum. He gave  
 the Mirza Pir Meliemed a crown, belt and horse,  
 and permitted him to return to Zabul ; he also  
 gave to each of his domestics a horse and a suit

\* The Emirs of Opolys are the natural lords of the Tartar  
 horda, who are inferior to the governors of provinces.

<sup>2</sup> The order for the war.

of clothes: he order'd the Mirza Sidi Ahmed<sup>1</sup>, Chap. 10.  
son of Omar Cheik, to accompany him. And ~~they~~  
they took the road to Candahar.

The emperor did particular honors, and gave  
velts and belts to the ambassador of Egypt,  
who obtain'd leave to return home: he order'd  
Moulana Abdalla Kechi to accompany him,  
whom he sent with a convoy in embassy to the  
Sultan of Egypt, for whom he gave him a letter  
seventy cubits long, and three in breadth, wrote  
in letters of gold by Moulana Cheik Mehemed,  
son of the doctor Hadji Pendeghir Tebrizi,  
who wou'd not yield to his father as to the beau-  
ty of his style and the art of writing finely.  
The substance of this letter was an answer to  
what the Sultan of Egypt had writ with regard  
to the Sultan Ahmed and Cara Yensel. He sent  
with this letter several curious presents worthy  
of the greatest prince.

Timur likewise granted particular honors and  
favors to the ambassadors of Europe<sup>2</sup>, Decte  
Capchac, Gete and other parts, and permitted  
'em to return home. He likewise dismiss'd the  
princess Melker Agz, who had assisted at the  
feast, and afterwards return'd to the Mirza Chac-  
roe at Herat. He sent to Hamadan the princess  
Beghisi Sultan his daughter, to the Mirza Eshen-  
dar her husband: and she pass'd by Socara and  
Macan.

<sup>1</sup> I believe that Sidi Ahmed was the father of Esther Mirza,  
whose descendants reign in India at this present, under the  
title of the great Moguls.

<sup>2</sup> The Spanish ambassadors, whom we have mention'd in  
the present, were dismiss'd at the same time as those of Egypt  
were, without obtaining an audience of leave of Timur, who  
was reported to have been very sick, on which account, in the  
Spanish relation is a said there mistake that he was dead.

Book VI. Timur gave the Mirza Oline Bec the government of the towns of Tachkunt, Scitam, Yenghi, Achira, and all the kingdom of Gute as far as Chia; and to the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan that of Andecan, Aesilet, Taraz and Cachgar, as far as Cotan; which he confirm'd by letters-patent seal'd with his red hand. Among the Emirs of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, Tagi Bonga and three others set out to assemble the troops of those provinces, and bring 'em to Tachkunt, which was the general rendezvous of the army. Temour Coja Achbouga was banish'd to Asfigheul in Mogolistan, for a fault he had committed.

Timur went from the college of Serai Mule Canum to Aree<sup>\*</sup>, and lodg'd at Ghreec Serai, a palace he had built.

---

## CHAP. XXVII.

*Timur sets out for the war against the infidels of China.*

THE Alcoran remarks, that if any one in his pilgrimage to Mecca shou'd be surpris'd by death, the merit of this good work is written in heaven in his name, as surely as if he had had the good fortune to execute it: it is the same in relation to the Gazzie, where with troubles and fatigues mix'd with dangers an eternal mer-

---

\* Aree is the incubus of the ancient royal palace of Samarcand.

it is acquire'd; and he who dies during the ex-  
pedition is deem'd to have executed his design. Chap. 2.  
It was fitting that so great a hero as Timur  
shou'd die in the bed of honor, and that this  
inevitable accident shou'd happen during a jour-  
ney he undertook for God's glory, and to acquire  
the rewards the Alcoran promises to the Oraiss,  
that is, the war against the infidels. And as the  
death of this great man was nearly approaching,  
when he took up a resolution to march into  
China, God permitted that neither the season,  
nor the country he must pass thro', which were  
always cover'd with snow and frost, shou'd be  
able to divert him from his resolution, or ob-  
lige him to retard his departure till the spring.

He gave orders to the Emir Herendae to re-  
view the troops, and bring him an account how  
many men there were in the army he design'd  
to carry into China. This Emir reported, that  
the troops of Transoxiana, Turkestan, Balic,  
Bokhara, Corisana, Silan, Marendran, the  
Carataatars brought from Naria, the colonies  
from Persia, Azerbijana and Irac, amounted to  
two hundred thousand men compleat, capable  
of undertaking the greatest enterprize. Timur,  
very much pleas'd at the good state of his troops,  
distributed his treasure among 'em, and com-  
manded 'em to begin their march.

The Mirzas Calil Sultan and Ahmed Omar  
Cheik, accompany'd by the Emirs Codadad Huf-  
feini, Chamseddin Abbas, and other generals of  
Timur's and Hezares of the right wing, were  
order'd to pass the winter with their troops at  
Tachkent, Chahroukhia, and Seiran; and the  
Mirza Sultan Husein was to take up his winter-  
quarters with some troops of the left wing at  
Yassi and Sabran. Chahroukhia, which was  
formerly nam'd Penjoumt, was so ren'd by Gen-  
A 3 ght

Book VI. ghe Can's army, that therer remain'd no foot-  
 steps of any edifices till the year of the Monk,  
 An. Dom. 1392. which answers to the year of the Hegira 794,  
 when Timur order'd his lieutenants to rebuild  
 and repeople it: and as Timur then gave it to  
 the Muzza Charoe, it was call'd from his name  
 Chahreskha.

Jan. 2.  
1403.

The emperor having intrusted the government  
 of Samarcand to Argoun Chah, and the care of  
 his treasures to the Cheik Tchoura, order'd the  
 great standard to be display'd: and he departed  
 from Samarcand the 25<sup>th</sup> of Jamaziulvel 803,  
 the sun being in the middle of Aquarius, in a  
 sextile aspect with Jupiter; and the moon being  
 in Libra, in a sextile aspect with the sun, and  
 in a trine aspect with Jupiter. He laid hold on  
 the happy moment which the astrologers had  
 fix'd for his departure, and took the road to A-  
 soult. He went directly to Caraboulat in Sog-  
 diana.

Then the standard departed from Caraboulat,  
 and took the road to Iianoti: and after several  
 days arriv'd at Tambi, where great rains and  
 snows fell, the wind blew excessively, and the  
 cold was extremely violent: yet this did not  
 hinder Timur's departure and arrival at Acsou-  
 lat. And as this place was full of sands, and  
 there was abundance of small wood for burning,  
 orders had been given before to build cottages  
 of reeds, and some houses fit to lodge in. The  
 emperor being repos'd in his apartment, the  
 Mirzas and soldiers encamp'd each in their re-  
 spective posts. The sun was then enter'd into  
 Pisces, the cold daily increas'd, and the winter  
 was more violent than usual.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

*An account of certain adventures, the knowledg of which is necessary to the understanding the latter part of this history. A relation of what pass'd at Aculat.*

LOVE is often the cause of many disorders. The Mirza Cali Sultan, after having got with child the princess Dgehan Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Ali, Timur's sister's son, became desperately in love with one of the concubines of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, nam'd Chadi Mule. This passion got so great an ascendent in his soul, that he cou'd not rest till he had marry'd her, which was during Timur's absence; of which the princess his wife being inform'd, so great a jealousy kindled in her heart, that she discover'd the case to the emperor at Samarcand. Orders were immediately given out for Chadi Mule to make her appearance: but the Mirza conceal'd her, which so provok'd Timur, that he order'd diligent search to be made after her; and being found, she was condemn'd to die, and wou'd have suffer'd immediately, if the Mirza Pir Mehomed Gehanghir had not beg'd for a reprieve. Nevertheless advice was given the emperor at Aculat, that the Mirza Cali Sultan had again conceal'd her in his apartment: whereupon the Emir Berat had orders to go and seize her, and bring her away: which being done, Timur in a great passion commanded her to be put to death. The empress Serai Mule Canum cou'd not bear to see

Book VI. the deep anxiety and despair the poor Mirza  
 fell into: but considering moreover the great  
 love Timur bore to the princess his children, who  
 endeavour'd to accommodate the difference, by  
 the help of the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and  
 Chamolik; and persuaded 'em to inform the  
 emperor, that this lady was with child by the  
 Mirza. On this account the order was rever'd,  
 and the princess entrust'd to the care of the  
 empress Bouyan Aga, that after her lying-in she  
 might bring up the child, and commit the  
 lady to some of her black slaves\*.

The emperor being at Aesoulat, order'd the  
 Mirzas his sons, the commanders of kingdoms,  
 the governors of provinces, the Dreggs of  
 cities, and other grand officers and lords of his  
 empire, to write to their lieutenants, to advise  
 'em to take great care during the expedition  
 into China that the laws be duly executed, and  
 justice dispens'd every where, so that the people  
 might enjoy quiet and security: that they shou'd  
 not give head to the disturbers of the public  
 tranquillity, as knowing it was their duty to  
 treat the people well, since they were created  
 to 'em by the Creator: that they behave them-  
 selves in such a manner, that when an account  
 shall be demanded of their conduct, they may  
 have no cause to repent, nor be the reason of  
 Timur's blushing for shame before the throne of  
 God, at the day of judgment. This order was  
 carefully executed, and sent into all the provin-  
 ces by men of probity,

\* The black slaves are eunuchs, and the ordinary guardians  
 of the Mahometan ladies. The reason of Timur's putting this  
 lady into their hands, was to hinder the Mirza Cahil Sultan's ha-  
 ving any future commerce with her.

Then the Mirza Calil Sultan went to Tachkunt, according to the orden he had receiv'd ; and the Mirza Sultan Hussein to Yelli and Sabran. There was nothing to be seen any where but carriages and waggons, which were brought from all the provinces, and fill'd with all sorts of ammunition ; and an infinite number of horses brought from all parts to be sold, which the emperor bought, and distributed among the Mirzas, Emirs and soldiers. Then the Seid Coja, son of the Cheik Ali Behader, came from Corassan from the Mirza Chatoc, with advice of the good health of that prince.

The emperor sent the Emir Berendac to Tachkunt, to bring away the provisions : and he publish'd an order for all the generals and great officers to keep an exact account of the stores of their Tomans, Hexares and Sedes : that in this long expedition no one might be oblig'd to stay behind for want of either provision or arms. This order had so good an effect, that in this numerous army each horseman had enough to suffice ten men, as well in victuals as in ammibalies. Besides this, several thousand loads of corn were carry'd in the waggons which follow'd the army, to sow the fields on their road, that at their return they might not have a scarcity. Several thousands of she-cameis were also carry'd, that on a prelling occasion their milk might serve for nourishment to the soldiers. These precautions were necessary to an army, so numerous as not to be match'd in antiquity. Those who had seen the immense riches at the farr of Canighul, were struck with admiration : and men of the best sense reflected upon the Arabian saying, *'That when a man has attain'd the highest degree of prosperity, he is upon the point of perdition.'* Moli perious said, even in public,

Book VI. after having seen the prodigious grandeur and magnificence which appear'd in the pleasures of Camighul, and the fine appearance which this innumerable army made, with the vast quantity of arms and baggage which were in the imperial camp, that they no longer doubted the prosperity of Timur being arriv'd at its utmost perfection, and consequently fear'd with reason the diminution of his good fortune. People began to mistrust some disgrace wou'd befall 'em; and their hearts fluctuating between hope and fear, they daily besought God to preserve the emperor from the misfortunes which attend the greatest prosperity, and to turn the evil and destructive eyes \* from off this reign, which they hop'd wou'd endure a great while longer.

\* See  
book IV.  
chap. 32.

## C H A P. XXIX.

### *Timur departs from Aſſouat.*

THE sun was yet in Capricorn, and the violence of the cold so great, that several men and horses perifi'd in the road, some losing their hands and feet, others their ears and noses: the snows and rains were continually falling, the whole face of the heavens seeming to be cover'd but by one cloud, and the whole earth by one piece of snow. Astronomers remark, that at this time there was a conjunction of the three superior planets in Aquarius; which was a presage of some great misfortune. Yet the desire of acquiring the merit of the *Gazis* prevail'd in the mind of our conqueror above the greatest difficulties: he wou'd not wait till the cold abated, but inform'd himself of the nature and cir-

circumstances of the roads, of the water, paf-  
torage, deserts and mountains, which he order'd  
to be taken down in writing, that all necessary  
precautions might be us'd.

Then Timur set out from Aesculat; and sent  
fresh orders to the Mirzas Cali Sultan and Ah-  
med, accompany'd by the Emirs Codzadat Huf-  
seini, Yadghiar, Chah Erlat, Chamfeddin Ab-  
bas, Berendac, and eight others, who were in  
winter quarters with their troops about Tach-  
kunt, Chahroukhia, and Seirain; as also to  
the Mirza Sultan Husein, who was with his  
about Yass and Sabran in Capehac, not to fail  
of leaving their winter-quarters at the begin-  
ning of spring, in order to join the court.

Timur having march'd two days and one  
night, went to Ouzoun-Ata to encamp, then  
to Yoscadgiaz Cheik, from thence to Sourkent,  
and afterwards to Comercha Ata, to Sultan  
Cheik, and at length to the town of Zernouc,  
from whence he departed, and crossing the Si-  
hon upon the ice, encamp'd on the other bank.  
This river was froze so hard this year, that  
they were oblig'd to dig two or three cubits to  
get water; and from the sun's entring Sagitta-  
rius to his coming out of Pisces, waggons, men  
and beasts, cou'd pass either the Gibon or Si-  
hon in any part of 'em.

Timur having decamp'd from the banks of  
the Sihon, arriv'd at Otrar on wednesday the  
12th of Regab 897, and lodg'd in the palace of Tib. 27.  
1305.  
Birdi Bei, where all the princes and lords had  
likewise each their respective apartments. The  
day of the emperor's arrival, one corner of the  
roof of the palace, where he was lodg'd, set  
fire, by the tunnel of a chimney running by it;  
but the fire was soon extinguish'd. This acci-  
dent disquieted the lords of the court, insomuch

Book VI. as most of 'em had had frightful dreams which prognosticated some misfortune ; and it seem'd as if nature had given the people an insight into what shou'd happen to their prince. But fate is in evitable.

Timur sent Moossa Recmal to discover whether there was any passage over the bridge, who carefully examin'd the whole, and brought answer that it was impossible to cross it. Another, who had been sent towards Seiram and the mountain of Coulan, on his return declar'd that the snow of this mountain was two pikes high.

Then Cara Coja, an atheist domestic of Tocatmich Can, heretofore emperor of Capchac, arriv'd at court in quality of ambassador from that prince, who had a long time wander'd about as a vagabond in the desert of Capchac. Timur being pleas'd to grant him a magnificent audience, enter'd in state into the Divan Carr, and ascended his throne ; the princes Tassi Aglen, of the race of Ocaj Caan<sup>1</sup>, Bachtanur Aglen, and Giers Aglen, of the race of Teuchi Can, sitting on his right hand, and the Mirzis Olout-Bec, Ibrahim Sultan, and Ajjgel on the left. The ambassador was conducted to the audience by the Emrys Birdi Bei and Noureddin two brothers, Chamelic and Coja Yousel ; and having prostrated himself, had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet : he made an harangue from his master in these words. " I have, " says he, suffer'd the punishment my ingratitude merited : the slight acknowledgment I have made for so many favors receiv'd of your highness, hath drawn upon me the misery " I had my self reduc'd to. I have no other

<sup>1</sup> Cara Ugashy Can of Caan.

" refuge

" refuge than the hope of pardon from your Chap: 22  
" bounty: and if I can be affir'd you'll forget  
" your servant's faults, I will discover a grateful  
" sense of the favor by a constant submission to  
" your imperial orders."

Timur, according to his wonted goodness, treated this ambassador with civility, and even affir'd him that at his return from the war of China, he wou'd again conquer the kingdom of Touchi Can, which he had a design to put into the hands of Tocatmiri Can his master. After these civil treatments he dismiss'd the ambassador Cara Coja, sending by him a present to Tocatmich. And Timur's intention being to depart forthwith from Otrar to continue his expedition into China, he design'd to send back the emperors and the young princes his children, who out of ceremony were come thither to wait upon him. But fate had otherwise order'd it.

---

### C H A P. XXX.

#### *Timur's death at Otrar.*

THE Alcoran remarks, that God created the world for the sake of man, but man for his own service. By this we see that the dignity of the human soul is too great to remain for ever in this material body; and that so pure and excellent a being can't find satisfaction but in the enjoyment of him who created it, and gave it immortality.

Timur, after the campaign of seven years, in which he had conquer'd almost all Asia, turn'd the whole of his ambition towards the establishing of justice in the world, informing himself of the

Book VI. the state of his subjects, and redressing all evils : if they were oppres'd by tyrants, he did 'em justice ; and if in poverty, he enrich'd 'em by his favors ; and by this mean render'd the world flourishing, and rejoic'd the people's hearts. As soon as he was return'd to the seat of his empire, without reposing himself from his fatigues any longer than five months, he form'd a design to make war on the idolaters of China, hoping by that to obtain pardon of God for his former crimes : and having set out for that expedition, he came to Otar, seventy six leagues or par-

sages distant from Samarcand.

March 25. 1603. On wednesday the 10th of Chaban 807, Timur was attack'd with a burning fever, and believe'd he heard the Houris\* say to him, Repent, for you must appear before God. On this, he became sincerely penitent for his crimes, and resolv'd to make satisfaction for 'em by good works. His sickness increasing, he found himself very much weaken'd, having no rest : affliction seiz'd the heart of all the court, which appear'd the greater as the distemper augmented. Then neither empire, nor armys, nor riches, nor crowns sted him in any stead.

And the Moulana Fadialla Tebrizi, one of the most skilful physicians of the age, employ'd all his care in prescribing the most excellent remedys, yet the sicknes became more violent. Physic is useles when fate has ordain'd the death of any one. All hopes of the emperor's health were lost : his physicians having given him over. But the his body was weaken'd, yet his mind continu'd sound ; and notwithstanding

\* The Houris are continual virgins, who the Mahometans believe are appropried for their pleasure in their prophet's paradise.

ing his violent griēs, he was always informing Chap. 10.  
himself of the condition of his army. When he  
found his sickness so strong, that all remedy  
prov'd ineffectual, he resolv'd courageously to  
face death; and calling the emperors and prin-  
cipal Emirs into his presence, he made the fol-  
lowing testament.

" I am satisfy'd that my soul is about to leave <sup>Time's</sup> my body, and that my asylum is at the <sup>hand</sup> ~~will~~ throne of God, who gives and takes away life at his pleasure. I beseech you to utter neither crys nor groans at my death; and instead of rending your garments, and running to and fro like madmen, pray to God to have mercy on me; say Allah Echel', and the Fazilah', that my soul may find comfort. Since God has so highly favor'd me as to enable me to give laws to the earth, whereby at present thru all the kingdoms of Iran and Turan no one dare encroach upon his neighbour, nor the great oppress the poor, I have hopes that he will pardon my sins, tho they are without number. I have this consolation, that during my reign I have not permitted the strong to injure the weak. Tho I am not ignorant of the instability of the world, yet I do not advise you to leave off caring for the affairs thereof: since that will cause disorders among men, banish safety from the highways, and be an oblique to the people's quiet: and it is certain that at the day of judgement an account will be demanded of those, to whom the care of those things have been intrusted.

### 1. God is the most wise

The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Mahometans recite, is Christians do the Lord's prayer.

Book VI.

For Mohamed  
Gehanghir  
deceas'd  
Timur's  
successor.

" I declare my son Pie Mehemed Gehanghir  
 " my universal heir, and lawful successor to  
 " the empire. He must possess the throne of  
 " Samarcand with an absolute and independent  
 " sovereignty, that he may carefully manage  
 " both the religious and civil affairs, and take  
 " care of the necessities of the army, and of  
 " the city and country's subject to my jurisdiction.  
 " I command you all to obey him, and  
 " unanimously to sacrifice your lives in maintaining  
 " his authority; that the world may not  
 " fall into disorder, and that my labor for so  
 " many years may not be lost. If you agree  
 " together, no one will dare to oppose you, or  
 " offer the least obstacle against the execution of  
 " my last will."

Timur then order'd all the Emirs and great  
 lords of the court, and the generals of the  
 army, to come before him, whom he strictly en-  
 join'd to see to the execution of his testament;  
 and made 'em promise in his presence with so-  
 lemn oaths not to consent that any one shou'd  
 oppose it: and he sent orders to all the Emirs and  
 generals who were absent to take the same  
 oaths.

The lords having heard this discourse, were  
 in the utmost consternation, melted into tears,  
 and fell with their faces to the ground. The  
 Emirs Cheik Nourreddin and Chamelie, whose  
 hearts were seiz'd with grief and despair, said to  
 Timur, " We cou'd sacrifice our lives with a  
 " great deal of pleasure to purchase one single  
 " day more for our gracious master. If our  
 " death wou'd be of service to you, our lives  
 " shou'd call us nothing: but it is impossible to  
 " alter the decrees of providence. We are your  
 " slaves; and tho' being depriv'd of your pre-  
 " sence we have no longer any joy or content-  
 " ment,

ment, yet we can assure your highness, that as long as we live, we will not fail of continuing obedient to your orders, tho' at the hazard of our lives. May heaven never grant us success, if we have the least thoughts of doing any thing contrary to the will of our benefactor. We will always walk in the same paths of obedience after your death as during your life."

While they were thus speaking, tears gush'd out of their eyes, their minds no longer enjoy'd any quiet, and their bodys lost all their natural strength. They told the emperor that if he please, they woud write to the Mirza Choroe Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkent, to come to court, that having the honor to see their master's face once more, they might learn from his own mouth his last will. " For, say they, this we shoud declare to 'em the term of your last will with all possible exactness, yet it will not have the same force on 'em, as if they had heard it themselves." But the emperor answer'd that his hour was approaching; that those who were absent cou'd not come time enough to see him; and that it was impossible for 'em to meet again till the day of judgment. " This, says he, is the last audience you will have of me. I have no other desire than to see the Mirza Choroe once more; but that is impossible: God will not have it so." The ladies and princes, who were in the antechamber to observe the course of his distemper, on hearing this, lost all patience, and fell into the utmost consternation. Then Timur turning towards the princes his children, spoke to 'em as follows.

" Remember to do every thing I have recommended to you in relation to the public tranquillity; and be constantly informing your selves

Book VI. " selves of the affairs of your subjects. Be valiant, and courageously keep possession of your swords, that like me you may enjoy a long reign and a vast empire. I have purg'd the country of Iran and Tonian from the enemys and disturbers of the people's quiet; and have render'd em flourishing by my justice. If you do what my testament directs, and make equity and justice the rule of your actions, the kingdom will remain a long time in your hands: but if discord creeps in among you, ill fortune will attend your undertakings: your enemys will breed wars and sedition, which it will be difficult to put a stop to; and irreparable mischiefs will arise both in religion and government."

After this discourse the dissenter increas'd: and tho there were several Imans and readers without the door of the chamber, who read the Alcoran from one end to the other, yet Timur was pleas'd to have the doctor Montana Hebeulla, son of Moulana Obaid, to read the word of God at his bed's-head, and often repeat the belief of the unity of God. At night, between the evening-prayer and bed-time, (that is about eight o'clock) Timur several times made profession of his belief of Lashkhillah\*, rememb'reing the promise of Mahomet, that he whose last words are, There is no other god than God, shall assuredly enter into paradise. Then he gave up his soul to the angel Esraiel\*, who call'd him in these words: " O soul, that hopest in God, return to thy Lord with re-signation. We belong to God, and must return to him."

\* There is no other god than God.

This fatal event happen'd on wednesday-night Chapter  
the 17th of Châban 807, which answers to the 14th of February 1401 of the Gregorian epocha, the sun being in the eighth degree of Pisces.

April 1.  
1401.

Several learned men have compos'd series on his death, in which the date of the year is contain'd; and among others Moulana Beha'ul-din Dgyami: they say he was seventy-one years of age, and that he had reig'd thirty-six, a number equal to that of his children and grandchildren, as we shall see in the last chapter.

---

### C H A P. XXXL

*Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.*

TIMUR having pass'd from this mansion of pride to the paradise of eternal delights, fear and horror leiz'd both upon his friends and enemys; every one was jealous of disorders and wars, and did not in the least doubt but the security and tranquillity of the state wou'd entirely perish. The affliction wou'd have been insupportable, had not his horoscope predicted the continuation of the crown in his august family; and that the kingdom he had conquer'd by the strength of his arm, and which he had render'd flourishing by his justice, wou'd remain in peace under the protection of his children who shou'd succeed him in the empire. Notwithstanding this, the princes of the blood cast their crowns upon the earth; the emperors and ladies tore their rses and their hair; the Eunuchs and principal persons rent their robes, and flinging themselves upon the ground, pass'd that dismal night in grief: and it seem'd as if the heavens had shar'd in this affliction, since rains and

Book VI. thunder, storms and tempest did not cease all the night.

Next morning the grandees of the court ended their lamentations, to perform the emperor's funeral obsequy. The doctors Hendim-chali Casnegi and Moulana Cotobeddin Sedre had the care of the ceremony. They order'd the prayers and verses of the Alcoran, appointed on these occasions, to be read. Then the body was wash'd, and embal'm'd with camphire, musk and rose-water; and being wrap'd up in linen, was laid in a coffin of ebony, after having recommended his soul to G. d.

When they had finisht this ceremony, the great Emirs who attended his person, as Birdi Beg, son of Saboura, and his brother the Emir Cheik Noureddin, Chamelic, Coja Yossef, and several others, solemnly swore they woud always associate together, and use their utmost endeavours, even in the hazard of their lives, to see Timur's testament executed. And as the design of the war in China was not yet abandon'd, they kept Timur's death conceal'd, and forbade the ladies changing their habits, or shewing any exterior signs of grief, that the enemy might not have present advice of it.

Afterwards they went to meet the emperess, and held a council with 'em in relation to what must be done at this present conjuncture. They sent advice of the misfortune to the Mirza Cahil Sultan, and the Emirs who were at Tachkant. They dispatch'd expresses to Yassi, and Sabean, to the Mirza Sultan Huleis, to advertise him that the emperor's sickness increas'd, and that he shou'd come to court with but few of his men. They sent Kazar, Couachir to Gaznia, with letters to the Mirza Pir Mehemed Géhaoghir, to inform him of Timur's death, and of his will,

in which he had declar'd him his universal heir Chap. 32. and successor to the empire; and they besought him to repair immediately to Samarcand. They also wrote letters to all the Mirzas and governors of provinces, inviting 'em to observe all the vigilance necessary on the like occasions, to guard the country's entrail'd to 'em, and secure themselves from all reproach; praying 'em to inform themselves exactly of whatever shou'd pass on their frontiers, and give advice of it to court; in fine, to neglect nothing which might hinder any surprise, because the enemys and disturbers of the publick tranquillity had kept themselves conceal'd for several years as it were in exile, and waited only such a favorable opportunity as this; that in the mean while they shou'd execute justice, and continue their favors to the people, that no one might have any thoughts of revolting. The Cheik Fencut went espres's to the Mirza Charocat Herat, Ali Derovich to the Mirza Omar at Tauris, Aratzmou to the Mirzas Miran Chah and Aboubere at Bagdad, and another into Fars and Iraq.

## C H A P. XXXII.

## Timur's coffin transported from Otrar.

THE Mirzas, emperors and Emirs, who were at Otrar, on thursday-night the 13th of Chaban 857, at the time of evening-prayers, cover'd the coffin with velvet and black damask; and with it took the road to Samarcand: they pass'd the river Jaxartes in the night upon the ice, and went into a wood on the bank of the river: from Otrar to the Jax-

April 2.  
1905

Book VI. arses are but two leagues or parasanges. Next morning the grief became so violent, that nothing was heard but the most pitiful groans and lamentations, no one being able to abstain from sorrow. The Emirs, Hasekis and Couthoms cast their turbans upon the ground, and cover'd their heads with dust; while the ladys rent their hair, and rubb'd their cheeks with their nails.

After these demonstrations of affliction, the wise Emir gave the following advice. "Since  
 " late, say they, begins to make us feel mis-  
 " fortune, we must give way to its force, no-  
 " thing being able to hold out against its efforts.  
 " The most resolv'd politicks can't retard its  
 " course: death makes no difference between  
 " kings and slaves. On this account, the best  
 " method is to fortify our selves with patience,  
 " since there is no other remedy, and endeavor  
 " by alms, works of piety, prayers, and read-  
 " ing of the Alcoran, to rejoice, if possible, the  
 " soul of our deceas'd master. Death liev in  
 " ambuscade to surprize us; it gives the finish-  
 " ing stroke to all affairs, as well to the con-  
 " quest of the world, as to the least trifles: no  
 " one is exempted from it; and he who never  
 " dies can't be born again." These counsells  
 not being powerful enough to appease the great  
 despair in which every one was plung'd, the  
 Emirs had recourse to Mahomet's death, at the  
 same time beseeching him to intercede for the  
 consolation of the afflicted. They shew'd that  
 tho' this great prophet was the most excellent of  
 God's creatures, and the seal of the prophets, yet  
 the moment destin'd for his death being  
 come, his pure soul broke the cords by which it  
 was tied to his body, and with an entire relig-  
 ion took its flight towards paradise; that since

Since this illustrious man cou'd not be immortal, Chap. 33.  
others must not expect to be so; and however affliction this misfortune might appear, there was no other remedy to be us'd, than to resign our selves to fate, and implore the assistance of God, whose orders we must obey.

---

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*The empresses and Emirs hold a council concerning the war of China.*

THE reading of the history and death of Mahomer having a little moderated the universal grief, the Emirs took this opportunity to give the following counsel to the empresses and princez.

" There is no doubt, say they, that if so powerful and numerous an army, which was never exceeded by any in past ages, nor probably ever will be in times to come, shou'd march into the enemy's country, we shall easily extirpate the infidels in a short time; and tho' the news of our master's death shou'd be carry'd to the Calmucks and Chinese, yet all news being thought either true or false, if we lead our army as far as their frontier, they will be jealous they have receiv'd false advice, and say that if Tamer was dead, no one wou'd be powerful enough to lead an army of that strength; and thus imagining he is yet alive, and that we spread the rumor of his death thro' artifice and design, they will be fill'd with fear, while we shall gain an easy victory. It is requisite that we put all Tamer's intentions in execution, and confiding in God,

Book VI. " carry our arms into China, where we may  
 " employ all our strength in prosecuting this re-  
 " ligious war with vigor, which the em-  
 " peror had resolv'd to wage with the idolaters  
 " of China, in order to procure glory to the  
 " Musulmans. And after we shall have secure'd  
 " our confidence in this point, we will display  
 " the victorious standard, and return to Samar-  
 " cand, where we will employ all our joint en-  
 " deavours in the well-governing of the empire.  
 " Thro' the grace of God, there are more than  
 " thirty kings or sons of kings whom our master  
 " has left for his successors to the crown, one  
 " of whom will necessarily inherit it. For  
 " wou'd it not be most unhappy that so mighty  
 " an army, equip'd with so much difficulty  
 " and care by Timur, after having begun its  
 " march, and gone so many days journey with  
 " design to make war on the infidels, shou'd re-  
 " turn without having executed any thing of  
 " consequence.

The princes, contresses, and great Emirs re-  
 " volving these things in their minds, unanimously  
 " resolv'd. That the Emirs with their regiments  
 " shou'd march under the command of the Mirza  
 " Ibrahim Sultan, whom Timur had chosen to at-  
 " tend him in the expedition into China; and  
 " that they shou'd join the Mirza Calli Sultan at  
 " Tachkant, to whom the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan  
 " shou'd resign the command of the army, as be-  
 " ing the elder of the Mirzas then present: and  
 " that Calli Sultan shou'd bear the name of em-  
 " peror thro'out the whole campain: but that the  
 " great Emirs of the councill shou'd administer  
 " the affaires of state under him as usual: and  
 " lastly, that they shou'd march into China in this  
 " order, from whence, after having vanquish'd the  
 " idolaters, ruin'd the towns, burnt the temples,  
 " and

and feiz'd on the spoils, tho', shou'd return to ~~Chap. 34.~~ Samarcand, where the emperors, Mirras and Emirs shou'd hold a general diet, to execute Timur's last will and testament.

## C H A P. XXXIV.

*Timur's coffin is transported to Samarcand.*

THE foregoing resolution being taken, the Emirs Coja Yousif and Ali Goutchin, with several lords, took the road to Samarcand with Timur's coffin, where they arriv'd on monday night the 2d of Chaban 807. and April bury'd Timur with the usual solemnity. 140

After they were gone, the other great Emirs gave the following counsel to the emperors. " The our deceas'd master of happy memory has by his testament ordain'd the Mirza Pir Meliemed his successor in the empire; but as this prince is at Candahar, and has perhaps pass'd into India, so that he is at a great distance from us; and if we wait his arrival to conclude the Chincse expedition, we shall not get there in a proper season for making war, we will therefore immediately depart for that campain; and when that Mirza shall arrive at Samarcand, which will be in a little time, because he must soon receive the news of the emperor's death, it is requisite that he enter the city with pomp and ceremony, and ascend the throne of the empire according to the will of his deceas'd grandfather; for to him the crown lawfully belongs. Timur has always cherisht this Mirza's children more than those of my other,

Book VI. " other, because he was the son of Ghangtair  
 ~~~~~ " his eldest son, to whom and to his children the  
 " succession belongs according to the Mahometan law. We may also truly say, that good-
 " fortune has always attended him, and that
 " the majority of kings may be seen even in his
 " countenance; that he is of a pure faith, go-
 " vernes himself by good maxims, has a gen-
 " erous and brave heart, a noble mind, and a
 " princely behavior. His justice, equity and
 " clemency towards the people are more conspi-
 " cuous than the sun; and we ought to expect
 " that this great prince's reign will add new
 " splendor to the throne, great advantages to
 " the subjects, peace and tranquillity in the king-
 " doms dependent on this great empire, and a
 " universal satisfaction among the people; so
 " that the approaching installation of this
 " prince may take away from ill-designing per-
 " sons all means of sowing division, or pro-
 " cing revolt."

This discourse being ended, the emperors
 Serai Male Canum, Tekil Canum, Touman
 Aza, and the other ladies, departed with the
 Mirza Oluc-Bec and others for Samarcand,
 after the emperor's return. The Emirs recom-
 mended to 'em to use all imaginable precautions,
 especially where they encamp'd, and to send out
 constantly to gain intelligence for fear of being
 surpriz'd. This separation was not without a
 mutual affliction.

At ten in the morning of the same day, the
 Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, and the great Emirs
 took horse at the head of the army, with design
 to march into China, to execute the emperor's
 intentions in a Gazzie against the infidels.

Timur's imperial standard, his drum and
 kettledrums, with the ensigns of his vicars,
 were

were carry'd by a troop of horse of the Mirza Chap. 1.
Ibrahim Sultan's court. At the view of this ~~W~~ great train an ingenious person made these re-
flections: "Behold the Standards which are
the signs of command : to beat the drum, be-
longs only to kings : since the time has been
done by this young Mirza, he ought to hope
for the scepter. These are good omens : and
since he is the first who has taken the place
of empire, in all likelihood it will return to
him again in time." All this happen'd as
predicted.

When they had pass'd the Sihon, and march'd
one league, they went to encamp on the bank of
the river Arige, near the bridge of Caldurna,
east of Otrar. An imperial tent and large
parlour were erected there for the Mirza ; and
the horse-tail of the deceased emperor was fix'd
over-against the camp with the usual ceremony.
From thence expresses were sent to the Mirza
Calil Sultan and the great Emirs of the right
wing, who were at Tachkent and Chorozkia,
to inform 'em that they had sent Timur's coffin
to Samarcand, and that the empresses were
gone after 'em : that for their parts they had
resolv'd to continue the war in China, and were
set out with that intent. They also sent couriers
with the same news to the Mirza Sultan Huilato,
who commanded the left wing, desirous him to
march immediately with his troops to join them
at Jouclie, where they might see Timur's last
will and testament, and prepare to march with
them into China. Jouclie, which was the place
of rendezvous, is a town five leagues east from
Otrar.

C H A P. XXXV.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein, Timur's grandson, opposes the sentiment of the Emirs.

NOTHING is more certain, than that every enterprise which is not favor'd by providence will prove unsuccessful. Fate had not resolv'd on the design of making war in China, on which account all the efforts for that purpose were render'd useles, and fortune overthrew'd this hopeful project: for the Mirza-Sultan Hussein had no sooner heard of Timur's death, than the desire of revolting, which had lain conceal'd in his breast so long, and the cause of which he had discover'd in the war at Damascus, where thro' an unkind-of cowardice he abandon'd our party, when the Syrian army sally'd out of the city to attack us; the desire of revolting, I say, re-kindled in his breast on this occasion: and excited by a deprav'd imagination, he disband'd part of the troops of the left wing, and taking from 'em their horses, pass'd the Sihon at Cogendo with a thousand men, each having two horses, with whom he took the road to Samarcand by the way of Cazac, designing to surprize the inhabitants of that place by a stratagem, that they might suffer him to enter the city. At noon of the same day the courier, who had carry'd him the express, return'd with this news. Every one was surpris'd, and thought of taking the necessary measures for preventing his ambitious designs.

C H A P. XXXVI.

The Emirs write circular letters to give advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan Husein's undertaking.

WHEN the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamchic were inform'd of the unjust proceedings of the Sultan Husein, they immediately wrote the following letter to the Emir Argom Chak governor of Samarcand. " The Sultan Husein has begun to act his follys at present: he has disbanded the troops he commanded, and with 2 thousand horsemen, each having two horses, has taken the road to Samarcand; wherefore be upon your guard for the defence of the city, and make no precautions. If this rash young prince approach the city, and you meet with an opportunity of taking him, fail not of securing him; that no misfortunes happen through his means; for he ought not to be spared." They wrote another letter with the same advice to the emperors, beseeching them to stop wherever they then were, till they had join'd em. They also sent a courier to Coja Yousif to inform him of what had happen'd, advising him to make all necessary precautions in relation to the letter, and endeavor to convey it into the city as soon as possible; left the Sultan Husein, excited by his ambition, under pretence of seeing Timur's coffin enter Samarcand, should get in hanch, and stir up a revolt. They dispatch'd an express to the Mirza Calil Sultan and his great Emirs who were at Tachkent, which is distant from Otrar

Book VI. six days journey in the caravan, to let 'em know of the evil design of the Sultan Husein, who had broke their measures in relation to the war with China; that it was proper for the Emirs at Tachkent to return with their troops to Acr, which is a famous meadow full of good pasture; to which place themselves wou'd also repair, and make known to 'em Timur's testament, which he had order'd at the point of death, and which they had sworn to execute; that afterwards they wou'd undergoe in concert to take care of the public concerns, as they shou'd agree together in the diets which were to be held.

When the concours were set out, the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, with the Emiri Cheik Noureddin and Chameli, departed from Otrar, and took the road to Samarcand. The Emir Birdi Bei staid in his government of Otrar: and as the revolt of the Sultan Husein had occasion'd some consternation, the whole army march'd in order of battle towards Samarcand. In the evening they pass'd the Sihen, where the ice brake, and three camels laden with gold were drown'd. They march'd all night, and next morning the Emirs join'd the emperiss.

On the other hand, there happen'd a very crost affai, which was, that the Emirs of Cahil Sultan's court, and even the soldiers of his body of the army, Turks and Tafghies, Irascians, and Novellans, had had advice before the arrival of the express who set out from Otrar, that the Sultan Husein had dispers'd his troops, and taken the road to Samarcand with a thousand horse, that at the reception of this news the fear caus'd by Timur's death was much increas'd; and that imagining they shou'd in some measure remedy it, the Mirza Ahmed Omer Cheik,

Chuk, and the great Emir Codaiad Hussen, Chap. 1
 Yedghiar Shah Estar, Chamreddin Aboz, ²
 Berenduc, and other principal officers, had as-
 sembled at Tachkunt; and without consulting for
 the advice of the other Mirza, the emperilles,
 or great Emirs Cheik Nooreddin and Chamelic,
 had advanc'd the Mirza Calli Sultan to the
 throne of the empire at Tachkunt, and sworn to
 obey him, not considering the ill success which
 must attend an undertaking of that importance.

C H A P. XXXVII.

*A letter to the great Emirs who were at
 Tachkunt.*

THE emperilles, Mirza, and Emirs Cheik Nooreddin and Chamelic, having receiv'd advice of the oath taken by the great Emirs to the Mirza Calli Sultan, whom they had plac'd on the throne, wrote the following letters to 'em by way of reprimand.

" The great Timur our master, of blessed memory, has ordain'd by his last will the Mirza Pir Mehemed Ghanghis his heir and lawful successor to the empire, whom we have sworn to obey, tho' at the peril of our lives. " At present you have acted contrary to the express will of our great master and benefactor. By thus disobeying his last will, you have forgoe the obligations you lie under to him. We did not doubt that if any one had but advis'd to do as you have done, you wou'd have oppos'd 'em with all your power. " We can't comprehend how lords of so great experience have dar'd to commit an action of

* such

Book VI. " such ill consequence ; which in the end must
 " produce repentance and misery on your side.
 " Your manner of acting will doubtless be
 " charg'd as an excess of ambition : how comes
 " it then that you have wounded your reputa-
 " tion by ingratitude towards your benefactor ?
 " You have violated your oath of fidelity to
 " Timur, which you ought never to have done,
 " especially at a time when so many misfor-
 " tunes have been caus'd by the death of our
 " gracious master. Don't you consider the ill
 " name you'll acquire by this action in history,
 " which will remain to the end of time ? How
 " can you consent to this dishonorable deed,
 " who have so often sacrific'd your lives in the
 " pursuit of honour ? How can you become
 " traitors to an emperor, for whose sake you
 " have so often and so generously expos'd your
 " selves to the greatest dangers ? What is most
 " surprizing is, that your consciences must re-
 " prove you at the same time that we do, since
 " you are not ignorant of the crime you have
 " committed. How can persons of your high
 " quality, of so great understanding, and long
 " experience, dare to commit so enormous a
 " fault ? "

This letter was seal'd, and sent by a messenger nam'd Abou Dgyoura : who having deliv-
 er'd it to the Emirs, they read it, and after a
 serious reflection, acknowledg'd their fault, and
 were sorry for it ; but repentance was too late,
 they having resign'd their liberty to another.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

The Emir Berendac arrives at the empresses court, with an answer to the letter sent the Emir, who were at Tachkent with the Mirza Calil Saltan.

THE Mirza, emresses and Emira being encamp'd at Acsotiat, the Emir Berendac, son of Gehza Chub, arriv'd from Tachkent, and being admitted into their presence, paid his compliments of condolence; and afterwards took his place in the council-hall with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamelic, where he presented the following letter written by the Emirs Codadad Hussein and Chamseddin Abbas.

" We have taken an oath to obey the Mirza Calil Saltan, for the good of both church and state, and to maintain the succession of the kingdom in our master's family for ever. The mistake which has happen'd appear'd so terrible to us, that we fear'd some unexpected revolt, which it wou'd have been impossible to have remedy'd. All we have done was with a sincere intention. A general was wanting to our troops, that no one might have any pretence for revolting, which wou'd have brought the state into confusion and disorder: we therefore imagin'd you wou'd have had the same sentiments with us. But since our proceedings do not agree with the last will of our master, we receive his orders with respect and sincerity; and God forbid

VOL. II. Cc

" we

Book V.) " we shoud in any wise contradict 'em. We
 ~~~~~ " shall be always ready to join in whatever you  
 " judge proper to do as to the execution of the  
 " emperor's testament."

The Emirs Chak Noureddin and Chameh  
 having read this letter, which was conformable  
 to what the Emir Berendae had declar'd to 'em,  
 told him they cou'd by no means consent to say  
 thing done in contradiction to Timur's will, and  
 that they woud never acknowledg the Mirza  
 Calli Sultan. " If we disobey our emperor's  
 " orders, say they, and acknowledg any other  
 " for his successor than whom he has declar'd,  
 " we shall deservre to be loaded with misfor-  
 " tunes and shame, and to be for ever accusr'd.  
 " We'll take great care as to what we do in this  
 " affair, of which every sensible and impartial  
 " man may judge."

Then the Emir wrote a second letter to those  
 at Tachkent, whom they invited to submit ex-  
 tarily to the will, and annul the oath they had  
 taken thro inadvertency; as likewise to remem-  
 ber the obligations they were under to the em-  
 peror, and not have cause to blush before him at  
 the day of judgment. " This action, added  
 " they, will look ill both in the sight of God  
 " and man; and be an eternal blot upon you,  
 " which you will never be able to wipe off."

This second letter was put into the hands of  
 the Emir Berendae, to whom they spoke as fol-  
 lows: " You have committed a great fault,  
 " which you ought to repair by vacating the  
 " oath you have so wrongfully taken, and by  
 " following our master's orders, which we are  
 " all oblig'd to obey. Submit your selves to the  
 " Mirza Sir Mehemed, and persuade the Mirza  
 " Calli Sultan to do the same. You must sign  
 " an agreement to that purpose, and send it to

"it at Samarcand, that we may deliver it to Chapis  
the Mirza who is the true and lawful heir to  
the empire." Then the Emir Berendae set out  
for Tachkent.

Next day the Mirzas, emperors and Emirs  
departed to continue their road towards Samar-  
card. The Mirza Oloug-Bec, with the Emir  
Chameli, at the head of one body of the army,  
march'd towards the right: and the Mirza Ibra-  
him Sultan with the Emir Cheik Noureddin,  
commanding another body, towards the left.  
These two Mirzas were then but eleven years  
old: and Oloug-Bec being eldest by four months  
and twenty days, the Emir Chameli, when  
they were arriv'd at Caradgee, set out before,  
in pursuance of the resolution taken in the as-  
sembly; and being arriv'd at Samarcand, the  
governor Argoun Chah shut the gates against  
him, and even plac'd a guard upon the walls.  
The Mirza Calli Sultan had written a letter to  
him full of fine promises, by which he engag'd  
him to be of his side, telling him that if he  
was willing to gain his favor, he shou'd re-  
fuse entrance to the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and  
Chameli.

Argoun Chah, puff'd up by this Mirza's fair  
prospects, which latter'd the ambition and in-  
gratitude inherent in his Turcoman blood, ex-  
plor'd himself to folly, and was won over to  
the Mirza Calli Sultan. The Emir Chameli  
went from the gate of Cheik Zade, which is upon  
that road, to the gate of Tchehar Raka, where  
the Emirs Argoun Chah, Coja Youser, and other  
chiefs of the city commonly keep their stations.  
Argoun Chah wou'd not suffer him to enter, pre-  
tending to stand by the orders he had receiv'd of  
Timur. He moreover told him that he was  
ready to believe the emperor had by his resla-

Book VI. ment ordain'd the Mirza Pir Mehemed his successor: but that he wou'd wait till all the Mirzas and Emirs being assembled together agreed on it, that he wou'd then open the gates to 'em, and they might proclaim the Mirza, and place him upon the throne: after which he wou'd deliver up the government of the city.

The Emir Chamehle believing that what Argum Chah had told him was all grimace, and that he wou'd not open the gate, return'd very much affrighted: he cross'd the river Cophar, and being arriv'd at Ali Abad, a town of Segowana Kelan, he met the Mirzas and amirs, who had pass'd the mountain of Carragee. He told 'em how affright flood, and his thoughts of Argum Chah's real designs. This renew'd their afflications, and oblig'd 'em to encamp. Seraf Mule Camum and Tounan Aga held a council with the Emirs on what was most fitting to be done, and agreed that it wou'd be best to go to Rocara, while they shou'd find the Emir Cheik Noureddin in Samarcand, to persuade the Emirs there to give 'em audience.

April 14.  
1775. This Emir departed the the first of Ramaillia 869, and being arriv'd at the gate of Tchekar Raha, counsell'd the Emirs within, who gave him the same answer as they had the Emir Chamehle. Nevertheless Noureddin got off his horse, pass'd the bridge on foot, and spake to 'em before the gate. " Emirs, said he, what we are now talking of is no trifling matter. Permit me then to enter alone into the city, that we may examine together the good and bad consequences of what you are doing; lest you have cause to repent at last." Whatever Noureddin cou'd say, figura'y'd nothing; for they were buoy'd up with the Mirza Calil Sultan's pro-

promises. The Emir setting his words by one Chap. 15.  
effect, return'd to Ali Abad, where he gave an account to the Mirzas and emperors of all that had pass'd.

## C H A P. XXXIX.

*Relation of what happen'd on the Emir Berendac's return to Tachkent.*

W<sup>E</sup> said before that the Emir Berendac had made a treaty at Aksouat with the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chameche, which he had confirm'd with an oath, wherein he had promis'd to risk his life in the defence of Timur's last will; and that he went back to Tachkent with letters to the Emirs there. These Emirs having read those letters, became very sorry for having proclaim'd and sworn to the Mirza Calil Sultan, and unanimously approv'd of what the Emir Berendac had told 'em from the other Emirs, saying that the throne belong'd to him whom Timur had declar'd his heir by will, and that they wou'd never consent to alter it. After which they drew up a manifesto, which every one sign'd and seal'd, and the Mirza Calil Sultan w<sup>u</sup>ll likewise oblig'd to subscribe. The Mirza order'd Achimich to carry this paper, with presents, to the Emirs Noureddin and Chameche, from whence he was to convey it to the Mirza the lawful heir; and before his departure, he said to him, "When you have assur'd the Mirza " Fir Mehemed of my respects, tell him I am " his sincere friend, and according to the will " of the emperor my father and master, I ac- " knowle<sup>g</sup> him his successor in the empire."

Book V. In this the Mirza acted the part of a hypocrite, his sole desire being to command: and there were some Emirs who egg'd him on to the execution of his designs, tho' they had had access to his person but for a short time. "The strongest, say they, ought to govern; and he who has any advantage shou'd make use of it. You must, my lord, embrace this opportunity to depart immediately for Samarcand, and ascend the throne, after which you shou'd open the treasury, and by your liberality make both high and low your servants; for men in a live to favors. Arm you self with policy and courage for your advancement, and lose no time, for such an affair as this won't admit of delay or cowardice. Such an opportunity may not be met with for several ages: do not therefore neglect it. The poet says, protract not the happy minute: for now; instant as insuperable difficulty may be started."

These advices were so often repeated, that the Mirza's ambition surmounted his reason: he got together all the horses, mules and camels belonging to Timur, and to the Mirza and Emirs at his attendance, which he had left to graze at Tachkunt and Seiram, and distributed 'em among the Emirs and other officers of Irac who were of his party; he gave 'em a great deal of money, scimitars, beits, curasses, arms and munitions, which belong'd to the soldiers of the army who were in those quarters: and then he departed at their head for Samarcand. When he was come near the Sihon, he encamp'd: and afterwards resolv'd that the Emir Berendar, with the troops of the right wing, shou'd cross the Sihon forthwith on a bridge of boats above Chatoukhia; and that himself wou'd pass over

after him; and then the Emirs Coddad, Cham Chap, Sakkia Abkar, and the other Emirs.

The Emir Berendac had already made a secret proposal to these Emirs, that he shou'd join the Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamalie, to which they consented, saying, they wou'd do nothing repugnant to Timur's will, and that their intention also was to abandon the Mirza Calli Sultan; and march towards Arctic Ferghana. Berendac advise'd 'em to stay some days near Tachkent, that he might inform 'em of what shou'd happen; and that afterwards they shou'd unanimously proclaim what was just and reasonable, that to their designs might have the desir'd success.

---

## CHAP. XL.

### *The great Emirs oppose the Mirza Calli Sultan.*

THE Emir Berendac, Roujem Tagi Bangu, and Abdurherim son of Hadji Seid-din, being arriv'd at the Sibon, pass'd it on a bridg; after which Berendac broke it down, and then went to join the Mirzas and emperors who were on their road to Samarcand. The Emirs Coddad and Chamreddin likewise abandoned the Mirza Calli Sultan, and march'd to Arctic Ferghana; on advice of which, that Mirza went to the Sibon, and having rebuilt the bridg, pass'd the river next day with his troops. The Emir Berendac being arriv'd in the neighborhood of Doushe, met Gelai Haouragi, who on the Emir Chamalie's return to Samarcand had abandoned the Mirzas and emperors, and was

Book VI. going over to the Mirza Calil Sultan: he gave Berendac an account of the Emir Chindric's journey to Samarcand, and of Argoun Chah's refusing him entrance into the city.

The Emir Berendac surpriz'd at this news, and mov'd as well by his ambition as his cowardice, prefer'd policy to justice and reason: and regardless of his oath, or the observance of the rules of equity, immediately returned to find the Mirza Calil Sultan. On the contrary, Roustem Tagi Booga went to Ali Abad, where he inform'd the Mirzas of the Emir Berendac's return. This latter, ashamed and contrituted, beg'd pardon of the Mirza Calil, and solemnly swore to him a second time. The Mirza with those of his party declar'd the paper void, wherein they had promis'd obedience to the Mirza Fir Mcbemed, tho' he had set his seal to it, and sent it by Aculmich; and at the same time he continu'd his road towards Samarcand, with design to subvert the empire. This news being come to the Emirs Cheik Nogmeddin and Chammach, they thus address'd the emperors. "The evil counseil of seditious persons has at present obtain'd: the Emirs have again taken an oath to the Mirza Calil Sultan: they have violated the treaty which they sabbash'd and seal'd, and are all on their march to Samarcand. He who breaks his word and oath, ought to be abhor'd by every one, as an enemy to mankind. Every body's heart shou'd now be rent into a thousand pieces: for the most powerful emperor, who was in a manner the soul of the world, is dead: but still is he exspir'd, when some few months, when from the lowest place of the earth has rais'd to the greatest honour, because tearing to him, and forgetting the obligations they

they over them, contravene his orders, and Chap. 41.  
 violate their oaths. How can we dareable  
 our chief at so terrible a misfortune? An  
 emperor, whose equal is no where to be met  
 with, who has ouag'd the kings of the earth  
 to serve at his gate, and has justly acquir'd  
 the name of conqueror, is no sooner pass'd  
 out of this world, than his last will is tram-  
 pled upon. Religion is batur'd for this  
 world. What unheard-of ingratitude is it,  
 that abject slaves, after so many benefits re-  
 ceiv'd, shou'd become the enemies of their  
 great benefactor? If rocks had but a heart,  
 they wou'd mourn at the sight of so abo-  
 minable an action. Why are not flames  
 rain'd down from heaven to punish these un-  
 grateful wretches? As for us, may God  
 grant us his grace, that we may not forget  
 our master's favours; but that after we have  
 besought his intercession, we may employ all  
 our care in the execution of his last will, and  
 in being obedient to the young princes his  
 children, and sacrifice even our lives as faith-  
 ful servants, rather than disobey him in the  
 least point."

---

## CHAP. XL.

*The Emirs hold a council with the emperess, in relation to their marching to Bagras.*

AFTER the Emirs Cherk Neurreddin and Chamelle had finish'd this speech, they represent'd to the emperess, that since affairs had took such a turn, it seem'd requisite that while their majelis shou'd go to Samarcand,

the

Book VI. the Emirs shou'd attend upon the Mireas to Bokara, from whence they might go to meet the Mirea Pir Mehemed to shew him Timur's testament. The emperies approving their proposal, the Emirs took leave of 'em; and having assembled a great number of Emirs who were faithful to the deceas'd emperor, and resolv'd to execute his orders, they held a council with 'em, and spake as follows.

" Every one knows that no body had freer access to the late emperor than we: if therefore we forget the favors we receiv'd of him, we shall deserve to be made miserable for ever. And tho' since his death every one has turn'd his back upon us, yet for our parts we'll never quit our resolution to obey his last orders. If others have no thoughts of blessing before him at the day of judgment, we have. Our intention is to seek the Mirea Pir Mehemed, who is declar'd by Timur's testament the lawfull heir to the empire, and to offer our service to him: and if to fulfil our benefactor's will, we shall risk our lives, and forsake our worldly goods, we'll do it a thousand times rather than fail in our promise, or violate our oath; for if we shou'd be guilty of so infamous an action, we could never hope to enjoy one day in paradise. You, Emirs, who were the nearest officers of that happy emperor, let us know your sentiment with regard to this resolution."

The Emirs of this assembly, whose hearts were sensibly touch'd, unanimously answer'd, " Our sole intention is to obey our master's orders: since you are resolv'd to execute his last will, we'll follow you with the greatest alacrity, and in what relates to us, we'll employ our utmost care, and sacrifice our very lives."

"lives." The chief of these faithful servants of Chaper, the emperor, were Atilmich, Terekul Cazars, Hasan Jagadaotl, Allan Coja Tercan, Ulou, Chamseddin Ainsaleghi, Moula Reemal, Ber-ter, Vesadar, and others.

---

C H A P. XLII.

*The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bocara.*

AFTER the resolution was taken of going to Bocara, the 3d of Ramazan 807, the Mirzas Dieuc-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan took leave of the empresses, who, after excessive grief on both sides, embrac'd the Mirzas with the greatest tenderness, and recommended 'em to the divine protection. These princes took horse, and departed from Ali Abad, trusting only in the assistance of heaven. The Emirs Chak Neureddin and Chamehie follow'd 'em, having with 'em Timur's treasury, which consisted of ready mony, jewels, habits, arms and other riches, which this emperor always kept by him; and they sent Roustem Tagi Banga to Bocara before the rest, to give all necessary orders.

C H A P.

## C H A P. XLIII.

*The emperors march to Samarcand. Their  
mourning, after the two Mirza's departure.*

THE emperors, accompaoy'd by the young princes the Mirza's children, as Baiez, Aiogei, Sadracus, Sioggatmich and others, with several faithful domestics, departed from Ali Abad; and hating the deceas'd emperor's hys-  
tail and drams carry'd before 'em, and his bag-  
gage following behind, they took the road to Samarcand, and arriv'd at the gate of Tchek-  
har Raha, with their hair dishevel'd, and  
their eyes gushing out with tears. The Em-  
irs of the city had the insolence to refuse o-  
pening the gate to 'em that day: on which  
the emperors went down into the gaeden of  
the Mirza Charoe near that gate, where they  
paiz'd the night. Next day they enter'd the city  
with the Mirza's and officers of their bouthold,  
and lodg'd in the Canical of the Mirza Meh-  
med Seltan, where Timur's coffin lay. At their  
arrival there they uncover'd their heads, and  
tore their hair; they mangled their faces, and  
call themselves on the ground, to testify their  
sorrow for the emperor. The princesses Can-  
zade and Roukia Canica, the Mirza Mehemed  
Ghanghir, with several grantees of the em-  
pire, as the Ceja Abdulezel and others, with  
the wives of the Cherris and principal persons,  
hanging fairs about their necks, and their faces  
torn, assembled together in different mourning-  
habits. The inhabitants stuc up the stoops and  
markets; and every one made lamentations over

the

the emperor's corps. The affliction was not only among the inhabitants of Samarcand; but also spread throughout all Asia.

## C H A P. XLIV.

*Account of what pass'd among the Mirzas and Emirs who were gone to Bocara.*

THE Mirzas Olone-Bec and Ibrahim Sultan, who had taken the road to Bocara from Ali Abad, arriv'd the fourth of Ramadan <sup>April</sup> 807 at the walls of Dobbous, a very high fortress, at the foot of which runs the river of Samarcand. They were met there by Beyan Temoor Cazan, brother of Menghilei Coss, from Samarcand, who brought a letter from Coja Louis and Argoun Chah, the tenor of which was as follows. " After the usual salutations, " we let you know that tho' we have resolv'd to " open the gates of the city to you, it was not " thro' any motive of treason, or with intent to " revolt; our design is only to observe Timur's " last will, to the alteration of which we'll give " your consent. If the Mirza Coss should " come hither, we wou'd use him in the same " manner. We are resolv'd to preserve this " city, it being the seat of the empire, and not " deliver it up to any one till the coming of " the Mirza Sir Meliomed, the lawful successor " to the crown, into whose hands we will res- " sign it according to the emperor's testament. " We thus let you know the state of affairs, that " you may not be incens'd against us." At the end of the letter they swore to perform what they promis'd.

The

Book VI. The Mirzas, notwithstanding the oath, sus-  
pended the promises of these flatterers: but not  
to irritate 'em in this bad conjuncture, they dis-  
sembled their suspicion, and order'd the messenger  
to salute the Emirs, and tell 'em that if their  
intention was to do what they had promis'd,  
it wou'd be better for 'em, since it was the way  
which every honest and sensible man wou'd take.  
Besides this they wrote a letter, in which they  
mildly advis'd 'em to continue firm in the reso-  
lution they had taken, and to govern the city  
according to their duty, without hearkning to  
any intigations to the contrary; for if they kept  
their word, and acknowledg'd the obligations  
they had recey'd from the emperor, in main-  
taining the city for the Mirza Pir Mehemet,  
they wou'd fulfil their master's will; it being  
an indispensible obligation on every one to do  
that which is well-pleasing both to God and  
man, that so their integrity might be mention'd  
with honor by posterity. They likewise or-  
der'd him to tell 'em they need not doubt but  
that, when the Mirza shou'd be fix'd upon the  
throne, he wou'd distinguish them above all  
others, as they had prefer'd it for him; but if  
they shou'd transgres the orders of their bene-  
factor, they wou'd commit a very heinous and  
treasonable action, and besides the disonor and  
infamy of it, wou'd incur a severe punishment,  
and must in the end repent in case. They  
seal'd up this letter, which they deliver'd to Be-  
yan Temour Cazier, who immediately return'd  
with it to Samarcand.

C H A P. XLV.

*The Mirza and Emirs at Bocara receive advice of the Mirza Calil-Sultan's arrival at Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the Emirs of that city.*

B EYAN Timour-Beg being return'd to Samarcand, the Emirs continu'd their journey towards Bocara, and two or three days after receiv'd advice that the Mirza Calil-Sultan, who had taken the road of Samarcand from Tachkent, with the Emirs of his party and his troops, being excited by a desire of usurpation and domination, had made great haste ; that being arriv'd near the city, the Emir Gaja Yousef went out to meet him with presents, and had receiv'd him as emperor, having cast gold and precious stones before him, and kiss'd his hand at Chiraz, a village four miles from Samarcand ; that the Chiefs and principal persons of the city had done the same ; that when the Mirza was arriv'd at the bank of the river of Coochet, Argoun Chah went out to make his submission to him, and had deliver'd the keys of the city and castle, with those of the treasury of that capital, into his hands ; and that all the traitors of the city and of the Mirza's court had unanimously resolv'd to acknowledg him for their sovereign, regardless their oaths, or the obedience due to Timur's last reliance.

The Emirs Cheik Noureddin and Chamele having heard this news, loaded the ingrateful perfidors with curses ; and wrote a letter to

Book 21. 'em full of repreaches, which they sent by an express. Then continuing their road, they met Roustem Berias, brother of Hamza, governor of Bocara, whom they had sent thither before, and was return'd to meet the Mirza, who being arriv'd before the city went to visit the sepulcher of the prophet Job, whose assistance they implo'red. They made a new treaty in this holy place, which they confirm'd by solemn oaths.

Afterwards they took horse, and enter'd Bocara ; they lodg'd in the castle, which they re-built, and augmented the fortifications. As to the guard of the city, they agreed that the gate which opens upon it, with the half of the castle, shou'd be under the care of the Mirza Olowec Bec, assist'd by the Emir Chamelie; and that the gate which looks upon the out-parts, with the other half of the castle and walls, shou'd be command-ed by the Mirza Ibrahim Sultan, attended by the Emir Cheik Noureddin : that the city shou'd be guarded by the Emirs Roustem Berias, his brother Hamza, Atilmich, Terechul Carcara, and others, each of whom shou'd have the care of a gate, as well as of the bastions and walls. Having all come to this resolution, they began immediately to put it in execution, and to re-build the walls of the city.

## CHAP. XLVI.

### *Coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan at Samarcand.*

THE astrologer Monians Bedreddin having made choice of wednesday the 16th of <sup>1510</sup> ~~1509~~ <sup>1511</sup> Ramazan 807, which answers to the year of the Hen, the sun being in the sixth degree of Aries, for the coronation of the Mirza Calil Sultan; that prince made his entry the same day into Samarcand, and took possession of the great imperial palace, where the treasures of all Asia were amass'd. Being seated on the throne in his imperial habits, he receiv'd the submission of the Mirzas, Emirs, and principal men of the state, who on their knees congratulated his accession to the throne.

As soon as he was instal'd, to shew he had an outward regard to Timur's testament, he gave the title of Can to the Mirza Mehemed Ghamghir, son of the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, and nephew of the Mirza Pir Mehemed, tho this young prince was but nine years of age; and his name was plac'd at the top of all the patents and imperial orders according to custom, tho the Mirza Calil Sultan had the sole disposal of every thing, as if he had been the lawful sovereign of all Transoxiana.

Two days after, this new emperor went to the Camieah of the deceas'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan, where Timur's tomb was, to pay his devotions, and perform the public ceremony of mourning. The empresses, Mirzas, Emirs, and all the people came there in black habits, and wept and

made bitter lamentations. By the Mirra Calil Sultan's order the whole Alcoran was read thro', alms were distributed among the poor and sick, and a great funeral-banquet prepar'd.

Then the emperor's drum was beat in a very mournful manner, after which it was broke to pieces according to custom. The learned men and poets compos'd panegyries and epitaphs upon the emperor; and among others the son of the Coja Masaoud Hocart, and the Coja Afine Ulta.

As the pious Timur, by reason of the love he always bore to the Cherifs, had several times desir'd that his tomb shou'd be plac'd under that of the great Cherif Seid Bercke, that Cherif's coffin was transported from Andcond, and inter'd under the mausoleum Timur had erected near the alcove of the Camicalah; and Timur's body was plac'd underneath that of the Cherif, according to the orders he had given; the corps of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan was also transported to the same mausoleum, and bury'd at the emperor his grandfather's side. May God enlighten their souls with the lamps of his mercy.

When the Mirza Calil Sultan was fix'd on the throne, he open'd his treasures, and distributed them very liberally among the Emirs, principal lords, and soldiers: but why shou'd it be call'd liberality? it was rather impudence and prodigality, for he distributed his gold like measures of wheat, and it was carry'd away by loads, as corn out of barns, to the great amazement of the people.

## C H A P. XLVII.

*Abridgment of the history of the reign of the  
Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cause of his  
ruin.*

LEARNE'D men have accounted kings the shadow of God, and acknowledg'd that the power of sovereignty is as a ray of the Divinity. But nothing is likewise more certain, than that he who believes himself capable of worthily acquitting that great charge without the divine assistance, gives credit to what is both absurd and impossible: for God always favors with his mercy the good man, and prefers above all other potentates those who regularly pay their devotions to him, and distribute alms to the poor. We may also be assur'd that a state is not well govern'd by its vast treasures and magazines, nor by the multitude of its troops or the great number of its captains; but by the protection of the Almighty. In fine, there is somewhat besides valor requisite for the governing of a great empire.

The truth of this plainly appears in the case of the Mirza Calil Sultan, who two injustice and favorable conjonctures became master of so vast an extent of ground, as scarcely ever any one emperor possest so much. His birth, a grandson of the great Timur-Bee, drew on him the attention of the whole universe: and at his grandfather's death, most part of the Novians and great Emirs were with him at Tachkent. When they receiv'd the news of that misfortune, their hearts were fill'd with fear: and as

Book VI. of Timur's children, there were none at this place older than the Mirza Cali Sultan, every one took an oath to him, thinking by this means to preserve the crown for ever in Timur's family.

The Mirza at the time took the road to Samarcand, and at his arrival there perceiv'd a general consternation among the people, the chief of whom, judging it best so to do, went to meet him, and congratulate him on his coming to the crown. The Emirs who had the keys of the city and treasury, likewise resign'd 'em to him; and so he easily became master of the throne of Samarcand. This city was then in a very flourishing condition, being inhabited by princes and great lords, learned doctors, and the most skillful artifices in the world; for most of the tradesmen of the towns conquer'd by Timur, had left their own country to dwell in this great city, it being the seat of the empire of Asia. We will not mention the immense treasures of ready money, precious stones, staves, belts, curiouse vessels and toys, which were innumerable; nor the arms, bucklers, tents, pavilions, canopies, thrones, and other marks of grandeur, richness and magnificence, which had been amassing for several ages by the princes of all the Kingdoms of Asia, and had been pillag'd by Timur from the emperors and princes of the countries of Iran and Touran, from the country of the Calmucks to the frontiers of Greece and Natolia; and from the farther part of India to the frontiers of Syria, and from Carezent and the great Capchac to the limits of Russia, Circassia, Bulgaria and Europe: besides which was the tribute of thirty-six years receiv'd from all Asia.

This city, tho' so vastly rich, and full with Chap. 42.  
great quantities of goods, and abundance of  
soldiers, fell into the hands of the Mirza Cali  
Sultan without his striking a blow for it: but this  
prodigal prince squander'd away all those trea-  
sures, brought all this grandeur to nothing, and  
entirely ruin'd this vast power in less than four  
years: which was one means made use of by  
him to ruin his good fortune.

The second cause was the Mirza's violent  
passion for Chadi Male, one of the concubines of  
the Emir Hadji Soiteddin, whom he had privately  
married in the emperor's absence, and cou'd  
never visit except in secret: but when he  
found himself an absolute sovereign, he reign'd  
every thing up to the will of this beauty, and  
took no pleasure but in her company, her  
charms being the subject of all his thoughts;  
while she shew'd no regard either to princes or  
kings, but accounted every thing below her;  
and even the emperor, laying aside his sover-  
eignty, became her slave, and breath'd only by  
her permission. This brought disorder up in the  
state, and upon the Mirza's affairs, so that no  
thing succeeded in which the sovereign authority  
had any concern. He squander'd away all his  
riches, and chiefly among those who were ne-  
arwards the instruments of his ruin: and tho' he  
was so rich that all the wealth of Hatam and  
the tribe of Tai did not amount to a tenth part  
of one of his treasurys, yet he soon spent all.  
He had neglected the counsel not to be over-  
liberal, for fear of being at last left naked;  
and he seem'd ignorant, that one shou'd give  
only to those who deserve it, and that in moder-  
ation.

On this account, the first thing to be men-  
tion'd as done by this prince was his excessive

Book VI. prodigality. He sprinkled handfuls of precious stones on the heads of those, upon whom it wou'd have been a crime, in a manner, to fling a little earth; while persons of extraordinary merit cou'd obtain nothing, or at least but a trifle. It was then a perfect game of hazard, for he who put in a penny, carry'd away a million; and those who deserv'd vast treasures, died without having a tenth part. Moreover, the Mirza advanc'd several strangers of mean extraction, made 'em Emirs, and gave 'em the first places in the state; which discover'd a great want of policy and conduct; for it alienated the hearts of the great Emirs of his court, and the generals of his army from him: and even those auxiliaries whom he had enrich'd, fell into an excess of self-love and pride, which was the root of many disorders. "Behow  
 " not honour, says the poet, upon him thou  
 " lov'st, unless by degrees; for if you advance  
 " him on a sudden, he will become insensible  
 " of the favours you have heap'd on him, and  
 " of the obligations he owes to you."

Besides all this, as the Sultan Calil's mistress was inferior in rank to the deceased emperor's wives, and these empresses became jealous of her growing greatness, she conceiv'd a great indignation against 'em, and persuad'd Calil to give each of 'em, as well as Timur's concubines, to some brave Fauir in marriage, who might by that means, as she pretended, become more attach'd to his interest, and so bring the state into better order. Accordingly he behav'd himself towards those venerable empresses, whom he ought to have reverenc'd as his own mother, in a manner condemn'd by all men of sense, forcing them to marry those who were unworthy to be their partners. He cast angels into the

mouths of satyrs, gave eagles to crows, hung pearls with pieces of glass, and rubys with thintz; which he did without the least remorse. But he did not consider, that a king who had cast off all thoughts of honor and justice, will shortly lose his kingdom. In effect, his actions drew on him the aversion of his soldiers, and even of all his subjects: and as he no longer acted with sincerity, the publick affairs fell into the utmost disorder and confusion. "He runs," says a certain poet, tho' ship of empire a-ground; both himself and his lady were cast away; for the kingdom slip'd out of his hands, and he fell from the utmost height."

The source of all these disorders was the great familiarity the Mirza had with strangers, and persons of no figure or merit. The good ought to avoid the wicked; for the wicked are the cause of their ruin. These events shew the great seal and admirable conduct of Timur-Bec in his governing the empire: they let us see that his ordering the death of this woman was not without the providence of God, tho' at that time every one was ignorant of the ill consequence of her being suffer'd to live.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

*Conclusion of the history of Timur-Bec, wherein the qualitys by which that conqueror surpass'd all the kings who preceded him, are set down.*

*The names of his children who serv'd him.*

THE glorious perfections by which the incomparable Timur-Bec adorn'd the regal dignity, were his sincere piety, the great veneration he bore to religion, his strict justice, and unbounded liberality, the effects of which were daily seen and felt by his people.

As his great qualitys have been mention'd in the series of this history, our design at present is to take notice of certain which were peculiar to him. And among others, with regard to his birth, it is proper to be inform'd, that tho' his ninth grandfather was Toumene Can, of the race of Bozenderger Can, chief in a branch of the tribe of Cayit, who was descended from Turk, the son of Japhet, the son of Noah, on whom may salvation rest; (from whence we discover that his ancestors were Canes and emperors) yet the Emir Tragzi his father, as well as his grandfather the Emir Berhali, having abdicated the kingdom, and left the government of the principality of Kecch, which they had preserv'd with the Tuman of ten thousand men annex'd thereto, to the children of their uncles of the family of Berlas; we may say that Timur-Bec brought the crown into this august family, he being the first emperor in it.

At the age of twenty-five he attain'd to the Chap. 8.  
highest dignitie, with admirable courage, and an ambition admir'd by all the world, endeav-  
orring to bring the great talents he had receiv'd from nature to perfection. He pass'd nine  
years in different countryz, where his good  
leisure and great genius appear'd in counsels and  
assemblys, while at the same time his intrepidity  
and valor drew upon him every one's admiration,  
whether in personal combats, or in pitch'd bat-  
tels, wherein no conqueror before him cou'd boast  
performing even the tenth part of his actions.

The truth of what we advance may easily be  
concrev'd, when we reflect on the actions re-  
laid in this book; and we are not at all apprehensive that our history will be tax'd with ex-  
aggeration. He mounted the throne of the  
empire when thirty-four years old, and reign'd  
successfully for thirty-six years, during which  
time he gain'd a considerable number of con-  
quests; for he made himself master of the three  
empires of Zagatai Can, Touchi Can, and Hu-  
lacon Can; he subdu'd the greatest citys, - and  
Kingdoms of Afis; and extended the limits of  
his dominion as far as the borders of that part  
of the world; so that his power, riches and  
magnificence were greater than we can possibly  
imagine. This is so certain, that we need only  
read the historys of other kings and princes,  
in whose familys the crown has continu'd a long  
time, to be assur'd of it. But the chief proof  
of his great power was, that to whatever place  
he march'd to wage war, he soon conquer'd it,  
and gave the government thereof to some of his  
children or officers; not acting like ancient con-  
querors, who were contented with those tokens  
of subjection which vanquish'd princes might  
make by a tribute.

Book VI. One thing further remarkable in this monarch was, that tho' he always observ'd the wisdom maxim of holding diet, yet he never soily confid'd in 'em; but constantly did what his own good genius inspir'd in him, and had such good success in all his undertakings, that it seem'd as if he had been always the care of divine providence. He cou'd not be shaken in his resolutions: he had the policy to be present at the execution of his most important enterprises, either as to the state or religion. Both in peace and war he wou'd put forward every thing himself.

Besides his great and continual employments in war and the government, there remain many monuments of his ambition and grandeur, in cities, towns, castles, and walls which he built, in rivers and canals which he dug; and in works of piety, as mosques, chappels, hospitals, bridges, palaces, monasteries, gardens, vineyards, and pleasure-houses, which he erected in divers parts of Asia, in so great a number, that it wou'd take up a large volume only to enumerate 'em, without describing each in particular. And it wou'd be no exaggeration to say, that a King wou'd be accounted very powerful and magnificent, who shou'd have employ'd thirty-six years only in building the great edifices which Timur did; and that he wou'd be thought to surpass all the kings in the earth on that account, without carrying on those long wars, and obtaining the surprizing conquests which he did. Are not all the caravanseras in the great roads of Asia for the accommodation of travellers, the magnificent monasteries and hospitals, from which the poor, the sick and travellers reap so great advantages by the alms distributed there; are not these,

I say, the good works of this pious emperor, Chap. 48.  
who now reaps the fruits of 'em in eternity? ~~~~~

We may also consider the blessings this emperor receiv'd from heaven in the great number of children he left behind him: which were thirty-six sons, and seventeen daughters living, according to the following detail.

The deceas'd *Mirza GULANGHUR* his eldest left eleven princes; for the deceas'd *Mirza* *Sultan* had had three sons, *Mehemed* *Ghanghir*, then nine years of age, *Sadraccas* six, and *Yahia* five. The *Mirza Pir* *Mehemed* *Ghanghir* twenty nine years old, had seven sons, *Saidou* nine years of age, *Cahid* seven, *Buzbadger*, *Sadraccas*, *Tengier*, *Caher*, and *Dschanghir*.

The deceas'd *Mirza OMAR CHAN* left nine sons: *Pir Mehemed*, twenty-six years old, who had one son, of seven years of age, nam'd *Omar Cheik*; *Rashid*, ag'd twenty-four, who had two sons, *Osmatt* six years old, and *Sultan Ali* one year; *Eitender* twenty-one years of age; *Ahmed* eighteen years; *Sidi Ahmed* fifteen; and *Bacra Hafim* twelve.

The sons of the *Mirza MIRAN CHAN*, thirty-eight years of age, were in all seven: *Alphonse*, twenty-three years old, who had two sons, *Alengher* nine years of age, and *Osmun Chelebi* four; *Omar* twenty-two years old; *Calid Sultan* twenty-one; *Aidgel* ten; and *Sergiannich* six.

The *Mirza CHAN* a.o.c. twenty-eight years of age, had seven sons: *Omar-Bec* and *Ibrahim Sultan*, both eleven years old; *Raffan* or eight years; *Sergiannich* six; *Mehemed* four; three years; *Tawgier* two years; and *Tareci* one year.

**Book VI.** These thirty-six princes were all living at Timur-Bec's death: besides whom he had one daughter nam'd Sultan Bact Begum, and fifteen granddaughters: the Mirza Omar Cheik had three daughters, the Mirza Mehemed Sultan three, the Mirza Miran Shah four, and the Mirza Charoc one; the Mirza Pir Mehemed Gelanghir three, the Mirza Aboubeckr one, and the Mirza Calil Sultan one.

The Mirza Sultan Hussein, twenty-five years of age, was the son of Timur's daughter nam'd Akia Beghi or Tagi Can; and his father was the Emir Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moulla.

And as it was written in the book of fate, that the crown shon'd continue in this illustrious family by the branch of the Mirza Charoc and his children: after having now finish'd the history of the glorious actions of Timur-Bec, we intend to compile a history of the Mirza Charoc, and give a true relation of his great actions, which prov'd him the worthy successor of the most illustrious conqueror who ever appear'd in the world.

*The end of the second volume.*

---

---

I HAVE read by order of my lord  
chancellor *the history of Timur-Beg,*  
*grand Can of Tartary;* and believe the  
public will receive as much pleasure  
as advantage from a work, in which  
the reader will discover the geography  
of the vast regions of Tartary, so lit-  
tle known in this part of the world.

Paris Decemb. 24.  
1720.

L. DE VERTOT.

---

THE

---

---

THE  
CONTENTS  
OF THE  
First VOLUME.

---

BOOK I.

CHAP. I. Of Sultan Cazzan, grand Caz of Zagaria: his defeat and death. Mir Cazzagan, a Turkish prince, takes upon him the government of the empire, and establishes a grand Caz. The war of Mir Cazzagan against Malek Hossain, *prince of Herat.* Page 1

Chap. 2. Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the son of Cazzagan; and of the difference which happen'd betwix the prince of Zagaria. 14

Chap. 3. Toghr Timur Caz, king of the Gees, march'd into Transoxiana. The flight of Hadji Berlat. 18

Chap. 4. The rise of Mir Hossain, grandfaw of Mir Cazzagan: he is assisst by Timur-Ro. 19

Chap. 5. Several intrigues between Timur and Hadji Berlat; as also between the other priuets. 22

Chap. 6. The king of the Gees return'd to Transoxiana with a great army. The death of Hadji Berlat. The Caz confirm'd Timur in the possession of his country of Kuh, and of a Towne of ten thousand men. 25

Chap.

# THE CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                                                      |       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Chap. 7. Timur-Bey marches in search of Emir Haf-<br>fein.                                                                                           | 33    |
| Chap. 8. Several warlike exploits of Timur and Haf-<br>fein.                                                                                         | 37    |
| Chap. 9. The remainder of the army of Gere, and its<br>defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur-Bey, with<br>the reduction of the city of Kech.         | 43    |
| Chap. 10. The death of Togha Timur Cæs, king of<br>the Gere; and the defeat of his army by the power<br>of Timur-Bey and Haffein.                    | 47    |
| Chap. 11. The assembly of the princes cau'ed by<br>Timur and the Emir Haffein, in which they elect-<br>ed Gakushah Agla in the dignity of grand Cæs. | 52    |
| Chap. 12. The battle of Lat, or of the plough.                                                                                                       | 55    |
| Chap. 13. The Return of Timur-Bey and Haffein<br>Semar and besid'd by the Gere.                                                                      | 61    |
| Chap. 14. Departure of the prince, for Semarabad,<br>and the dissension which happen'd between 'em.                                                  | 65    |
| Chap. 15. Timur-Bey bring an army into the field<br>against Emir Haffein.                                                                            | 72    |
| Chap. 16. Several exploits of Timur, and invasions<br>of the prince. The march of Timur to Caſch.                                                    | 77    |
| Chap. 17. Mir Haffein brings an army into the field<br>to oppose Timur.                                                                              | 86    |
| Chap. 18. The siege and taking of Bicar, by the army<br>of Haffein. Timur defeat the army of the Cere-<br>nati.                                      | 89    |
| Chap. 19. Timur sends an ambassador to Malek Haf-<br>fein at Herat.                                                                                  | 92    |
| Chap. 20. Timur defeat the army of the Emir Haf-<br>fein in Transoxiana.                                                                             | 94    |
| Chap. 21. The Emir Haffein sends an army against<br>Timur, which it defeated.                                                                        | 101   |
| Chap. 22. The Emir Haffein again sends a maior force<br>with Timur.                                                                                  | 105   |
| Chap. 23. The Emir Haffein brings an army into the<br>field from Bokhara.                                                                            | 107   |
|                                                                                                                                                      | Chap. |

# The CONTENTS.

|                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 14. Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Gece. | 113 |
| Chap. 15. Timur returns from Belakhan.                              | 115 |
| Chap. 16. A second rupture between Timur and Hafsin.                | 117 |

## BOOK II.

|                                                                                                                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| CHAP. 1. The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zogatni.                                                                              | 120 |
| Chap. 2. Timur returns from the city of Balk to Samarcand: the building of the castle and fortresses of their metropolis.                                | 122 |
| Chap. 3. The Consultat, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, call'd by Timur's orders.                                                           | 126 |
| Chap. 4. Timur marches to Chelurgan at the head of an army.                                                                                              | 128 |
| Chap. 5. Timur sends an army to Balk and Termed.                                                                                                         | 132 |
| Chap. 6. Timur sends the Emir Taken to besiege Chelurgan.                                                                                                | 141 |
| Chap. 7. Timur marches an army into the country of the Gece.                                                                                             | 143 |
| Chap. 8. A second expedition of Timur against the Gece.                                                                                                  | 144 |
| Chap. 9. The embassy from Timur to Hafsin Sufi, King of Carezen.                                                                                         | 147 |
| Chap. 10. Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the King of Carezen.                                                                              | 149 |
| Chap. 11. Timur makes peace with Ysoph Sufi, who succeeded Hafsin; and demands in marriage the princess Cambide for the prince Gellangir his eldest son. | 155 |
| Chap. 12. Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carezen.                                                                                       | 157 |
| Chap. 13. The famous embassy from Timur to the King of Carezen, to demand the princess Cambide.                                                          | 158 |
| Chap.                                                                                                                                                    | 159 |

# The CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 14. Timur marches a third time into the country of the Gees.                                                                                                                                                                               | 163 |
| Chap. 15. Timur's marriage with the princess Ditchadaga, daughter of Canareddin king of the Gees. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escap'd.                                                               | 166 |
| Chap. 16. Timur marches a third time to Carezm, and returns on the revolt of Sar Buqa and Adel-club.                                                                                                                                             | 168 |
| Chap. 17. Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Gees.                                                                                                                                                                                  | 171 |
| Chap. 18. The death of Mireza Ghanghir, Timur's eldest son.                                                                                                                                                                                      | 174 |
| Chap. 19. Timur's fifth expedition against the Gees.                                                                                                                                                                                             | 176 |
| Chap. 20. Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Gees against Canareddin. Tocarmich Aulen, descended from Touschi, son of Genghis Cen, arrives at court, and puts himself under the protection of Timur.                                 | 178 |
| Chap. 21. Timur gives Tocarmich Aulen the principality of Orrar and Sabrat; and assists him in making himself master of the empire of Carezm which he claim'd as his right; the Qursui Cen, descended from Genghis Cen, was in possession of it. | 180 |
| Chap. 22. Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field against Qursui Cen, emperor of Carezm and grand Russia.                                                                                                                      | 182 |
| Chap. 23. Timur's irruption into the country of Qursui Cen: Tocarmich Aulen plac'd on the throne of Carezm, otherwise call'd the empire of Toushi Cen.                                                                                           | 185 |
| Chap. 24. The birth of prince Churn, son and heir to the emperor Timur.                                                                                                                                                                          | 187 |
| Chap. 25. Timur sends Tocarmich Cen to attack Timur Melic Cen, emperor of Carezm.                                                                                                                                                                | 189 |

# THE CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                             |        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Chap. 26. Embassy from the emperor Timur to Joseph Sojding of Carezen.                                                      | 191    |
| Chap. 27. Timur's fourth war in Carezen; death of Joseph Soj: conquest of that kingdom.                                     | 194    |
| Chap. 28. Foundation of the walls of Kach, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Achur.                       | 199    |
| Chap. 29. The Emir Hidgi Sriseddin sent ambassador to Herat, to Malek Cayseddin Pir Ali, king of Carrasana.                 | 200    |
| Chap. 30. Mirza Miran Chah, son of Timur, marches into Carrasana, to make war on Malek Cayseddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.  | 203    |
| Chap. 31. Timur's army marches to make war on Persia, and the rest of the empire of Iran.                                   | 205    |
| Chap. 32. Reduction of Fouchendje, a town of Carrasana.                                                                     | 207    |
| Chap. 33. Reduction of Herat, capital of Carrasana.                                                                         | 209    |
| Chap. 34. The army marches to Tous and Kelut.                                                                               | 213    |
| Chap. 35. Timur returns to Samarcand.                                                                                       | 215    |
| Chap. 36. Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Beg, son of the Emir Mousso.                         | 216    |
| Chap. 37. Timur's second expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Persia.                                                     | 219    |
| Chap. 38. Reduction of the town of Taribiz in Carrasana.                                                                    | p. 223 |
| Chap. 39. The arrival of an ambassador from Persia, or the true Persia, at the court of Timur.                              | 227    |
| Chap. 40. Timur marches into the province of Mazendana.                                                                     | 229    |
| Chap. 41. Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the emperor Dakhadoga, and of the princess Cieluc Tazan Aza, Timur's sister. | 231    |

Chap.

# The CONTENTS.

| Chap. 42. Timur sends a fresh army into the country of the Geeks.                                                                      | 235 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 43. Timur marches to Mazendran, and thence to Sistan.                                                                            | 236 |
| Chap. 44. Town of Sistan before'd and taken.                                                                                           | 239 |
| Chap. 45. Timur marches to Bost.                                                                                                       | 245 |
| Chap. 46. War against the Ouganians, inhabitants of the mountains, south of Candahar.                                                  | 247 |
| Chap. 47. Timur returns to Samarcand.                                                                                                  | 250 |
| Chap. 48. Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.                                                                                | 251 |
| Chap. 49. Timur marches into the province of Iraq Aghani.                                                                              | 256 |
| Chap. 50. The emperor Timur marches to Sulamya.                                                                                        | 257 |
| Chap. 51. Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.                                                                       | 259 |
| Chap. 52. Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he plays three years successfully.                                                   | 261 |
| Chap. 53. Timur marches to Azerbaijan, or the country of the ancient Medes.                                                            | 263 |
| Chap. 54. Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army. The description of the Persian way of hunting; at all of the Greeks and Nests. | 267 |
| Chap. 55. Timur returns to Samarcand.                                                                                                  | 269 |
| Chap. 56. The march of Timur to Berda. The motion of the army of Capcha. Defeat of the troops of Tchauisch Cam.                        | 273 |
| Chap. 57. The arrival of the emperor Soraat Mirkhan, and the princes her sons.                                                         | 277 |
| Chap. 58. Timur's army marches against Kara Nekmed, prince of the Turcomans.                                                           | 278 |
| Chap. 59. Timur marches to Van and Kastam. The latter which the Chingheling of Persia writes to Timur at his death.                    | 281 |
| Chap. 60. Timur marches again into the country of Fars and Iraq Aghani.                                                                | 289 |

# The CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                              |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 61. Timur marches to Chiraz, the capital of Fars or the true Persia.                                   | 294 |
| Chap. 62. Reasons which induc'd Timur to return to the capital of his empire.                                | 297 |
| Chap. 63. Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Fars, and Irac to the family of Mazzaffer. | 301 |
| Chap. 64. The emperor orders a process against some Emirs, whom he had left in Transoxiana.                  | 303 |

## BOOK III.

|                                                                                                                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| CHAP. 1. Timur-Beg departs for his fifth expedition into the kingdom of Carrizem.                                                              | 305 |
| Chap. 2. Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Carrizem.                                                                               | 308 |
| Chap. 3. Timur departs to make war in Cophna, and is victorious over Tocamich Carr.                                                            | 317 |
| Chap. 4. Timur sends the Mirza Miran Chab into Carrizem.                                                                                       | 323 |
| Chap. 5. Timur's expedition into Mogulistan against Kezer Gija Aglion, and the prince Anacoura; which made the fifth campaign in that country. | 325 |
| Chap. 6. Timur holds a diet, and sends his army into all the quarters of the Moguls, to fight the Geys.                                        | 331 |
| Chap. 7. Timur returns to the seat of his empire.                                                                                              | 338 |
| Chap. 8. The Caurooltai, or diet, held by Timur's order.                                                                                       | 342 |
| Chap. 9. Timur sends his troops into the country of the Geys.                                                                                  | 344 |
| Chap. 10. Timur marches into the desart of Cophna.                                                                                             | 347 |
| Chap. 11. Timur reviews his troops.                                                                                                            | 356 |
| Chap. 12. Timur sends the Mirza Mahomed Sultan at the head of the scouar.                                                                      | 359 |

# The CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                       |       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Chap. 13. Battle between the forces of the two armies. Death of the Emir Aiccumur, and other famous men.              | 367   |
| Chap. 14. The army rang'd in order of battle in an extraordinary manner. A terrible fight which end'd the reazon.     | 371   |
| Chap. 15. Timur returns from the desart of Caphar to the seat of his empire.                                          | 382   |
| Chap. 16. The government of Zabulestan given to Mirza Pir Mohamed, son of Ghanghiz.                                   | 384   |
| Chap. 17. Timur departs for a war of five years continuall.                                                           | 386   |
| Chap. 18. Timur departs from Toudz after his recovery.                                                                | 388   |
| Chap. 19. The taking of Aoul, Sari, and Mubazar.                                                                      | 390   |
| Chap. 20. Timur sends a letter to Samartand.                                                                          | 396   |
| Chap. 21. Timur makes war a second time on the Kingdoms of Fars and Ica.                                              | 399   |
| Chap. 22. Timur marches to the Kingdoms of Lorgstan and Cenestan.                                                     | 403   |
| Chap. 23. An account of the motions of the prince of Fars, or of Persia and Ica, in which the present affairs depend. | 406   |
| Chap. 24. Timur marches to Chiraz against Chab Mansur.                                                                | 411   |
| Chap. 25. Battle between Timur and Chab Mansur. The death of the latter.                                              | 416   |
| Chap. 26. Timur seizes the prince of the house of Muzaffer, and disposes of their effects among his lieutenants.      | 421   |
| Chap. 27. Timur marches to the kingdom of Ica Aghni, or Hirtanla.                                                     | 424   |
| Chap. 28. Timur invests the Mirza Miran Chab in the kingdom of Hulacus Can.                                           | 426   |
| Chap. 29. Timur conquishes the Turkoman Hukum Sury.                                                                   | 427   |
| Chap. 30. Timur marches to Bagdad.                                                                                    | 431   |
| E o 3                                                                                                                 | Chap. |

# The CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 31. Return of Mirza Melkimer Salih, after<br>the defeat of the Ouardi robbers.                                | 438 |
| Chap. 32. Timur sends his ambassador to the Sultan<br>Barac in Egypt.                                               | 439 |
| Chap. 33. The taking of the town of Tocrit.                                                                         | 441 |
| Chap. 34. Timur continues his journey, and sends his<br>prince and Emirs to make irruptions in several<br>kingdoms. | 448 |
| Chap. 35. Timur marches to Diarbekir.                                                                               | 450 |
| Chap. 36. Timur marches to Edeffa.                                                                                  | 452 |
| Chap. 37. Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's<br>son.                                                                | 453 |
| Chap. 38. Timur marches to Gzire.                                                                                   | 460 |
| Chap. 39. Timur's second enterprise upon Mardin.                                                                    | 461 |
| Chap. 40. Birth of the Mirza Oluc Roi.                                                                              | 463 |
| Chap. 41. Timur marches to Amud or Hamid, capi-<br>tal of the country of Diarbekir.                                 | 464 |
| Chap. 42. Timur returns to Alarac.                                                                                  | 467 |
| Chap. 43. Timur sends bodies of soldiers into several<br>countries to enlarge his conquests.                        | 468 |
| Chap. 44. The taking of the town and fortress of<br>Acre.                                                           | 472 |
| Chap. 45. Timur's return after the taking of Acre.                                                                  | 477 |
| Chap. 46. Timur sends an army into Georgia.                                                                         | 479 |
| Chap. 47. The birth of Ibrahim Sultan, son of Ch-<br>arac.                                                          | 480 |
| Chap. 48. Selim rejoicing for the birth of Ibrahim<br>Sultan, son of Charac.                                        | 482 |
| Chap. 49. Timur constitutes the Mirza Charac gover-<br>nor of Samarcand.                                            | 484 |
| Chap. 50. Timur goes in person to the Georgian war.                                                                 | 485 |
| Chap. 51. Timur marches a second time into Ge-<br>orgia against Tocarmich Con.                                      | 487 |
| Chap. 52. Timur reviews his army.                                                                                   | 490 |
| Chap. 53. Battle between Timur and Tocarmich Con.                                                                   | 493 |
| Chap.                                                                                                               |     |

# The C O N T E N T S.

|                                                                                                                                                                                  |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 54. Timur goes in pursuit of Tocamich Cor,<br>and installs a new Can of Capchac.                                                                                           | 493 |
| Chap. 55. Timur marches into Europe; and pillages<br>the western Capchac, as also Muscovy and Russia.                                                                            | 501 |
| Chap. 56. Timur makes war in Circassia.                                                                                                                                          | 505 |
| Chap. 57. Timur marches to Alburz Comb, or mount<br>Caucasus.                                                                                                                    | 506 |
| Chap. 58. Timur attacks the fortresses of Chufa,<br>Tzam, and others.                                                                                                            | 507 |
| Chap. 59. Timur marches to Sensem.                                                                                                                                               | 511 |
| Chap. 60. Timur marches into Capchac, and pillages<br>the town of Hulgi Terean, or Afrakan.                                                                                      | 513 |
| Chap. 61. Timur returns to Capchac.                                                                                                                                              | 515 |
| Chap. 62. Timur gives the government of Azerbijana<br>to the Mirza Mirancha, who besieges Alergi.                                                                                | 519 |
| Chap. 63. Taking of the town of Shirjan; and the re-<br>treat of Behland to Nekayend.                                                                                            | 520 |
| Chap. 64. Timur sends the Mirza Mohamed Sultan to<br>conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of<br>Izrd.                                                                     | 524 |
| Chap. 65. Timur returns to the seat of his empire.                                                                                                                               | 525 |
| Chap. 66. The building of the palace of Baghi Ch-<br>mal.                                                                                                                        | 530 |
| Chap. 67. Timur gives the principality of Corassana<br>to the Mirza Chark.                                                                                                       | 531 |
| Chap. 68. Timur stays some time at Kesh. Reign<br>of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan from the campaign of<br>Farr.                                                                      | 534 |
| Chap. 69. Timur demands in marriage for himself<br>the daughter of Kesar Ceja Aglen. He celebrates<br>the nuptials of the Mirza Eschander with the prin-<br>cess Beghisi Sultan. | 537 |
| Chap. 70. Timur gives orders for making the gar-<br>dens of Dilencha, and building a stately palace in<br>it.                                                                    | 538 |

---

---

THE  
CONTENTS  
OF THE  
Second VOLUME.

---

BOOK IV.

|                                                                                                                                                             |        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| CHAP. 1. <i>The cause of Timur's war in India.</i>                                                                                                          | Page 4 |
| Chap. 2. <i>Timur brings his army into the field, to make war against the Gurbres in India.</i>                                                             | 7      |
| Chap. 3. <i>Timur marches against the inhabitants of Kettur. He defeats the Siapuchi, who were cloth'd in black.</i>                                        | 8      |
| Chap. 4. <i>Timur sends Mehemet Azad to gain intelligence of Mirza Roustem and Burhan Agler. His return to Kettur.</i>                                      | 13     |
| Chap. 5. <i>Timur sends Mirza Chirac to Herat.</i>                                                                                                          | 17     |
| Chap. 6. <i>The arrival of ambassadors from several places. Taiza Agler returns from the country of the Cabunes, and Chrik Noureddin from that of Farr.</i> | 18     |
| Chap. 7. <i>The repairing the fortress of Irijak, and the destroying of the Ougamis robbers.</i>                                                            | 23     |
| Chap.                                                                                                                                                       |        |

# The CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                                  |       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Chap. 8. Timur marches to Chonuzan and Nogor; and destroys the robbers of the nation of the Persians.                            | 25    |
| Chap. 9. Timur passes the river Indus.                                                                                           | 28    |
| Chap. 10. Chebhebdilin Maharr; Chah Temur commences hostility against the emperor after his submission.                          | 29    |
| Chap. 11. Timur's arrival at Teulonka.                                                                                           | 32    |
| Chap. 12. Timur marches in search of Nasret Cor-hari.                                                                            | 34    |
| Chap. 13. Arrival of prince Pir Mohamed Gibanglir from Moultau.                                                                  | 35    |
| Chap. 14. The taking the town of Dred, and the fortress of Batur; the inhabitants of which places are put to the sword.          | 39    |
| Chap. 15. Timur departs from Batur, for Sirci, Fatahad and Ahrouni.                                                              | 43    |
| Chap. 16. Timur marches against a nation of rebellious Gores.                                                                    | 46    |
| Chap. 17. A review of the whole army marching in order of battle.                                                                | 48    |
| Chap. 18. Timur marches to the east side of the town of Lassi. Mazzare of a hundred thousand Indian slaves who were in his camp. | 51    |
| Chap. 19. Timur gives battle to Sultan Mahmud, emperor of India.                                                                 | 55    |
| Chap. 20. Flight of Sultan Mahmud, and his general Melou Cor, prince of Moultau. Reduction of Delhi capital of India.            | 61    |
| Chap. 21. Timur departs from Delhi; and pursues his conquests in the remoter parts of India, near the Ganges.                    | 63    |
| Chap. 22. Conquest of Myrtha. The Gobres are put'd alive.                                                                        | 69    |
| Chap. 23. Several battles upon the great river Ganges, against the militia of the Gobres.                                        | 71    |
| Chap. 24. Timur's three Gories, or expeditions against the Gobres.                                                               | 74    |
|                                                                                                                                  | Chap. |

# The C O N T E N T S.

|                                                                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 25. Timur extenuates the Gudree assembled<br>in the famous defile of Cangulc.             | 78  |
| Chap. 26. Description of a<br>marble statue of a cow ador'd by the Indians.                     | 78  |
| Chap. 27. Timur's resolution to return to the seat of<br>his empire.                            | 81  |
| Chap. 28. Timur's irruption on the mountain Soudar.                                             | 82  |
| Chap. 29. Several combats in the woods near Soudar-<br>loo.                                     | 83  |
| Chap. 30. Timur's Gazire and expeditions in the<br>proximities of Schamou.                      | 87  |
| Chap. 31. Relation of what pass'd at Lahr, with<br>regard to Ching Couler, prince of that city. | 91  |
| Chap. 32. Description of the little kingdom of Cambi-<br>mir, or Kankmir.                       | 93  |
| Chap. 33. Timur return to the seat of his empire.                                               | 97  |
| Chap. 34. Timur crosseth the Oxus, and is met by<br>the prince and princesses of the blood.     | 101 |
| Chap. 35. Building of the great mosque of Soudar-<br>loo.                                       | 103 |

## B O O K V.

|                                                                                                                                                                        |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| CHAP. 1. The causes which oblig'd Timur to<br>make war in the country of Iran, that is, in the<br>western parts of Asia, from the river Gibur to the<br>Medianian sea. | 103 |
| Chap. 2. Timur's departure for a campain of seven<br>years.                                                                                                            | 113 |
| Chap. 3. The transactions of the Emir Selyman Chah.                                                                                                                    | 117 |
| Chap. 4. The arrival of good news from several parts.                                                                                                                  | 120 |
| Chap. 5. Timur marcheth into Georgia, and to the de-<br>file of Cachch.                                                                                                | 126 |

# The CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                                                                        |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 6. Timur's return from the desds of Cossack.                                                                                                                     | 128 |
| Chap. 7. Continuation of the history of the Mirza Roussem, who was gone from Dziam to Chiraz. A great crime committed by his eldest brother, the Mirza Piz Ishkhermed. | 130 |
| Chap. 8. A diet in relation to the affair of Georgia.                                                                                                                  | 136 |
| Chap. 9. Timur marches against prince Jossi Bic, a Georgian.                                                                                                           | 139 |
| Chap. 10. The taking of the fort of Zerit, and the town of Suan.                                                                                                       | 141 |
| Chap. 11. Timur marches against the Georgian prince Arvani.                                                                                                            | 143 |
| Chap. 12. Timur returns from Georgia.                                                                                                                                  | 144 |
| Chap. 13. Reasons which oblig'd Timur to march against the city of Schasse, capital of Anatolia.                                                                       | 145 |
| Chap. 14. Timur's letter to the Caisar Rousm, that is, the Ottoman emperor.                                                                                            | 147 |
| Chap. 15. Timur marches to Schasse, and takes that city.                                                                                                               | 151 |
| Chap. 16. Timur marches to Alindesfan.                                                                                                                                 | 155 |
| Chap. 17. The reasons of Timur's carrying his arm into Syria and Mesopotamia.                                                                                          | 157 |
| Chap. 18. Timur marches into the kingdom of Syria and Egypt.                                                                                                           | 160 |
| Chap. 19. The taking of the castles of Bchesan and Amara.                                                                                                              | 162 |
| Chap. 20. The siege and taking the city of Aleppo.                                                                                                                     | 165 |
| Chap. 21. The castle of Aleppo attack'd and taken.                                                                                                                     | 173 |
| Chap. 22. The taking of the towns and castles of Emessa and Hama.                                                                                                      | 177 |
| Chap. 23. Conquest of the town of Balca.                                                                                                                               | 180 |
| Chap. 24. Timur marches to Damascs, capital of Syria.                                                                                                                  | 181 |
| Chap.                                                                                                                                                                  |     |

# The C O N T E N T S.

|                                                                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 25. Timur gives battle to the Sultan of Egypt, and gains the victory.                         | 187 |
| Chap. 26. Taking of the city of Damascan.                                                           | 189 |
| Chap. 27. Taking of the castle of Damascan.                                                         | 194 |
| Chap. 28. Timur returns out of Syria.                                                               | 202 |
| Chap. 29. Timur crosses the Euphrates, and comes in Mesopotamia.                                    | 205 |
| Chap. 30. Timur marches to the town of Mardin.                                                      | 206 |
| Chap. 31. Timur sends troops into Georgia, and to Bagdad.                                           | 208 |
| Chap. 32. Timur besieges and takes Bagdad.                                                          | 211 |
| Chap. 33. Timur's return from Bagdad, and march towards Tauris.                                     | 217 |
| Chap. 34. Timur finds the Mirza Chares to Arzengian.                                                | 219 |
| Chap. 35. Arrival of the second emperor, Taiman Aga, and the young prince, from Samarcand.          | 221 |
| Chap. 36. Timur marches into Georgia, and to Karabagh, Arzengian.                                   | 223 |
| Chap. 37. Timur passes the winter at Karabagh. Arrival of the Mirza Melchior Sultan from Samarcand. | 224 |
| Chap. 38. Timur sends troops to make incursions in diverse places.                                  | 226 |
| Chap. 39. The causes which oblig'd Timur to return to make war on Razzaz the Ottoman emperor.       | 230 |
| Chap. 40. Timur digs the river of Berlat.                                                           | 234 |
| Chap. 41. Timur departs from Karabagh for the plains of Chemkhan.                                   | 235 |
| Chap. 42. Taking of the castle of Taurum.                                                           | 238 |
| Chap. 43. Taking of the castle of Kermic. Arrival of ambassador from Razzaz.                        | 240 |
| Chap. 44. Timur revives his army.                                                                   | 243 |
| Chap. 45. Taking of the castle of Huzze.                                                            | 245 |
| Chap. 46. Timur marches to Cesaria in Cappadocia, and to Acrea.                                     | 246 |
| Chap. 47. Timur ranges his army in order of battle, to fight Razzaz.                                | 250 |
| Chap.                                                                                               |     |

# THE CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 48. Timur gives Bajazet battle, and gains the victory.                                                                                                                                        | 252 |
| Chap. 49. The king of the Ottoman emperor, who is brought in chains before the throne of the conqueror.                                                                                             | 255 |
| Chap. 50. Timur orders troops to make incursions in diverse parts of the Ottoman empire. He sends relations of his victory in the cities of Iran and Tauran, with orders to make public rejoicings. | 258 |
| Chap. 51. The continuation of the history of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan, who had been sent to Prusa in Bulgaria.                                                                                      | 261 |
| Chap. 52. Account of the Mirza Sultan Hussein, and the Emir Solyman Chah, who were gone out to make incursions.                                                                                     | 265 |
| Chap. 53. Timur departs from Kerebatana.                                                                                                                                                            | 266 |
| Chap. 54. Timur dispatches couriers into diverse countries. The arrival of several ambassadors.                                                                                                     | 268 |
| Chap. 55. Timur regulates the winter-quarters.                                                                                                                                                      | 271 |
| Chap. 56. Timur besieges Sereina, and takes it.                                                                                                                                                     | 273 |
| Chap. 57. Second arrival of ambassadors from Bajazet's son.                                                                                                                                         | 278 |
| Chap. 58. Timur departs from Sereina.                                                                                                                                                               | 280 |
| Chap. 59. Taking of the town of Egridor and Naslime.                                                                                                                                                | 283 |
| Chap. 60. The death of the Ottoman emperor Bajazet, and of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan, Timur's grandson.                                                                                              | 285 |
| Chap. 61. Mourning for the death of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan: and the translation of his coffin.                                                                                                    | 288 |
| Chap. 62. Arrival of ambassadors from Egypt.                                                                                                                                                        | 289 |
| Chap. 63. Timur marches against the Circassians, or Black Tartars.                                                                                                                                  | 291 |
| Chap. 64. Timur returns from Naslime.                                                                                                                                                               | 294 |
| Chap. 65. The manner in which the death of the Mirza Mohamed Sultan, son of Ghangis, was made known to Circassia by messenger.                                                                      | 296 |

# THE CONTENTS.

## BOOK VI.

|                                                                                                                                                                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| CHAP. 1. Timur marches into Georgia.                                                                                                                                                    | 299 |
| Chap. 2. The government of Chiraz a second time given to the Mirza Pir Mohamed, son of Omar, Cheik; and that of Ispahan to his brother the Mirza Roustem.                               | 301 |
| Chap. 3. Timur sends the Mirza Abubekre to rebuild the city of Bagdad, and gives him the government of Iraq-Arabi and Diarbekir.                                                        | 302 |
| Chap. 4. Timur's arrival at the frontiers of Georgia.                                                                                                                                   | 306 |
| Chap. 5. The taking of the famous castle of Coxent in Georgia.                                                                                                                          | 308 |
| Chap. 6. Relation of what pass'd without during this siege.                                                                                                                             | 313 |
| Chap. 7. Timur marches to Abkhaz.                                                                                                                                                       | 314 |
| Chap. 8. Timur returns from Abkhaz. The cause of his return.                                                                                                                            | 316 |
| Chap. 9. Timur orders the town of Baulazan to be rebuilt.                                                                                                                               | 319 |
| Chap. 10. Timur sends judges and doctors into all the provinces of his empire, to examine the affairs of particular persons, and to distribute his justice and favors among the people. | 321 |
| Chap. 11. Continuation of the history of the princes who were gone into Iraq-Arabi.                                                                                                     | 325 |
| Chap. 12. Arrival of the Mirza Omar from Samarcand. Continuation of what happen'd during the building of Baulazan.                                                                      | 327 |
| Chap. 13. Timur passes the winter at Carrabagh. Arran. Relation of what happen'd there.                                                                                                 | 329 |
| Chap. 14. The emperor sends the Mirza Chareb to Ghilan.                                                                                                                                 | 333 |
| Chap. 15. Arrival of some princes from Herdia and Rustan. A famous floral banquet made for the late Mirza Mohamed Sultan.                                                               | 334 |
| Chap.                                                                                                                                                                                   | 334 |

# THE CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                                                                                |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 16. Timur's return from a campaign of seven years.                                                                                                                       | 316 |
| Chap. 17. Timur invests the Mirza Osman in the empire of Halil-Can.                                                                                                            | 337 |
| Chap. 18. Continuation of the history of the Mirza Rostem and the Emir Solyman Chak, who were sent towards Rei.                                                                | 338 |
| Chap. 19. Timur sends the Mirza Rokender and the Emir Chambiz before the rest towards Rei.                                                                                     | 340 |
| Chap. 20. The taking of the citadel of Firuz-kunk.                                                                                                                             | 342 |
| Chap. 21. Timur marches to Tchelam.                                                                                                                                            | 345 |
| Chap. 22. Battle between the Mirza Suleiman Hassain and Eikender Chirki. The flight of the latter.                                                                             | 348 |
| Chap. 23. Timur returns to the seat of his empire.                                                                                                                             | 351 |
| Chap. 24. Timur's entry into his imperial city of Samarcand.                                                                                                                   | 355 |
| Chap. 25. Timur holds a general diet. A great feast for the marriage of the prince of Caughal.                                                                                 | 358 |
| Chap. 26. The cause which incited Timur to undertake the conquest of the Kingdom of China.                                                                                     | 363 |
| Chap. 27. Timur sets out for the war against the infidels of China.                                                                                                            | 372 |
| Chap. 28. An account of certain adventures, the knowledge of which is necessary to the understanding of the latter part of this history. A relation of what passed at Acsular. | 375 |
| Chap. 29. Timur departs from Acsular.                                                                                                                                          | 378 |
| Chap. 30. Timur's death at Otrar.                                                                                                                                              | 381 |
| Chap. 31. Relation of what happen'd after Timur's death.                                                                                                                       | 387 |
| Chap. 32. Timur's coffin is transported from Otrar.                                                                                                                            | 390 |
| Chap. 33. The emperor and Emir hold a council concerning the war of China.                                                                                                     | 391 |
| Chap. 34. Timur's coffin is transported to Samarcand.                                                                                                                          | 393 |
| Chap.                                                                                                                                                                          |     |

# The CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Chap. 35. <i>The Mirza Sultan Husein, Timur's grand-<br/>son, opposes the sentiment of the Emirs.</i>                                                                                                                    | 396 |
| Chap. 36. <i>The Emirs write circular letters to give<br/>advice to all the provinces of the Mirza Sultan<br/>Husein's undertaking.</i>                                                                                  | 397 |
| Chap. 37. <i>A letter to the great Emirs who were at<br/>Tachkum.</i>                                                                                                                                                    | 399 |
| Chap. 38. <i>The Emir Berenday arrives at the em-<br/>press's court, with an answer to the letter from the<br/>Emirs, who were at Tachkum with the Mirza Calil<br/>Sultan.</i>                                           | 401 |
| Chap. 39. <i>Relation of what happen'd on the Emir<br/>Berenday's return to Tachkum.</i>                                                                                                                                 | 405 |
| Chap. 40. <i>The great Emirs oppose the Mirza Calil<br/>Sultan.</i>                                                                                                                                                      | 407 |
| Chap. 41. <i>The Emirs hold a council with the em-<br/>press, in relation to their marching to Bocara.</i>                                                                                                               | 409 |
| Chap. 42. <i>The Mirzas and Emirs march to Bocara.</i>                                                                                                                                                                   | 411 |
| Chap. 43. <i>The empress march to Samarcand. Their<br/>returning, after the two Mirzas departure.</i>                                                                                                                    | 412 |
| Chap. 44. <i>Account of what pass'd among the Mirza<br/>and Emirs who were gone to Bocara.</i>                                                                                                                           | 413 |
| Chap. 45. <i>The Mirza and Emirs at Bocara receive<br/>advice of the Mirza Calil Sultan's arrival at<br/>Samarcand, and of the obedience paid him by the<br/>Emir of that city.</i>                                      | 415 |
| Chap. 46. <i>Circumstances of the Mirza Calil Sultan at<br/>Samarcand.</i>                                                                                                                                               | 417 |
| Chap. 47. <i>Abridgement of the history of the reign of<br/>the Mirza Calil Sultan: and the cause of his ruin.</i>                                                                                                       | 419 |
| Chap. 48. <i>Conclusion of the history of Timur-Bec,<br/>wherein the qualities by which that conqueror suc-<br/>cess'd all the kings who preceded him, are set down.<br/>The names of his children who surviv'd him.</i> | 424 |

The end of the contents.



Mc Is  
G. & J. Inc.

*"A book that is shut is but a block."*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.

---